

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 1 课：林登大街 46 号

ACT 1-1 “我可以给您和您的小男孩拍张照片吗？”

【故事梗概】

自由摄影艺术家 Richard Stewart，正在为编出自己的影集《走遍美国》到处拍照。今天他在由纽约市曼哈顿区到斯塔滕岛的渡船上工作，回程中遇到了来自加州的一位黑人妇女 Martha Vann 和她的小儿子 Gerald。Richard 想要给他们拍照。

Richard: Excuse me. My name is Richard Stewart. I'm a photographer. May I take a picture of you and your little boy?

Mrs.Vann: What's it for?

Richard: It's for a book.

Mrs.Vann: You're writing a book?

Richard: It's a book of pictures. I call it Family Album, U.S.A.

Mrs.Vann: Oh, that's a nice idea. Well, it's fine if you take our picture. I'm Martha Vann.

Richard: Thank you. I appreciate your help. I'm Richard. What's your name?

Gerald: Gerald.

Richard: How old are you, Gerald?

Gerald: Five.

Richard: And where do you live?

Mrs.Vann: We live in California.

Richard: Well, welcome to New York. OK, just a second. I'm almost ready here.

【语言点精讲】

1. Excuse me. My name is Richard Stewart. I'm a photographer.

这是 Richard 在与陌生人搭讪并介绍自己。

Excuse me 这个短语用来引起对方的注意。相当于汉语的“对不起，劳驾”。

自我介绍时可以先介绍自己的名字，再说明自己的职业。

介绍自己的名字时，可以像 Richard 一样，说 My name is Richard Stewart.

也可以像 Mrs. Vann 那样，说 I'm Martha Vann.

2. May I take a picture of you and your little boy?

May I...是一种很礼貌的征求别人的同意的说法，相当于“我可以...吗？”。

Richard 想要为 Mrs. Vann 母子拍照片，他首先要征得当事人的同意，否则闹出肖像权的问题可不是好玩滴~~

3. I appreciate your help.

这是在受别人帮助或听了别人的忠告之后的感谢语。在 Richard 向 Mrs. Vann 说明了照片的用途后，Mrs. Vann 欣然接受拍照的请求，之后 Richard 立即向对方表达了感谢。这里也可以说 I really appreciate it.

4. Welcome to New York.

Welcome to... 是迎接客人的客套语。Richard 与 Mrs. Vann 母子攀谈几句后得知母子二人来自于 California，于是 Richard 对他们说，欢迎到纽约来。

又例如：Welcome to HJ English.

ACT 1-2 “我可以帮忙吗？”

【故事梗概】

Richard 准备为 Mrs.Vann 母子拍照，他需要使用反光板。这时，一位来自希腊的交换生 Alexandra 主动提出要帮助他。照片顺利的拍完了。Richard 感谢了 Alexandra 并开始与她交谈。

Richard: OK, Just a second. I'm almost ready here.

Alexandra: Can I help you?

Richard: Oh, please. Hold Gerald's hand, please. Great! Now point to the buildings. Terrific! Give Mommy a kiss, Gerald.

Nice! Thank you, Gerald. And thank you, Mrs Vann.

Mrs.Vann: Oh, my pleasure. We'll be looking for your book.

Richard: Thank you. Good-bye. Bye, Gerald. Thanks again.

Alexandra: Oh, you're welcome.

Richard: Hey, let me take your picture!

Alexandra: Wonderful. Please.

Richard: Are you from New York?

Alexandra: No, I'm from Greece. I'm an exchange student.

Richard: When did you come here?

Alexandra: Three months ago.

Richard: Your English is very good.

Alexandra: Thanks. I studied English in school.

【语言点精讲】

1. Can I help you?

在为别人提供帮助前，我们可以说 Can I help you?

也可以说 Let me...（让我，允许我），如本文中，Richard 对 Alexandra 说"Hey, let me take your picture!" 但是这种说法没有 Can I...的礼貌程度高。

如果我们愿意接受帮助，则可以回答"Oh, please." 或者"Yes, please."。也可以像 Alexandra 那样很可爱的讲"Wonderful. Please."

2. Great! / Terrific! / Nice!

在拍照的过程中，Mrs.Vann 母子每在他的要求下摆一个新的姿势，Richard 都会对他们的配合给予肯定。他用到的"Great! Terrific! Nice!" 都是用来表示“太好了，好极了，很好”的意思。

3. We'll be looking for your book.

这里的 look for 是寻找的意思。

4. My pleasure. / You're welcome.

当别人对你表示感谢时，可以用"My pleasure."或者"You're welcome."来进行回应。

ACT 1-3 “你想来点咖啡吗？”

【故事梗概】

在交谈中，Alexandra 表示希望了解一下 Richard 的书。于是 Richard 向她展示了自己为这本书拍的一些照片。同时，Richard 也向她展示了自己家人的照片。

Richard: Your English is very good.

Alexandra: Thanks. I studied English in school.

Richard: Would you like some coffee?

Alexandra: No, thank you. Tell me about your book.

Richard: Oh, it's not finished yet, but I have some of the pictures. Would you like to see them?

Alexandra: Yes, I'd like that.

Richard: Here they are. Family Album, U.S.A.. It's an album of pictures of the United States: the cities, the special places, and the people. And these are pictures of people working: steel workers, bankers, police, street vendors, ambulance drivers, doctors...Oh, this is my father. He's a doctor. This is my mother.

Alexandra: What's her name?

Richard: Ellen. My younger brother, Robbie. He goes to high school. This is my sister Susan. She works for a toy company. Here's my grandfather. He lives in Florida. And this is my wife Marilyn.

Alexandra: Oh, she's very pretty.

Richard: Thanks.

【语言点精讲】

1. Would you like some coffee?

Would you like...相当于“你想要...吗？”，在客气地请对方做某事或请客时用。

如本文中，Richard 问 Alexandra“想来一点咖啡吗”，他说 "Would you like some coffee?"

在谈到自己的书 Family Album, U.S.A.时，他问对方“想要看一看吗”，"Would you like to see them?"

如果我们不想接受，就说"No, thank you."

如果愿意接受，则说"Yes. I'd like that." 或者"Yes. Please."

2. Here they are.

把东西给别人看时用。单数时用 Here it is.

3. Thanks.

在本情境中出现的两次"Thanks"都是对于别人赞美的回应。

称赞对方，或对方的家人，是美国人很重要的一种社交习惯，被人称赞时，要表示乐于接受并愉快地感谢，不要急于否认或自贬，也不要表现得扭捏不安。所以无论是人家说你的英语好--"Your English is very good."，还是称赞你的夫人很漂亮--"Oh, she's very pretty."，都不必不好意思，只要说声 "Thank you" 就可以了。

ACT 1-4 “很高兴认识你。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 问到了 Alexandra 的家庭及个人情况。在交谈中，Richard 突然想起了与自己的妻子还有约定，于是与 Alexandra 匆匆告辞，下船离开。这时 Alexandra 发现他忘了拿一个挎包。她拿起它，赶紧追他.....

Richard: And what about your family?

Alexandra: They're in Thessaloniki. That's a large city in northern Greece. But now I'm living in the Bronx.

Richard: With a Greek-American family?

Alexandra: No. Hispanic.

Richard: Oh no! It's five thirty. Will you excuse me? I have to meet my wife.

Alexandra: It was nice meeting you.

Richard: It was a pleasure meeting you, too. Thanks for your help. And good luck! I've got to go. By the way. I'm Richard.

What's your name?

Alexandra: Alexandra.

Richard: Bye-bye, Alexandra.Thanks.

Alexandra: Bye-bye. Richard! Richard! You left your bag.

【语言点精讲】

1. And what about your family?

What about...在这里用以询问别人的情况，相当于 Tell me about...

2. the Bronx

是纽约市的五个行政区之一。另外的四个如下：

Manhattan, Brooklyn, Queens, Staten Island

3. Hispanic

意思是西班牙语系的，西班牙的。Alexandra 和一个讲西班牙语的家庭一起生活。

4. It was nice meeting you. / It was a pleasure meeting you.

很高兴认识你。与新朋友第一次见面时可用此用语告别。

5. I've got to go.

这句表达的意思是“我必须得走了”，与 I must go, I must be off 之类的告别语同义。

6. By the way...

此短语在转换话题或者作补充说明时用，相当于汉语中的“顺便说一下.....”。

ACT 2-1 “能告诉我怎么去弗代尔镇林肯大街吗？”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 想把 Richard 忘下的包还给他。包上挂着 Richard 的住址牌，Alexandra 向一位警察询问该怎样去那里。警察叮嘱 Alexandra 要坐 1 路地铁，可是她却仍然坐错了车。

Alexandra: Excuse me, officer. Can you help me?

Policeman: Sure.

Alexandra: Can you tell me how to get to Linden Street, in Riverdale?

Policeman: "Richard Stewart, 46 Linden Street, Riverdale, New York." You should take the number one subway.

Alexandra: Is there a station near here?

Policeman: Yes. The station's that way. You should take the number one train to Van Cortlandt Park.

Alexandra: Number one train to Van Cortlandt Park. Thank you.

Policeman: Anytime. Good luck. Remember, the number one train. The uptown platform.

Alexandra: Thank you.

Policeman: You're welcome.

【语言点精讲】

1. Excuse me, officer. Can you help me?

当我们向别人寻求帮助时，可以说 Excuse me. Can you help me? (劳驾，可以帮个忙吗?)

本文中的 officer，是指 police officer，即警官。

2. Can you tell me how to get to Linden Street, in Riverdale?

"Can you tell me how to get to ...?" 可以用来向别人问路，意思是“您能告诉我怎么才能到达某某地点吗？”

3. 46 Linden Street, Riverdale, New York.

这是一般地址的说法。地点由小到大排列。

4. Anytime.

在你为别人做了某事后别人向你道谢时回答 Anytime，相当于 You are welcome anytime.

5. Good luck.

祝你好运。一般用于与人分手时，回答也用 Good luck.

6. uptown platform

北线月台。在纽约，地铁线有 uptown 北线（向北驶）和 downtown 南线（向南驶）之分，在每个地铁站口都有标志。

ACT 2-2 “你穿上它好极了。”

【故事梗概】

在一家时装店里，Richard Stewart 的妻子 Marilyn Stewart 正在接待一位女性顾客。

请听她们的对话：

Customer: Is this pink too bright for me?

Marilyn: Mmm-hmm. It is a very bright pink. Try this. It's size eight.

Customer: But I wear size ten.

Marilyn: How about green? It's size ten.

Customer: Let me try it on. I'm taking too much of your time.

Marilyn: It's six o'clock. Where's my husband? I was expecting him here at five forty-five.

Customer: Don't worry. The traffic is very heavy at this hour.

Marilyn: I know. But we're going to be late for dinner.

Customer: I'll take this green sweater. I like the color on me, don't you?

Marilyn: I think it looks terrific on you.

【语言点精讲】

1. Let me try it on.

Let me... 让我..., 允许我...。注意在说这两个字时, 这位顾客使用的是口语音: Lemme...这里 let 的 t 因为连读而失去了爆破。
try (it) on 试穿。

2. I was expecting him here at five forty-five.

我本来指望他可以 5 点 45 分到这里的。Expect 是“期望, 盼望某事发生”的意思。当我们盼望一个朋友来, 等一个电话, 等一封信时都可以使用 expect。

3. The traffic is very heavy at this hour.

这个时间交通很拥挤。heavy 在这里形容交通繁忙, 拥堵。

4. I think it looks terrific on you.

我觉得你穿上它好极了。美国人在赞美别人的时候, 喜欢用一些比较夸张的形容词。像在本情境中, 女性顾客试穿了一件绿色的毛衣, 她对 Marilyn 说"I like the color on me, don't you?" (我觉得我穿这颜色不错, 你说呢?) Myrilyn 用了这个"terrific", 来赞美她穿这件衣服看起来“好极了, 棒极了, 简直没治了”。

ACT 2-3 “我实在太感谢你为我所做的这一切了。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 赶到了 Marilyn 工作的时装店。他告诉妻子自己的包忘在了渡轮上。Marilyn 在查号台查询了渡轮失物招领处的电话号码并给失物招领处打了电话。她被告知没有人拾到 Richard 丢失的包。

Richard: I'm sorry I'm so late. I had a really bad day.

Marilyn: It's ten after six. We're late. Robbie's cooking tonight, and dinner's at six thirty.

Richard: I know. I know. I'm really sorry. I left my bag of film on the ferry. I went back for it, but the ferry was gone. I lost a whole day's work.

Marilyn: I'll call the Staten Island Ferry lost-and-found office.

Richard: I didn't think of that. Thanks.

Marilyn: Hello. Yes. The number, please, of the Staten Island Ferry lost-and-found office. Five five five... zero eight zero eight. Thank you.

Richard: I really appreciate it, Marilyn.

Marilyn: Hello. Did anyone find a camera bag this afternoon, a small canvas bag, on the J. F. Kennedy Ferry? No? Maybe someone will find it. The name is Stewart, Richard Stewart. And the telephone number is five five five... three oh nine oh. Thank you. Sorry, Richard. They don't have it.

Richard: Thanks, anyway. There was a girl on the ferry. Now maybe...

Marilyn: Tell me about it on the way home.

【语言点精讲】

1. I had a really bad day.

我今天真是糟透了。我今天可不顺了。

2. I'll call the Staten Island Ferry lost-and-found office.

我来给斯塔滕岛渡船失物招领处打个电话。lost-and-found office 是指失物招领处。美国的许多公共场所或公园都设有失物招领处, 失主可直接与之联系。

3. I didn't think of that.Thanks.

美国人即使是在亲人之间, 也是谢谢不离口。

当 Marilyn 想到要给失物招领处打电话这个主意后, Richard 立即表达了感激之情 -- "I didn't think of that.Thanks." (我就没想到这个,谢谢。) 这里的 think of 相当于“记起, 想到”。

随后, Marilyn 给查号台打电话查询斯塔滕岛渡船失物招领处的电话。面对妻子的帮助, Richard 又一次致谢--"I really appreciate it, Marilyn." (我实在太感谢你为我所做的这一切了, Marilyn。)

4. The number, please, of the Staten Island Ferry lost-and-found office.

The number, please, of the... 请告诉我... 的电话号码。用此来向查号台询问电话号码。

5. small canvas bag

小的粗帆布包。这里用了两个形容词来修饰 bag 一词: small 指尺寸; canvas (粗帆布) 指材料。一般形容词的排列顺序是表示尺寸的放在前, 表示材料的放在后。

6. Thanks, anyway.

无论如何, 我还是要谢谢你。当有人尽力想帮你但没帮上忙时可用此短语道谢。

ACT 3-1 “没什么。我们有很多冰淇淋呢。”

【故事梗概】

在 Stewart 家, 晚饭前, Richard 的父亲 Philip Stewart 在他和一个病人的家属通电话。电话后, 他和妻子 Ellen Stewart 在谈论即将开始的晚饭。随后, Stewart 一家在一起吃由 Richard 的弟弟 Robbie 做的晚饭。Robbie 忘记准备甜点了, Ellen 建议用冰淇淋作为甜点。

Philip: And give her a **teaspoon** of the medicine after every meal. Don't worry. She'll be fine. You're welcome. Good-bye.

Ellen: How are you?

Philip: I'm tired and hungry.

Ellen: Well, Marilyn and Richard called. They'll be here soon, and then we'll eat.

Philip: All right. Is ... is Susan coming?

Ellen: Well, she'll be here **later**. She has to work **late** tonight.

Philip: And what's Robbie cooking for dinner?

Ellen: It's a **surprise**.

Philip: I hope it's **pasta**.

Philip: Robbie, the dinner was terrific.

Susan: Yes, it was **delicious**.

Marilyn: What's for **dessert** ?

Robbie: Oh, I forgot dessert.

Philip: Robbie!

Ellen: Don't worry. We've got lots of ice cream.

Richard: Oh, I'd love some ice cream.

Ellen: Well, there's chocolate and coffee and a little **vanilla**.

Robbie: I'll have vanilla. Is that all right with everyone?

Philip: I like chocolate.

Marilyn: Me, too.

Richard: Uh, one **scoop** of coffee and one scoop of chocolate for me.

Ellen: Robbie, will you help me serve ?

【语言点精讲】

1. And give her a teaspoon of the medicine after every meal.

每顿饭后给她喝一茶匙那种药。teaspoon 是在喝茶或者咖啡时, 用以搅拌或往里面加糖的小匙。

2. Well, she'll be here later. She has to work late tonight.

Later 是“随后, 稍后”的意思。Late 则是指“迟的, 晚的”

3. Don't worry. We've got lots of ice cream.

这是 Ellen 在安慰忘记准备甜点的厨师 Robbie“没什么。我们有很多冰淇淋呢。”

We've got... 是“我们有...”的意思。这里的 have got 表示“拥有, 具有”, 可以用 have 替换。

用来安慰别人的时候，我们可以说 "Don't worry. ", 相当于汉语中的“别担心，甭急，没什么”。又如，在电话中安慰病人的家属时，Philip 说 "Don't worry. She'll be fine." (别着急，她很快就会好的。)

4. Well, there's chocolate and coffee and a little vanilla.

有巧克力的，咖啡的，还有一点儿香草的（冰淇淋）。这里的 "vanilla, chocolate, coffee" 都是指冰淇淋的口味。

5. I'll have vanilla. Is that all right with everyone?

Robbie 在抢着要只剩下一点的香草冰淇淋，“我要香草的。大家不反对吧？” Robbie 做了很美味的 pasta（意大利通心粉），但却忘了做甜食。他是晚饭的厨师，但他首先抢着要只剩下一点的香草冰淇淋。这些幽默的小细节也体现了美国人的富于谈谐的性格。

6. Me, too.

我也要。在本场景中是 "I'll also have chocolate ice cream." 的省略。日常生活用语中，常用这样的省略句。

ACT 3-2 “是 Richard 的胶卷。我是说，Alexandra Pappas 来了。”

【故事梗概】

晚饭后，Richard 还在为丢失的胶卷沮丧不已。这时，门铃响了，Robbie 去开门，发现来访的是 Alexandra。她送回了 Richard 忘记的装胶卷的包。

Richard: I keep thinking about that bag of film. Eight rolls. A whole day's work. And good stuff, too.

Ellen: Don't worry, Richard. Someone will find it.

Robbie: I'll get it. Hello.

Alexandra: Hello. Does Richard Stewart live here?

Robbie: Yes, he's my brother. I'm Robbie... Robbie, Stewart.

Alexandra: I'm Alexandra Pappas. How do you do? Your brother left his bag of film on the ferry boat. I found it.

Robbie: I'm really glad to see you. I mean... my brother'll be really glad to see you!

Ellen: Robbie ! Who is it?

Robbie: It's Richard's film! I mean, Alexandra Pappas. Come in, please.

Richard: Alexandra!

Alexandra: Hello, Richard. I found your bag!

Richard: Oh, thank you! Thank you!

【语言点精讲】

1. I keep thinking about that bag of film.

我一直在想着那包胶卷。Keep doing... 的意思是“一直在做...”

2. good stuff

不错的东西，这里是指丢失的胶卷都是拍得很精彩的。

stuff 在口语中可以泛指任何东西，类似汉语中“东西”的概念。

3. How do you do?

与人初次见面时的礼貌用语，多用于比较正式的场合。

4. I'm really glad to see you. I mean... my brother'll be really glad to see you!

当我们需要纠正我们的口误时，可以使用 "I mean..." (我是说)

Robbie 遇到美丽的 Alexandra 时，显然有些语无伦次，把哥哥说成了自己 - "I'm really glad to see you." (我见到你真是高兴。) 于是马上改口 - "I mean... my brother'll be really glad to see you!" (我是说...我哥哥见到你一定会很高兴!)

当 Ellen 问他 "Who is it?" 时，他又一次说错了话 - "It's Richard's film!" (是 Richard 的胶卷) 随后马上纠正 "I mean, Alexandra Pappas." (我是说，Alexandra Pappas 来了)

ACT 3-3 “让我为你介绍一下。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 为 Alexandra 介绍了自己的家人并感谢她送回自己的装胶卷的包。

Richard: Um... Alexandra, let me **introduce** you. This is my wife Marilyn.

Alexandra: Richard showed me your photo. How do you do?

Marilyn: Oh yes. Richard told us all about you. It's nice to meet you.

Richard: And this is my mother, Ellen Stewart.

Alexandra: How do you do?

Richard: And my father, Dr. Philip Stewart.

Philip: Nice to meet you, Alexandra.

Richard: And... ah... you met Robbie.

Alexandra: Yes. And you must be Susan. Hi.

Susan: Hi. Welcome.

Richard: I'm so glad you found the bag and took the time and trouble to return it.

Alexandra: Oh, it was no trouble. I just took the wrong train.

Ellen: Would you like something to eat?

Alexandra: Thank you, no. I'm late for dinner at my house. I really have to go.

Richard: Would you like to call home ?

Alexandra: I'd **appreciate** that.

Ellen: Please, use the phone.

Alexandra: Thanks. Excuse me.

【语言点精讲】

1. Alexandra, let me introduce you. This is my wife Marilyn.

当我们介绍两个第一次见面的人互相认识时，可以用"Let me introduce you. This is..."（让我为你介绍一下。这位是某某某。）你也可以用"I'd like you to meet..."

被介绍的人可以说"How do you do?" 也可以说"It's nice to meet you." 或者"Nice to meet you." 后面的两种说法不如"How do you do?"正式。

2. I'm so glad you found the bag and took the time and trouble to return it.

我很高兴你捡到了包，而且不惜花时间和麻烦把它送还给我。

I am so glad (that) ... 表示“我真高兴...”。

3. Would you like something to eat? / Would you like to call home?

"Would you like sth.?"或者"Would you like to do sth.?" 用来礼貌地询问对方的意愿，是否“想要...”，或委婉地提出请求、建议、陈述个人的想法。

Call home 指给家里打电话。

4. Thank you, no. I'm late for dinner at my house. I really have to go.

美国人通常会在拒绝别人的好意的同时给出自己不能接受的理由。在本情境中，面对 Ellen 的邀请 "Would you like something to eat?"（你想吃点什么吗？），Alexandra 首先礼貌的表示拒绝 "Thank you, no."，随后给出了自己的理由 "I'm late for dinner at my house. I really have to go."（我回家吃晚饭要迟到了。我真的得马上走了。）

5. Excuse me.

本文中出现的"Excuse me"相当于“对不起，失陪了”的意思，是在要离开片刻时使用的礼貌用语。

ACT 3-4 “沉住气，不要激动。”

【故事梗概】

在 Alexandra 给寄宿家庭打电话的时候，Richard 向家人介绍了她的一些情况。Robbie 得知她住的地方离自己家很近时，表现得很兴奋。Alexandra 打过电话后，与 Stewart 一家闲聊了一会儿。

Richard: Alexandra's a high-school **exchange** student from Greece.

Robbie: Where does she live?

Richard: With a family in the Bronx.

Robbie: Oh, that's not too far from here!

Richard: Take it easy, Robbie.

Alexandra: Thank you. I can only stay a few minutes.

Ellen: Have some iced tea.

Alexandra: Thanks, Mrs. Stewart.

Robbie: Please sit down, Alexandra.

Philip: So, you're an exchange student. Where do you go to school?

Alexandra: At the Bronx High School of Science.

Philip: Oh, that's a very good school. What are your **favorite** subjects?

Alexandra: **Biology** and **mathematics**. Richard tells me you're a doctor.

Philip: Yes, a **pediatrician**. And what does your father do?

Alexandra: He's a **lawyer**, in Thessaloniki.

【语言点精讲】

1. Take it easy.

别急，别激动，沉住气。也可以说"Take things easy. "

Robbie 得知 Alexandra 住得离自己家不是很远时，表现得很兴奋。他的哥哥 Richard 故意拉长了声对他说 "Take it easy."（沉住气，不要激动）

2. Where do you go to school? / What are your favorite subjects?

你在哪里上学？ / 你喜欢哪些课程？

第一次见面后，询问对方的工作或学习情况是开始交谈的典型方法。

3. Biology and mathematics

两者均为学科名称。biology: 生物学。mathematics: 数学。

4. Yes, a pediatrician .

a pediatrician 是指 a children's doctor（儿科医生）。

5. What does your father do?

你父亲做什么工作？

用这个句子来询问别人的职业，也可以说"What is your father's job?"

ACT 3-5 “欢迎你随时来玩。”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 与 Stewart 一家人告别。这次，这位助人为乐的来自希腊的小美女反过来却把自己的背包忘在了 Stewart 家。

Robbie: Would you like some **pasta**? I made it myself. It might be a little cold.

Alexandra: Thanks, no. I do have to go. It was nice meeting you all.

Marilyn: Well, maybe you'll come for lunch some Sunday, so we can really thank you for bringing Richard's bag back.

Alexandra: Maybe.

Ellen: You're welcome anytime.

Philip: Good-bye.

Richard: Can I drive you home?

Alexandra: No, thanks. The train is just up the street. It won't take me long at all.

Richard: Well, you really saved the day for me, Alexandra.

Alexandra: Bye.

Richard: Bye-bye.

Ellen: Good night.

Philip: She's a **smart** young lady, and very nice.

Robbie: Very! Hey, she forgot her bag!

Ellen: I guess we'll be seeing Alexandra again. Right, Robbie?

【语言点精讲】

1. I do have to go.

do 在这里相当于"really", 用来加强语气。

2. Maybe you'll come for lunch some Sunday.

或许哪个星期天你可以过来吃午饭。

这是在告别时表示客气的一句客套话, 如诚心诚意地邀请, 则须说明确切的时间。

3. You're welcome anytime.

欢迎你随时来玩。这也是在告别时经常使用的一句客套话,

4. You really saved the day for me .

相当于"You really helped me a lot." (你的确帮了我的大忙。)

5. Good night.

晚安。用于下午或晚上人们相互分手告别时。

6. I guess we'll be seeing Alexandra again.

I guess...在这里是“我认为...”的意思, 认为某事很有可能如此或会发生时用。

这里的"will/shall be doing...", 是用将来进行时来表示较强的感情, 即盼望将来能做到某事, 或预期将来某件事情必然会发生。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 2 课: 介绍会面

ACT 1-1 “伍斯特大街 83 号该怎么走?”

【故事梗概】

Harry Bennett 在曼哈顿岛闹市区的一条街上, 拿着一束鲜花。今晚他与 Susan Stewart 有一个约会。那将是他们第一次见面。他找不到 Susan 的公寓所在的伍斯特大街 83 号, 于是他向路边的一个卖热狗的小贩问路。小贩的指点并未帮他找到目的地。他试图拨打 Susan 的电话, 却打不通。之后, 他又向一位女士第二次问路。

Harry: Excuse me. Can you help me?

Vendor: Sure, what do you want?

Harry: Where is 83 Wooster Street?

Vendor: That's easy. Walk to the corner. Then make a left turn . Then walk two **blocks** to the traffic light. Make another left to Wooster.

Harry: Thank you. To the corner and then a left?

Vendor: Yeah. A left. Hot dog? Only seventy-five cents.

Harry: No. Thank you. I have a dinner date.

Harry: 555-9470 ... and it's busy. ... Try again. 555-9470... and it's still busy. Excuse me, ma'am. I'm looking for 83 Wooster Street.

Woman: Yes. Wooster Street is two blocks, and 83 is to the right, about two houses.

Harry: Thank you, thank you!

Woman: You're welcome.

【语言点精讲】

1. Excuse me. Can you help me?

劳驾, 您能帮帮我吗? 在向旁人问路时, 可以使用这句话来引起对方的注意。也可以只用"Excuse me."

2. Sure, what do you want?

这位小贩在这里用的是非正式的口语的读法"Sure, waddayawant."

因为人的身份和相互关系不同，说话的礼貌程度也不一样。"What do you want?"比较礼貌的说法是"What can I do for you?"

3. Where is 83 Wooster Street ?

伍斯特大街 83 号该怎么走？问路时可以说"Where is...?"（某某地点该怎么走？）。也可以说"I'm looking for..."（我想找某某地点。）

4. Walk to the corner. Then make a left turn, then walk two blocks to the traffic light. Make another left to Wooster.

朝前走到转弯处，然后向左拐，走过两个街区，到红绿灯处，再往左拐就是伍斯特大街。

walk... make a left/ right turn... 沿着.....走，然后朝左 / 右拐。这是指路常用的套语。

block: 街，街区。traffic light: 红绿灯，交通信号灯。

5. Thank you. To the corner and then a left?

问路的时候，为了确保我们的理解是正确的，可以把听到的内容再重复一遍，就像这里 Harry 做得这样。

6. Yeah.

这是 yes 的非正规形式，常在口语中使用。

7. I have a dinner date.

dinner date 是指晚餐约会。date 通常是指男女社交性的约会。Susan 和 Harry 原先彼此不相识，这是他们经别人安排的第一次会面，称为 blind date。这种约会的目的是为男女双方创造机会交往，互相深入了解。这种约会在美国十分平常，往往由亲朋好友来安排。地点可选在餐馆，边吃边谈，所以叫 dinner date。

8. Excuse me, ma'am.

ma'am 是对年长女士的尊称。这个词的完整形式是 madam，但是因为 madam 这个词实在是太正式了，美国人在口语中几乎是不使用的，倒是省略了"d"的发音的 ma'am 比较常用。另外，对年轻的女士可以称 miss，对男士则称 sir。

ACT 1-2 “让我介绍你认识一下我的嫂嫂。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 终于找到了 Susan 的公寓。此时 Marilyn 也在 Susan 的公寓。Susan 为他们做了相互介绍。

Susan: [at the intercom] Who is it?

Harry: Harry Bennett. Is this Susan?

Susan: Yes, it is. Come up. I'm on the top floor.

Susan: Hello, Harry. It's nice to meet you.

Harry: Nice to meet you, Susan. Sorry I'm late. The traffic. The parking. I was lost.

Susan: What pretty flowers! Thank you. Oh, please come in. Don't worry about being late. It's fine. Excuse the mess.

I just moved here. Oh, I'd like you to meet my sister-in-law Marilyn. Marilyn Stewart, this is Harry Bennett.

Harry: Pleased to meet you.

Marilyn: Nice to meet you, Harry.

Harry: Are we too late for our dinner reservation?

Susan: No, the restaurant will hold our table. I know the owner very well. I eat there a lot.

【语言点精讲】

1. [at the intercom] Who is it?

当有人敲门，以及通过电话或 intercom 讲话时，我们看不到说话的对象。这时用"Who is it?"或"Who is that?"来确认对方的身份。

Intercom, 对讲机，是 intercommunication system 的缩写。在美国的一些公寓楼安装了对讲机。来访者，像 Harry 在楼外通过对讲机与 Susan 联系，她在房间内可通过按钮把楼下大门打开，放 Harry 进来。

2. Excuse the mess.

请原谅屋里不够整洁。当有人来拜访时，可以说这句话。这时有可能是房间真的不够整洁，也有可能只是出于客套。

3. Oh, I'd like you to meet my sister-in-law Marilyn. Marilyn Stewart, this is Harry Bennett.

让我介绍你认识一下我的嫂嫂 Marilyn。Marilyn Stewart, 这是 Harry Bennett。

在介绍两个人见面时,一般是把男子介绍给女子,把地位低的人介绍给地位高的人,把客人介绍给主人。说法是"This is..."或省去 This is 而只说一下双方姓名。被介绍的人互相说"Nice to meet you."或"Pleased to meet you."

sister-in-law: 嫂子,大、小姑子,大、小姨子,弟媳。

4. Are we too late for our dinner reservation?

Reservation: 预订(席位、车、机、船票、旅馆房间等)。

ACT 1-3 “电话号码是 555-17-20。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 向 Susan 询问将要去的饭店的电话号码。他给家里打了个电话,告知他的临时保姆 Betty, 如果他的女儿 Michelle 有什么急事, 可以打 5551720 找他。

Harry: Do you know the phone number of the restaurant? I'd like to call home and leave the number with the baby-sitter.

Susan: Sure. The number is...five five five...seventeen twenty.

Harry: May I use the phone?

Harry: Five five five...one seven two oh. Hello? Hi, Michelle. It's Daddy. Can I speak to Betty? I wanna to leave the phone number of the restaurant...Hi, Betty. I'll be at five five five...seventeen twenty. OK. Thanks. See you later. Well, that's done. Shall we go?

Susan: I'm ready. See you later, Marilyn.

Marilyn: Have a nice evening.

Harry: Bye, Marilyn. Hope to see you again.

Marilyn: Me, too. Have fun!

Susan: Thanks.

Harry: After you.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'd like to call home and leave the number with the baby-sitter.

I'd like to... (I would like to) 是较客气的表示希望或要求的说法。

baby-sitter, 临时保姆。在美国, 父母晚间外出时都要找自己比较熟悉的临时保姆(baby-sitter)来照看孩子, 按小时付给工资。通常他们外出前都会将所去处的电话号码留给 baby-sitter, 回来后一般都要开车送他们回家。

2. five five five...seventeen twenty

5-5-5-17-20。这是念电话号码的一种形式。念完前三位号码, 再两个两个地念后四位号码。

3. Five five five...one seven two oh.

5-5-5-1-7-2-0。这是念电话号码的另一种形式。念完前三位号码, 再一个一个地念后四位号码。

4. Shall we go?

用"Shall we ...?" 来提建议, 显得礼貌。

5. Hope to see you again.

希望再见到你。对新朋友道别时讲的话。

6. After you.

请先走。一般男士让女士先下车或先出门时讲的话。

ACT 2-1 “您想吃点什么?”

【故事梗概】

Susan 和 Harry 去了一家 Susan 经常光顾的泰国菜餐馆。餐馆的主人 Somsak 为他们点餐。

Somsak: Ah! Miss Stewart! Welcome! How are you?

Susan: Fine, Somsak. And you?

Somsak: Fine, thank you.

Susan: This is my friend Harry Bennett.

Harry: Pleased to meet you.

Somsak: Very nice to meet you. Any friend of Miss Stewart's is welcome at Somsak's. Follow me, please.

Harry: I like it here.

Susan: I do, too. I come here often.

Somsak: A special place for special people.

Susan: Thank you, Somsak.

Harry: Well! Nice restaurant.

Somsak: Would you like something to drink?

Susan: Yes, I'd like a glass of ginger ale with ice. Harry, what would you like?

Harry: Do you have a dry white wine?

Somsak: How about a California chablis?

Harry: Chablis is fine.

Somsak: What would you like to eat?

Susan: I'd like the mee krob. Harry, would you like to see a menu?

Harry: No, it's OK. I'll have the mee krob also. What is it?

Susan: Crispy fried noodles. I love them.

Somsak: May I bring you a salad?

Susan: Oh yes. What do you recommend today?

Somsak: I recommend rose-petal salad. Special for new friends.

Susan: Rose-petal salad?

Harry: Why not?

Somsak: I'll take care of everything.

【语言点精讲】

1. A special place for special people.

special people 在这儿的意思是指身分高贵，品味不俗的客人。后文中还有一句"Special for new friends."这里的 special 指平常不轻易供应，特别为某人烹调的。嘴这么甜！可见这位泰国老板 Somsak 还是很会作生意的嘛~~

2. Would you like something to drink?

您想喝点什么？用来询问顾客要点什么饮料。

3. I'd like a glass of ginger ale with ice.

我想要一杯带冰的姜味汽水。在点菜或饮料时可以说"I'd like..."（我想要..）。另外也可以讲"I'll have..."（我要.....）或者"Do you have..."（有.....吗？）

ginger ale 姜味汽水，是一种用姜汁制成的不含酒精的饮料。

4. How about a California chablis?

在向别人推荐某种饮品或菜肴时，可以用"How about...?"（来点.....好吗？）

chablis 是一种干白葡萄酒。

5. What would you like to eat?

您想吃点什么？用来询问顾客要点什么菜品。

Susan 点的"mee krob", 是泰国炒面，它是泰国的一种家常餐点。

6. May I bring you a salad?

"May I bring you..."（要不要来点.....呢？）是向顾客推荐菜肴的另一种讲法。

在美国餐馆里，点菜的顺序一般是这样的：饮料（drinks），汤（soup），色拉（salad），主菜（main dish; main course; entree），甜点（dessert）。

7. What do you recommend?

你今天推荐什么？当在饭店里不确定要吃什么的时候，可以这样要求侍者来给一些建议。

8. Why not?

为什么不呢？表示自己赞同对方的建议。

ACT 2-2 “所以我们才有缘相识。”

【故事梗概】

点餐之后，Susan 和 Harry 试着展开谈话。他们聊到了双方的职业。Harry 讲到他有一个 9 岁的女儿 Michelle，并给 Susan 看了女儿的照片。

Susan: I hope you're hungry.

Harry: What? Oh, yes. Starving. Well, I...

Susan: [at the same time] Well, I...

Harry: What do you do at Universe Toy Company?

Susan: I'm the vice-president of new toy development.

Harry: Terrific!

Susan: I know you're a CPA.

Harry: That's true. Harry Bennett, certified public accountant. I love numbers. I do some work for Smith and Dale, your company's accounting firm.

Susan: And so...

Harry: Here we are.

Susan: Yes.

Harry: I have a daughter.

Susan: I know. How old is she?

Harry: She's nine years old.

Susan: That's a nice age. What's her name?

Harry: Michelle.

Susan: Do you have a picture of her?

Susan: She's very pretty.

Harry: Thank you.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, I...

Well 在这里是个语气词。有一些人讲一句话的时候，因为可能要想一想才说，所以往往先说一个“Well”。Harry 和 Susan 几乎同时讲话，他们想使气氛变得自然、松弛一些。尤其今天是他们第一次约会。可能双方都有点紧张吧！

2. I'm the vice-president of new toy development.

我是主管新玩具开发的副总裁。Susan 在这家 Universe Toy Company（宇宙玩具公司）担任重要工作，别人将新玩具的构想交给她进行深入研究。

3. CPA

是 certified public accountant 的缩写，是指有执照的会计师、职业会计师。会计师为公司处理账务报表。要成为一名会计师，须通过政府的考试。

4. And so... Here we are.

所以我们才有缘相识。

Susan 和 Harry 是通过共同的业务伙伴才有了今天这次约会。两个人初次见面，虽不拘泥于繁文缛礼，却也不能过分打听别人的隐私。
本情景中的 Susan 和 Harry 都属比较坦诚开朗的人，对白也很好地体现了分寸的掌握。

ACT 2-3 “请原谅我，苏珊，可是...我得走了。”

【故事梗概】

开始上菜了，这时 Harry 接到了保姆打来的电话，他被告知自己的女儿 Michelle 生病了。他向 Susan 表达了歉意后提前离开。

Somsak: Rose-petal salad. And there's a phone call for you, Mr. Bennett.

Harry: Excuse me, Susan.

Susan: I hope nothing is wrong.

Somsak: I'll get the rest of the dinner. Excuse me.

Harry: Please forgive me, Susan, but...I have to leave. I feel terrible, but...

Susan: What's the matter?

Harry: My daughter isn't feeling well.

Susan: Oh no! Is it serious?

Harry: I don't know. The baby-sitter says she has a stomachache, and she's crying. I'll have to go home. Will you forgive me?

Susan: Of course. I'm so sorry for Michelle. And you didn't have a chance to eat.

Harry: Oh, it's OK. Let me take you home first.

Susan: No, no. Please, go ahead.

Harry: It's our first date.

Susan: We'll make another. Please don't worry.

Harry: I'll phone you.

Susan: I hope your daughter is all right. Good-bye.

Harry: Good-bye.

【语言点精讲】

1. There's a phone call for you.

有你的电话。

2. Please forgive me, Susan, but...I have to leave. I feel terrible, but...

请原谅我，苏珊，可是...我得走了。我觉得非常抱歉，可是...

Please forgive me, but...（对不起，但是...）以及 I feel terrible, but...（我感到十分抱歉，但是.....）都是用来征求对方原谅时的说法。but 后面加的是自己需要征求对方原谅的事情。

3. I'll have to go home. Will you forgive me?

我不得不回家去。你能原谅我吗？

这里包含着征求对方原谅的另一种说法，即先讲需要征得谅解的事情，然后再说 "Will you forgive me?" 或者 "Will you excuse me?"

4. What's the matter?

怎么了？发生了什么事？用来询问对方遇到了什么困难。

5. Oh, it's OK.

这是很口语化的讲法。意思是“噢，没关系”，相当于 "Oh, it's all right. "

6. Please, go ahead.

在这里的意思是“你先走吧。”

7. I hope your daughter is all right.

我希望你女儿安然无恙。表示一种祝愿。

在 Susan 听说有 Harry 的电话后，她先后还讲了下面几句话表示关心和祝愿：

I hope nothing is wrong. （我希望没事。）

Oh, no! Is it serious? (糟糕, 严重吗?)

I'm so sorry for Michelle. (我真为 Michelle 难过。)

ACT 3-1 “你觉得他怎么样?”

【故事梗概】

Harry 离开后, Susan 把他们点的饭菜打包回家里和 Marilyn 共享。她和 Marilyn 一边吃东西, 一边谈论 Harry。虽然 Harry 在第一次约会时就中途离开, Susan 却对他的印象不错。突然, 有人敲门, 来访者居然是 Harry。

Marilyn: What happened?

Susan: The baby-sitter called. His daughter is sick.

Marilyn: What's wrong?

Susan: I think she has a **stomachache**. He's a good father.

Marilyn: So...what do you think of him?

Susan: He's very nice. But I think he was **nervous** tonight. It was his first date in two years.

Marilyn: Will you see him again?

Susan: I hope so.

Marilyn: This food is delicious.

Susan: He didn't get a thing to eat.

Marilyn: You ordered enough for three or four people, but I'm not **complaining**. The food is delicious.

Susan: Who is that?

Marilyn: Do you think it's...

Susan: No. [She goes to the door and looks through the **peephole**] You won't believe it, Marilyn!

Marilyn: I believe it. Even without looking.

【语言点精讲】

1. What happened?

怎么了? 出什么事了? Marilyn 随后问的 "What's wrong?"也是同样的意思。

2. What do you think of him?

你觉得他怎么样? Marilyn 实际想知道 Susan 对 Harry 的印象。

这里的"think of"是"对...有(某种)看法"的意思。

3. I hope so.

我希望如此。在这里相当于"I hope to see him again. " (我希望还能见到他。)

4. He didn't get a thing to eat.

相当于 "He didn't eat anything." (他什么也没吃。) Susan 鼓励 Harry 回家去照顾生病的女儿在先, 又惦念他未吃饭。注意她在说这句话时的语气, 关心挂念的心情溢于言表。

5. I'm not complaining.

我不在意。常在非正式场合使用。也可以说"It's not a problem for me."

6. Do you think it's...

Marilyn 想说的是"Do you think it's Harry?" (会不会是 Harry?), Marilyn 期待着 Susan 来回答, 所以她省略了句子的后半。

7. You won't believe it.

你简直无法相信。用以表现一种惊讶的情绪。也可以说"You can't imagine it."

ACT 3-2 “抱歉, 我失陪了。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 把 Harry 请入房间, Harry 加入了她和 Marilyn 的晚餐。随后, Marilyn 知趣的起身告辞, 留给 Susan 和 Harry 一段独处的时间。

Harry: Hi!

Susan: How... ?

Harry: Your **downstairs neighbor** let me in.

Susan: Did you go home?

Harry: I did, but everything is OK, so I decided to come back. To **apologize** for leaving so early, I brought you a little gift. It's a **bonsai** tree for your new apartment. Hi, Marilyn. I hope it's not too late.

Marilyn: Oh, not at all. We're still eating.

Susan: Please, come in. Join us. It's our meal from the restaurant. And how is your daughter?

Harry: Oh, she's fine. It was only a **tummy** ache.

Susan: It's good that you went back.

Harry: Yes, I think it's important for me to be there since her mother died.

Susan: I agree. Aren't you hungry?

Harry: **As a matter of fact...** I am hungry.

Marilyn: There's lots of food left.

Harry: Mmm, this is delicious!

Susan: Enjoy!

Marilyn: I'm going to excuse myself. I have a lot of work to do to get ready for tomorrow. Good night, Harry. It was nice meeting you.

Harry: Bye, Marilyn.

Marilyn: Good night, Susan.

Susan: Good night, Marilyn.

【语言点精讲】

1. How...?

这句话实际上要问"How did you go inside the building? "

Harry 明白 Susan 要问什么，所以没等 Susan 说完，他已回答了>Your downstairs neighbor let me in."（你楼下的邻居放我进来的。）

2. To apologize for leaving so early, I brought you a little gift.

为了就早走了一步向你道歉，我给你带来一件小小的礼品。

To apologize for... 为了就某事道歉...

3. It's a bonsai tree for your new apartment.

bonsai tree 是指“盆栽，盆景”。

美国人有时喜欢送给朋友一盆绿色的盆景来向朋友表示希望友谊长存。

4. I think it's important for me to be there since her mother died.

我认为我在场是很重要的，因为她母亲不在了。

since 在这里是“因为，由于，既然”的意思。

5. Aren't you hungry?

你一定饿了吧？因为 Susan 知道 Harry 没有吃晚饭，所以她没有问"Are you hungry?"，而是用了反问句，意思相当于 You must be hungry.

6. There's lots of food left.

在口语中，以 There 开始，表示“有...”的句子，常用单数形式 there's，尽管后面接的有可能是复数名词。这是语言自然演变所致。书面语中仍宜区分。

7. I'm going to excuse myself.

抱歉，我失陪了。相当于"Sorry, I have to leave."

Marilyn 想让 Susan 和 Harry 有单独交谈的机会。句中"be going to do"表示比较短时期内的未来可以推定会发生的事或预订要做的事。

ACT 3-3 “你生活中还有别的女人吗？”

【故事梗概】

客厅里只留下了 Susan 和 Harry，他们的谈话涉及到了更多的私人问题。

Susan: She's going to a **fashion** show here in the city tomorrow. She is sleeping here so she won't have to travel from Riverdale in the morning.

Harry: You two must be close.

Susan: We are. The whole Stewart family is close.

Harry: I like that.

[Later that evening...]

Harry: And then, two years ago, my wife died.

Susan: You miss her.

Harry: I do...yes, but I have Michelle...and with time...

Susan: Is there anyone else in your life?

Harry: No, not yet. What about you?

Susan: Oh, I date **occasionally**, but my work keeps me busy.

【语言点精讲】

1. She's going to a fashion show here in the city tomorrow.

be going to 表示在最近的将来预定或按计划要作的事。fashion show: 时装表演。

2. You two must be close.

你们两个一定很要好。must be 表示一种肯定的推测。close 在这里的意思是“亲密的，关系好的”。

3. I have Michelle...and with time...

"and with time..." 随着时间的流逝，相当于"as time goes by."

4. Is there anyone else in your life?

这句话是在委婉的问" Do you have a special woman or girlfriend in your life? "（你生活中还有别的女人吗？）

5. What about you?

你呢？这句话通常用来反问对方。在本语境中，意思是"Do you have a special man or boy friend in your life?"（你有没有男朋友？）

6. Oh, I date occasionally, but my work keeps me busy.

噢，我偶尔也和人约会，可是我工作太忙了。

keep+宾语+宾语补足语，使...处于某种状态（情况）。用作宾语补足语常见的词有现在分词、过去分词、形容词、副词以及介词短语。

ACT 3-4 “这是不是说我以后可以再见到你？”

【故事梗概】

Harry 和 Susan 聊到了半夜。Harry 起身告辞。在 Harry 离开前，Susan 给出了希望进一步交往下去的暗示。Harry 在离开时撞倒了 Susan 放在门外的雨伞架。

Harry: Ooh, speaking of keeping busy -I have an early start tomorrow, and the baby-sitter has to get home. Where did the time go? It's **midnight**. Thank you,Susan. I had a nice evening.

Susan: Me too, Harry. Harry?

Harry: Yes?

Susan: I'd like to meet your daughter someday.

Harry: Does that mean that I can see you again?

Susan: Of course.

Harry: Wonderful. I'll call you, and we'll go out to dinner.

Susan: Please do.

Harry: I **promise** I won't leave early.

Susan: It was for a good reason.

Harry: You know something?

Susan: What?

Harry: I think we're going to be good friends. Good night, Susan.

Susan: Good night, Harry. Have a safe trip home.

Susan: Are you all right?

Harry: Sorry.

Susan: I never liked that **umbrella** stand. Good night, Harry.

【语言点精讲】

1. Ooh, speaking of keeping busy...

speaking of, 提到。用以转换话题的惯用语。

2. Where did the time go?

时间到哪里去了？时间过得真快。

3. Does that mean that I can see you again?

这是不是说我以后可以再见到你？

"Does that mean that ...?" (这是不是不说...? 这是不是意味着...?) 用来向别人确认一件事或者一种说法。

4. You know something?

这是一种引起话题的说法。意思为“你知道吗？我想告诉你一件事。”

这句话是"Do you know something?"的口语形式。

5. I think we're going to be good friends.

be going to do, 将会，表示比较短时期内的未来可以推定会发生的事或预订要做的事。

注意 Harry 的发的是它的口语音：gonna

6. I never liked that umbrella stand.

我一直不大喜欢那个伞架。

如果有人不小心碰倒或摔坏了我们的东西，我们常讲："I never liked it." 或 "I never liked it anyway."，为的是让对方不感到太尴尬。如果客人吃饭时摔了盘子，我们可以说："I never liked that dish anyway."

umbrella stand: 伞架。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第3课：祖父的行李箱

ACT 1-1 “我们要去车站接他吗？”

【故事梗概】

早上，在 Stewart 家的厨房，Ellen 和 Marilyn 正在厨房里准备早饭。她们兴奋地谈到祖父即将从佛罗里达州到达的事并决定上楼去为他布置房间。这时 Richard 和 Robbie 走进了厨房。

Ellen: Marilyn, you want coffee or tea?

Marilyn: Coffee, please.

Ellen: I am so **excited**! At this time tomorrow morning Grandpa will be sitting in the kitchen with us.

Marilyn: When does he arrive?

Ellen: At six o'clock this evening.

Marilyn: By plane?

Ellen: No, by train.

Marilyn: Are we picking him up at the station?

Ellen: Not Grandpa. He doesn't want anybody picking him up. He likes to be **independent**.

Marilyn: Huh.

Ellen: Oh, let's go upstairs and **prepare** Grandpa's room.

Marilyn: Great! Let's do it!

Richard: Good morning, Mom.

Robbie: Morning.

Ellen: Well, hi, **fellas**.

Richard: Hello.

Marilyn: Hi, honey.

Richard & Robbie: Morning, Marilyn.

Marilyn: We're going upstairs to set up Grandpa's room. There's coffee ready.

【语言点精讲】

1. You want coffee or tea?

你要咖啡还是要茶？是 "Do you want coffee or tea?" 的非正式说法。

这是选择疑问句。注意 Ellen 使用了先升后降的语调，即连词 or 前面的部分用升调，后面的部分用降调。

2. At this time tomorrow morning Grandpa will be sitting in the kitchen with us.

will be sitting: 将坐在。动词的将来进行时可表示在将来某时刻或某段时间正在进行的动作。

3. When does he arrive?

他什么时候到？一般现在时可表示安排或计划好的将来的动作（常用 come, go, arrive, leave 等动词）。

4. By plane? -- No, by train.

by plane, 乘飞机。by train, 乘火车。用介词 by 表示交通方式，又如：by boat（乘船），by bus（乘公共汽车），by taxi（乘出租车）。

5. Are we picking him up at the station?

我们要去车站接他吗？

pick sb. up: 用车来接某人。pick up 是短语动词。短语动词是由动词与介词或副词组成的固定词组，又如后文出现的 set up（准备，收拾）也是短语动词。

6. Well, hi, fellas.

fella（小伙子，孩子，伙计），是 fellow 的非正式场合的用语。

ACT 1-2 “我希望爷爷会喜欢和我们住在一起。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 和 Robbie 在厨房里一边准备早饭，一边谈论性格独立的祖父。Richard 想要给他准备一份特别的欢迎礼物。

Robbie: I'm really excited about seeing Grandpa.

Richard: Me, too. Milk, please.

Robbie: He's so funny. He always makes me laugh. I hope Grandpa's going to like living with us.

Richard: I think he will. It just takes time to feel **comfortable** in a new place.

Robbie: Won't he miss being in **Florida**?

Richard: Well, he will. But I think he'll like being here with the family.

Robbie: Are you sure about that? It's crazy here most of the time.

Richard: But it's fun.

Robbie: That's for sure.

Richard: You know, maybe I'll put together some photos of Grandpa as a "welcome" present.

Robbie: That's a neat idea. What can I do? I've got it! I have a picture of Grandpa and Dad and me in my **wallet**. It's from the Fathers and Sons' Breakfast at my junior high school **graduation**.

Richard: Oh, I remember this picture.

Robbie: I'd really like to pick up Grandpa at the railroad station.

Richard: Railroad stations or airports - Grandpa always tells us he'll get here by himself.

Robbie: He's something!

【语言点精讲】

1. He's so funny. He always makes me laugh.

如强调的是现在仍是如此的情况或习惯，一般用属于现在范畴的时态，如：

He's so funny. He always makes me laugh. (他真逗，他总是引得我笑。)

It's crazy here most of the time. (咱家总是这样乱哄哄的。)

Grandpa always tells us he'll get here by himself. (爷爷总是对我们说他会自己到家。)

2. I hope Grandpa's going to like living with us.

like 表示喜欢一种经常性行为或状况时，后面用动名词 (doing)，如：

I hope Grandpa's going to like living with us. (我希望爷爷会喜欢和我们住在一起。)

But I think he'll like being here with the family. (可是我认为他会喜欢在这儿和全家人在一起。)

但表示喜欢一个一次性的行为时则用动词不定式 (to do)，如 Robbie 说的：

I'd really like to pick up Grandpa at the railroad station. (我真想到火车站去接爷爷。)

3. That's for sure.

那倒是，我同意你的看法。这是一种口语式的表达方式。

4. That's a neat idea.

那是个好主意。这里 neat 相当于 "great, fine"，这是一种口语式的表达方式。

5. I've got it! I have a picture of Grandpa and Dad and me in my wallet.

注意 "Grandpa and Dad and me" 中人的排列顺序。在说话的时候，如果同时提到几个人，应该是年长的在前，年幼的在后。如果同时说到自己和别人，应该是别人在前，自己在后。

6. the Fathers and Sons' Breakfast

许多美国中学每年都要给学生安排一次“父子餐”活动。这一天父亲专门到学校来跟孩子一起共进早餐、午餐或晚餐，并一起拍照纪念。

7. He's something!

他很了不起！他是个人物！这里的 something 相当于 "great, wonderful"，这是一种口语的用法。

ACT 1-3 “我们正在纳闷这大箱子里是什么。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 和 Marilyn 在楼上布置祖父的房间。Philip 拿过来几个自己最好的衣架。祖父已经先把自己的大行李箱托运了回来，它是锁着的。

大家很好奇行李箱里装的是什么。

Marilyn: Is this all Grandpa's **stuff**?

Ellen: That's it. But I'm sure he has a few bags with him on the train.

Marilyn: What's **inside**?

Ellen: I don't know. It's locked.

Philip: Hi.

Ellen: Oh, hi, darling.

Marilyn: Morning, Philip.

Philip: I want to put some of my good **hangers** in Grandpa's **closet**. You know I'm very excited about his arrival.

Ellen: We are, too. Susan called early this morning. She's unhappy because she's had to go to **Chicago** on a business trip and can't leave till tonight. She wants to be here for Grandpa.

Philip: Well, Grandpa will be **disappointed**, too. He loves Susan. She always **reminds** him of Grandma. Well, how's everything here?

Marilyn: Fine. We were just **wondering** about this **trunk**.

Ellen: It's locked.

Philip: Oh, I have the key. Grandpa sent it to me.

【语言点精讲】

1. That's it.

是的，用来表示赞同。

2. But I'm sure he has a few bags with him on the train.

可是我肯定他在火车上还带着几个旅行包。

I'm sure (that) ...的意思是“我肯定...，我确定...”，用以发表自己的意见或信念，表示对...有把握。

bags 在这里是指手提箱、小件行李，而 trunk 则是指大箱子。

3. We are, too.

是"We are also very excited."的意思。当 too 在句尾时，有时不必重复它前面的每个词。

又如: "Ellen wants to prepare Grandpa's room, and Marilyn does, too." 在这一句中 does 指"wants to prepare Grandpa's room"。

4. She's unhappy because she's had to go to Chicago on a business trip and can't leave till tonight.

她很不高兴，因为她不得不出差到芝加哥去，直到今天晚上才能离开那里。

have to do sth. 不得不做某事。on a business trip 出差。till 直到，直到...为止

5. She always reminds him of Grandma.

她总使爷爷想起奶奶。"remind sb of ..."是“使某人想起...”的意思。

6. We were just wondering about this trunk.

我们正在纳闷这大箱子里是什么。

We were just wondering about... 是一种间接询问的方式。

wonder, 想知道，纳闷。

ACT 2-1 “这世界真小。”

【故事梗概】

在 Stewart 一家为祖父 Malcolm Stewart 的到来而兴奋的同时，Malcolm 正在一列由佛罗里达州开往纽约市的火车上。Malcolm 坐在车厢里，一位女士 Elsa 坐到了他的旁边。他们攀谈了起来。原来 Elsa 也是来自于佛罗里达州的，并且他们的家离得不远。

Elsa: Excuse me. Is this seat taken?

Grandpa: No, it's not taken.

Elsa: Oh, thank you.

Grandpa: Oh, let me help you with this.

Elsa: Oh, thank you.

Grandpa: Do you want to sit by the window?

Elsa: No, no, no. I like the **aisle** seat better. Please, you sit by the window.

Grandpa: My name is Stewart...Malcolm Stewart. Pleased to meet you.

Elsa: I'm Elsa Tobin. How do you do?

Grandpa: Do you live in New York?

Elsa: No, no. I'm from Florida.

Grandpa: I am, too. But didn't you just get on?

Elsa: No, no. I just changed my seat. A man next to me was smoking, and smoke really **bothers** me. Where are you from in Florida?

Grandpa: Titusville. It's near Orlando.

Elsa: Small world. I'm from Titusville, too.

Grandpa: Really? What part?

Elsa: My husband and I live near Spaceport.

Grandpa: I know that area. My house is only a few miles from Spaceport. Do you still live there?

Elsa: Oh yes, yes. My husband's there now. He couldn't take time off to come to New York with me. Do you still live there?

Grandpa: No. I sold the house and the **furniture**, put a few **personal** things in an old **trunk**, and shipped it to my children in New York. That's my **destination**.

【语言点精讲】

1. Excuse me. Is this seat taken?

对不起，这座位有人吗？在美国，如果别人身边有空位置，应征得那人的同意方能落坐。也可这样说- "Excuse me, may I take the seat?"或"Excuse me, anyone sitting here?"

2. Oh, let me help you with this.

让我来帮你吧。这是主动向别人提供帮助时的说法。本情境中，祖父 Malcolm 主动帮助 Elsa 把手提箱放到了行李架上。在美国，公共场合主动帮助女士，是男士有教养的表示。

3. I like the aisle seat better. Please, you sit by the window.

我喜欢靠走道的座位。请你坐在窗边吧。

the aisle seat 靠走道的位置。by 在这里相当于"next to"。

4. But didn't you just get on?

反问句"Didn't you...?"的意思是"难道你不是...?"，表示问者很有理由相信是这么一回事，相当于 "I think you..., am I right?"

get on -上车，上。 get on 可用于火车、公共汽车、飞机等。

5. Small world.

这世界真小。感叹语，熟人邂逅或在外乡遇见同乡人时用。也可以说"It's a small world."

6. He couldn't take time off to come to New York with me.

他脱不开身，不能和我一起上纽约来。

take time off 的意思是"不上班，不去工作，抽出时间，挤出时间"。

ACT 2-2 “说确切点，是 47 年。”

【故事梗概】

在火车上，祖父 Malcolm 与 Elsa 的谈话在继续。一位乘务员走过来到他们身旁，他要看看 Elsa 的车票。

Elsa: Are you married?

Grandpa: My wife died four years ago. She was a wonderful woman. A real friend.

Elsa: I'm sorry. Really, I'm sorry.

Grandpa: Lots of wonderful **memories**. We were married almost fifty years. Well, forty-seven, to be **exact**.

Elsa: John and I **celebrate** our fortieth **anniversary** next month.

Grandpa: Oh, **congratulations**! That's nice. What does John do?

Elsa: He's an **aerospace** engineer and works for Orlando **Aircraft Corporation**. He started with them almost forty years ago. What do you do?

Grandpa: I just retired. Had my own company. A **construction** company. Roads, bridges, big stuff. But I just sold it and retired.

Conductor: Excuse me, ma'am. Ticket, please.

Elsa: Would you kindly hold these keys, please? I have a ticket, I know, I was in the smoking section.

Conductor: It's OK, lady. Take your time.

Grandpa: I'm sure it's in your **purse**, Mrs. Tobin.

Elsa: Oh, here it is.

Grandpa: And here are your keys.

Elsa: Thank you.

【语言点精讲】

1. Are you married?

你结婚了吗？ 动词的过去分词形态常用作形容词，放在 be 动词后面，作表语来修饰主词。如本句中的 married

2. I'm sorry. Really, I'm sorry.

在谈话的过程中，我们可能会谈到一些不愉快的话题，这种情况下，我们应该表示遗憾或者惋惜。如本情景中，祖父 Malcolm 谈到自己的妻子 4 年前去世了，Elsa 女士对此的回应是- "I'm sorry. Really, I'm sorry."（我听了很难过，真的很难过。）

3. We were married almost fifty years. Well, forty-seven, to be exact.

我们结婚有差不多 50 了，呃，说确切点，是 47 年。

to be exact 确切点说，用于对刚说的话进行解释或修正。

美国人比较重视结婚纪念日，在祖父和 Elsa 的话中都谈到了自己结婚的时间。

4. Congratulations!

太好了，恭喜你，祝贺你。当别人告诉你他的喜讯时，就可以向他表示祝贺，对他说"Congratulations!"

5. Would you kindly hold these keys, please?

请你代我拿着这些钥匙，可以吗？

"Would you kindly...?"的意思是“能麻烦您...吗？请您...好吗？”用于正式的、客气的请求别人做某事。

6. Take your time.

慢慢来，别着急。

ACT 2-3 “我迫不及待想见到他们。”

【故事梗概】

在火车上，祖父 Malcolm 同 Elsa 女士谈到了各自去纽约市的原因。Elsa 是要去拜访朋友，而 Malcolm 则要是搬去和自己的儿孙同住。Malcolm 还没有决定是不是要永久住下来，他既不喜欢独自一人生活，又不想失去独立性。

Grandpa: Do you have family in New York?

Elsa: No, no. But I do have very close friends in New York City. We like to go to the theater together. You said you have family in New York.

Grandpa: Yes, indeed. A son and his wife and their three children - my grandchildren.

Elsa: You must be excited.

Grandpa: I can't wait to see them!

Elsa: Are you going to live with them?

Grandpa: Yes.

Elsa: Permanently?

Grandpa: Well...they want me to, but it's too early to know for sure. I'm pretty independent. I tried to teach my kids the importance of independence, but I'm not sure I want to be alone. Some people don't mind being alone. I do.

Elsa: I understand. But tell me. Why did you stop working?

Grandpa: I retired because ...I wanted to be with my family. I didn't want to be alone anymore!

【语言点精讲】

1. But I do have very close friends in New York City.

可我确实有很亲密的朋友在纽约市。句中的 do 表示强调，说话时要重读。

2. Yes, indeed.

对，没错。indeed 用来强调肯定的语气。

3. You must be excited.

你现在一定很激动。

这里情态动词 **must** 加上 **be**，用来表示一种比较肯定的推测，“想必，一定”，而不作“必须”讲。

4. I can't wait to see them!

我迫不及待想见到他们。

"can't wait to do sth." 表示“急于做某事，迫不及待要做某事”，也可以说"can hardly wait to do sth."

5. Well...they want me to, but it's too early to know for sure.

嗯...他们要我这样，但是现在还太早，难以肯定知道。

"too...to..."的意思是“太...以至于不能...”

6. Some people don't mind being alone. I do.

有些人不在乎一个人过。我不行。

这里的“mind”表示“介意，不喜欢，讨厌，反对”等意思，后面如接动词，要用动名词形式。这里的“I do”是“I do mind being alone”的缩略，表示“我介意，我讨厌（一个人生活）”

7. Why did you stop working?

你为什么停止工作了？

"stop doing" 表示停止做某事，即不再做下去。

ACT 3-1 “你很幸运有关心你的家人。”

【故事梗概】

火车到达了纽约市。Eisa 和祖父 Malcolm 互相告别。

[On the Amtrak train later that day. The train is arriving in New York City.]

Voice: Ladies and gentlemen, Amtrak is happy to **announce** our arrival in New York City. The train will be stopping in five minutes. Please check to be sure you have your **belongings**. And have a good stay in the Big Apple. Thank you.

Eisa: Well, here we are. It was so nice meeting you, Mr. Stewart.

Grandpa: And nice meeting you, too, Mrs. Tobin. Please look us up. We're in the phone book. Dr. Philip Stewart, in Riverdale.

Eisa: Your son?

Grandpa: That's right. And have a good time in New York.

Eisa: And don't be so **independent**. You're very lucky to have a **caring** family.

【语言点精讲】

1. Amtrak

Amtrak 是火车公司的名字，一般译为“美国火车公司”。是由三个词组合而成的：American, travel 和 track。

2. And have a good stay in the Big Apple.

祝你在纽约过得愉快。Have a good stay in...用于祝对方来访愉快。

the Big Apple, 纽约市的别称。

3. Please look us up.

look (us) up 相当于“call or visit (us)”，即“与（我们）联系，到（我们）家里来玩”。这个短语用来邀对方来访。

4. We're in the phone book.

你可以在电话簿中找到我们（家的地址和电话号码）。美国的电话簿上不只有姓名和电话号码，还列有住址。

5. And don't be so independent. You're very lucky to have a caring family.

还有，别太不依赖别人了。你很幸运有关心你的家人。这是 Eisa 的临别赠言。短暂的旅途交谈使 Eisa 洞察了 Malcolm 的心境，她临别的赠言既率直又温情。

independent 独立的，不依赖的，有主见的。这是美国人非常重视的一种品质。

family 既是家庭，又是家里人。在从父母的角度说时，family 常指子女，如：They have a big family.（他们子女多。）

ACT 3-2 “这张照片使我想起了过去的岁月。”

【故事梗概】

在 Stewart 家的客厅里，一家人在和祖父 Malcolm 交谈。在家中 Malcolm 受到了儿孙两代人的热烈欢迎，惟一的遗憾是没有见到酷似故去的祖母的孙女 Susan。

Robbie: When can we go fishing?

Grandpa: Robbie, we'll go fishing soon, and we'll take your dad with us.

Philip: I'm ready, Grandpa. You name the day.

Ellen: That's a great idea, Grandpa! Philip needs a day off.

Robbie: Let's give him our presents - now.

Richard: Good idea.

Grandpa: Presents - for me?

Richard: From me and Marilyn.

Robbie: And this one's from me. I looked all over the house to find it.

Grandpa: Richard, these are terrific pictures. This one really brings back memories. You remember that day, Robbie?

Robbie: I sure do. It was fun.

Grandpa: Oh, I'm sorry Susan isn't here. I miss her very much.

Ellen: She feels bad, too, Grandpa. She called to say the plane was delayed. You know airports.

Grandpa: I can't wait to see her. She looks just like Grandma at that age.

【语言点精讲】

1. You name the day.

你说哪天吧。name 用做动词时，在口语中常用于提出建议，做出安排或说出什么的名字。又如：Name the place, and we'll be there.

（你说哪里，我们就去哪里。）

He named a Price.（他开了个价。）

2. Philip needs a day off.

a day off 休息一天，休一天假。

3. Let's give him our presents - now.

咱们把礼物给他吧——现在就给。

美国人有时喜欢送给久别重逢的亲友一个 welcome present 表示对他们的欢迎。所以 Stewart 一家送给 Grandpa family's welcome present 来表示他们对他的爱。

4. I looked all over the house to find it.

我在家里找了个遍才找到的。

all over the house 指屋子里的每个角落。

5. This one really brings back memories.

bring back memories（使我想起了过去的岁月）。用来表达一种怀旧的感情。

6. I can't wait to see her. She looks just like Grandma at that age.

我迫不及待地想见到她，她长得和她奶奶在她那个年龄时一样。

can't wait to do sth. 迫不及待地想做某事

look just like... 看起来就和...一样

ACT 3-3 “这是我们家的家谱”

【故事梗概】

祖父感到累了，他想要休息了。Ellen 和 Philip 陪他去了他的房间。祖父打开了自己寄来的大行李箱，并拿出了自己制作的家谱送给了自己的儿子和儿媳。出差的 Susan 赶了回来，她冲进了祖父的房间。

Grandpa: I'd better **unpack**. I started traveling twenty-four hours ago. I'm not so young anymore.

Ellen: Don't you want something to eat?

Grandpa: No, thanks. After a good night's sleep, I'll enjoy breakfast even more.

Philip: Well, come on, Dad. Ellen and I'll take you to your room.

Robbie: I'm sure glad you're here, Grandpa.

Richard: Good night, Grandpa.

Marilyn: Pleasant dreams.

Grandpa: Philip, do you have the key to the trunk?

Philip: I have the key, but it doesn't work.

Grandpa: I sent the wrong key. I have something for you. I made it myself. I think you'll enjoy it. I **researched** it for over a year. It's our family tree.

Ellen: Oh, Grandpa! How exciting!

Philip: **Fabulous!** Why, I didn't know that your grandfather was born in **Germany**.

Grandpa: Lots of interesting information about our family. A gift from me.

Ellen: Thank you so much.

Susan: Grandpa! Grandpa! Oh, Grandpa, I'm so happy to see you!

Grandpa: Oh, you look so beautiful, Susan. My granddaughter. Like I always said, you look just like Grandma.

Philip: I think you're going to be very happy here with us.

Ellen: I know you will.

Grandpa: I don't feel alone anymore.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'd better unpack.

I'd better do sth. 我最好做某事

unpack: 打开（行李等），是反义前缀 un 加上动词 pack 构成的。

2. Pleasant dreams.

做个好梦，在别人准备就寝前的道别语。亦说 "Sweet dreams."

3. I have the key, but it doesn't work.

钥匙在我这儿，但它打不开。

work 的意思是“起作用，行得通，有效”，是不及物动词，不带宾语。

4. It's our family tree.

family tree: 家谱，家族的历史。

美国人现在流行写“家谱”，甚至有专门的公司帮助寻找家谱。

5. Fabulous!

太好了。这是口语用法。

美语中说某物很好，有不少夸张性的说法，如：wonderful, marvelous, fantastic, terrific 以及这里出现的 fabulous 等。其中除了 wonderful 外，都不宜用于正式场合，因为不免有些孩子气。另外，注意 terrible 是很糟糕的意思，请不要与 terrific 混淆。

6. Why, I didn't know that your grandfather was born in Germany.

Why: 你看。这里的 why 不是疑问词，而是用在句首表示惊讶的情绪。

7. Like I always said, you look just like Grandma.

我一直这么说，你长得像奶奶。

Like I always said: 就像我一直说的那样。这是一种比较口语的说法，在书面的较正式的语言中，通常不用 like 而用连词 as。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 4 课：没问题

ACT 1-1 “没问题，小事一桩。”

【故事梗概】

星期五傍晚，从有氧运动高级班回来的 Marilyn 一进屋就一屁股坐在地板上。她累坏了。她告诉 Richard 高级班的运动强度很大，但是 Richard 认为如果换作他，这种程度的锻炼完全是小菜一碟。

Marilyn: I am **exhausted**. My new exercise class is so hard.

Richard: Your new exercise class?

Marilyn: Yeah. My new **advanced** exercise class.

Richard: Why advanced?

Marilyn: My **instructor** thought that the beginner's class was too easy for me.

Richard: Too easy for you?

Marilyn: Don't laugh. In the beginner's class, they give you a chance to rest between exercises.

Richard: So?

Marilyn: The advanced class is **nonstop**.

Richard: I lift weights every morning for sixty minutes without stopping. No problem.

Marilyn: Listen, Richard, doing **aerobics** for an hour is a lot different than lifting weights.

Richard: Yeah. Quite a bit different. I think aerobics is easy. I could work out in your class with no problem.

Marilyn: You think so?

Richard: Oh, without a doubt. When's the next class?

Marilyn: Tomorrow morning at ten o'clock. Try it.

Richard: Tomorrow morning after lifting weights, I'll try aerobics. It's a **snap**. Tomorrow morning at ten o'clock.

【语言点精讲】

1. My instructor thought that the beginner's class was too easy for me.

我的教练认为初学班对我太容易了。

too+ 形容词或副词+ for sb., 表示对于某人来说是过于.....了。

2. No problem.

"No problem."与后文出现的"It's a snap."都是“没问题，小事一桩”的意思，用来表示某事很容易，做起来毫无问题。

3. Doing aerobics for an hour is a lot different than lifting weights.

连续做 1 小时有氧运动可跟练哑铃大不一样。

different than: 跟...不一样。这里用 different from 更规范，但很多美国人跟 Marilyn 一样，在 different 之后使用 than，这已经成为了一种约定熟成的用法。

aerobics: (通过散步、跑步、游泳、划船、骑车、舞蹈、体操等有节奏运动等增强心肺循环功能的)有氧运动，健身操。也可以说 aerobic exercise.

lift weights: 举重。在这里指练哑铃。

4. I could work out in your class with no problem.

要我到你们班上去锻炼锻炼，绝不会有困难。Richard 说这话的意思是，假如有机会一试的话，即可证明我的能力。

I could...: 我可以.....，我能.....

work out: 这里的意思是锻炼，尤指健身、健美训练。

5. You think so?

你真的这样认为吗？当对别人的意见不能确定或赞同时，可以使用这句话。

6. Oh, without a doubt.

without a doubt: 相当于"sure; of course."（当然，毫无问题。）这是用非常肯定的口气来强调自己的话。

ACT 1-2 “你敢打赌吗？”

【故事梗概】

星期六早上, Richard 在练哑铃时, Marilyn 提起了前一天他讲过的要在练哑铃之后再去参加有氧健身运动的高级班课程的事。Richard 坚称那些运动量对他来说只是小意思。Richard 和 Marilyn 就此打了个赌。

Marilyn: Aren't you going to the aerobics class this morning?

Richard: Of course. Easy. No sweat.

Marilyn: You are not going to be able to move after this and the aerobics class.

Richard: Are you kidding me? It's going to be a piece of cake.

Richard: You want to bet?

Marilyn: Yeah. What's the bet ?

Richard: I bet I can go one hour in your class this morning and not feel a thing!

Marilyn: The bet is - I win, and you cook dinner for the entire family. Or you win, and I cook dinner for the entire family.

Richard: It's a bet.

Marilyn: OK. Call my instructor, Jack Davis, right now . His number is 555-8842. The advanced class starts at ten o'clock.

Richard: Well, it's eight twenty now.

Marilyn: It only takes eight minutes by bicycle to the aerobics class. Give him a call.

【语言点精讲】

1. No sweat.

不成问题, 一点儿不费劲。

2. Are you kidding me?

你在开玩笑吧? 也可以说 You must be kidding!

3. It's going to be a piece of cake.

a piece of cake: 形容某事很 easy, 做起来不费吹灰之力。

4. You want to bet?

你敢打赌吗? 是 "Do you want to bet?" 的缩略形式。口语中, "Do you..." 这种句型不说 Do 的情形很普遍。

bet 在这里用作动词, 意思是 "打赌, 赌"。

注意 Richard 在说 want to 时, 把发音连成 wanna, 这是非正式场合口语中常用的发音。

5. Yeah, What's the bet?

赌就赌, 你说赌什么吧? 这里的 bet 用作名词, 意思是 "赌注"。

6. I bet I can go one hour in your class this morning and not feel a thing!

我赌我能在你们班上锻炼 1 个小时并且一点也不感觉累!

I can go...: 此处 go 指 "锻炼"。注意发音: can 读做 k+n, 当 can 后面跟动词时, 我们常不必重读它, 这句正是如此。

not feel a thing 是 "毫不感到累 (难)" 的意思。

7. Well, it's eight twenty now.

这里的 Well 表示说话人的犹豫。Richard 推说现在已是 8 点 20 分了, 是想好歹赖过这一次。

8. It only takes eight minutes by bicycle to the aerobics class.

Marilyn 不依不饶, 对 Richard 说 "骑车到健身中心只需 8 分钟。"

It takes + 时间 + to do something: 表示干某事需要多少时间。

ACT 1-3 "你自己别忘了我们打过的赌。"

【故事梗概】

Richard 给 Marilyn 的健身教练 Jack Davis 打了电话, 预约了当天上午 10 点的高级健身课程。随后, 他离开家去健身中心。出发前, 他和 Marilyn 互相提醒对方不要忘记刚刚打过的赌。

Jack: Davis Aerobics Center for Good Health.

Richard: Jack Davis, please.

Jack: This is Jack Davis.

Richard: Hello. This is Richard Stewart. My wife, Marilyn Stewart, is a member of your **program**. I'd like to come to the ten o'clock **advanced** class this morning.

Jack: Oh, fine, fine. Be here a few minutes early. You need to complete some forms before the class.

Richard: Thanks. I'm on my way over.

Jack: Good-bye.

Richard: Bye-bye. It's all set. I'm going.

Marilyn: Bye.

Richard: See you later.

Marilyn: Good luck.

Richard: Don't forget about the bet. Dinner for the entire family. And that **includes** Susan.

Marilyn: Don't you forget.

【语言点精讲】

1. Davis Aerobics Center for Good Health.

这里是 Davis 健身训练中心。

在打电话到一个公司或者团体的时候，对方接电话的人通常会先报一下公司或团体的名字。

2. Jack Davis, please.

请问 Jack Davis 在不在？打电话用语。也可以说 "May I speak to Jack Davis, please?"

3. You need to complete some forms before the class.

你在上课前要填几张表格。

complete some forms: 填写一些表格。

4. I'm on my way over.

我这就过来。on my way over: 马上就（或正在）过来。

5. It's all set.

都搞定了。set 在这里的意思是“安排妥当”。

6. Don't you forget.

你自己别忘了。Marilyn 把 you 念重，意在让 Richard 明白，他一定会输的。

这是带主语 you 的否定命令句，这里用来强调“你自己怎么样”，常用在关系较亲密的人中间。

ACT 2-1 “可是你不认为这是个好的创作题材吗？”

【故事梗概】

健身教练 Jack Davis 给 Richard 做了简单的健康检查。在交谈中，Jack 了解到 Richard 是一位摄影师，而 Jack 正好需要一些照片来给自己的健身中心做广告。于是 Richard 以拍照片代替了上午的锻炼。

Jack: OK, Richard. That's terrific. Your **pressure** is 120 over 75, and that's fine. Now stand up, please. Good, it's 122 over 80. You can sit down now. When was your last complete **physical**?

Richard: Six months ago.

Jack: Good. Do you have any back or **knee** problems?

Richard: Nope. I am in perfect health.

Jack: What do you do for a living, Mr. Stewart?

Richard: I'm a **photographer**.

Jack: Interesting. What do you photograph?

Richard: Everything. The American **scene**. People, places, events.

Jack: Did you ever think of photographing an **aerobics** class?

Richard: No...I can't remember taking pictures of people exercising.

Jack: But don't you think it'd be a good subject?

Richard: Sure.

Jack: I need some good photos for my [advertising](#), Mr. Stewart. Maybe you can photograph a class, and I can give you and Mrs. Stewart a month of classes - free.

Richard: When can I photograph a class?

Jack: Anytime.

Richard: How about today?

Jack: Terrific!

【语言点精讲】

1. Your pressure is 120 over 75.

你的血压是收缩压（高压）120，舒张压（低压）75。

这里的 pressure 是指 blood pressure（血压）。

2. When was your last complete physical?

你上次全身检查是什么时候？

这里 complete physical 意思是 complete physical examination（全身检查）。

3. Nope. I am in perfect health.

没有。我健康状况完全良好。

Nope, “不，没有”，意思与“No.”相同。此处指背部(back)和膝盖(knee)均无毛病。这是一个很不正式的词。

4. What do you do for a living?

你是干哪一行的？这是询问对方职业的一种方式。

注意这里“What do you”的发音，它在口语中常连在一起发音，成为“Waddaya”。

5. The American scene.

美国风情。

6. Did you ever think of photographing an aerobics class?

你想到过拍一个健身操班上课的照片吗？

“Did you ever...”可以用来询问别人是否作过某事。

注意 Jack 发音，他把“did you”读成了“didja”。did you 在口语中常常被读成 didja。

7. But don't you think it'd be a good subject?

可是你不认为这是个好的创作题材吗？

这又是一句反问的话，用来询问别人的看法，旨在得到或暗示正面的答复。

it'd 是 it would 的缩写，用 would 代替 will，表示不肯定、客气、谦虚等感情，是一种现在虚拟语态。subject 在这里指“创作题材”。

另外，请注意“don't you”的发音，它在口语中常连读成“donta”。

8. Maybe you can photograph a class, and I can give you and Mrs. Stewart a month of classes - free.

也许你可以拍一个班在上课，我可以免费让你和 Stewart 夫人上一个月的课。

Maybe you can...是用来婉转地请求别人帮忙的句型。

ACT 2-2 “我没法相信！”

【故事梗概】

Richard 在健身中心拍了很多照片后回家了。他活蹦乱跳的表现让 Marilyn 很是怀疑。她无法相信一个人在有氧运动后会腿和手臂一点都不痛。

Jack: Hi.

Instructor: Oh, hi.

Jack: Are we ready to go?

Instructor: Yeah. Yeah. Let's get in our lines. We're going to take it slow first. [Stretch](#) up...and we're going to go left

first ...2, 3, 4...now **switch**. OK, hold to the right. Sunrises. Stretch it out. Flat back. Bring it up...and **twists**... and side...
2, 3... and left ...push...push...turn...hit the floor. Take it side again. ... OK, and switch. Stretch it out. And we're going to
warm down with a **tango**. Left, right. Enjoy it.

Marilyn: Richard, did you go to the Davis Aerobics class today?

Richard: Yes, I went to the aerobics class today.

Marilyn: What is wrong with you?

Richard: Nothing, I am in excellent health. I have **ideal** blood pressure. A perfect heart. In other words, I'm in wonderful condition.

Marilyn: Richard, did you go to the aerobics class, really?

Richard: Don't forget to invite Susan for dinner.

Marilyn: And your legs don't hurt?

Richard: Hurt? What do you mean?

Marilyn: What about your arms? Lift your arms up like this. And they don't hurt--not even a little?

Richard: Nope.

Marilyn: You are in great condition. I can't believe it!

【语言点精讲】

1. Let's get in our lines. We're going to take it slow first.

请大家站好位置。我们开始先慢一点。本情景出现了许多描述健身操动作的短语，我们来一起看一下：

stretch up: 向上伸展。

we're going to go left first: 先向左边。

now switch: 现在换方向

OK, hold to the right: 好，保持在右边。

sunrises: 双手合抱上举。

stretch it out: 伸展。

flat back: 水平拉回。

bring it up...and twists... and side...: 抬起...然后扭腰... 然后侧转。

and left ...push...push...turn...: 向左...推...推...转身。

hit the floor: 触地板。

take it side again... OK, and switch: 再来侧转...好，再换方向。

And we're going to warm down with a tango.: 我们用探戈舞来作为放松动作。warm down, 指运动后的放松运动，整理运动。

2. I am in excellent health.

in excellent health 指“身体棒极了”。与后面出现的“in wonderful condition”以及“in great condition”同义。

3. Lift you arms up like this.

像我这样抬起胳膊来。lift arms up, “抬起胳膊，把胳膊举起来”。

4. I can't believe it.

我没法相信！用以表达惊讶，怀疑，难以置信的感情。

ACT 3-1 “我早料到了!”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 为采办晚饭的原料而发愁时，Richard 于心不忍，向 Marilyn 坦白了自己并没有在高级健身班的课程上运动。Marilyn 要求

Richard 和她一起再去一次，并通过这次的结果来决定到底由谁来为全家人做晚饭。

Marilyn: Grandpa, Ellen, Philip, Robbie, you and me. That's six **steaks**.

Richard: Don't forget Susan.

Marilyn: Seven steaks. Cooking dinner for the entire family is not so easy. The shopping: the salad: tomatoes, **lettuce**,

cucumbers and onions. The main course: steak and potatoes. Richard, how much broccoli do I need for seven people?

Richard: Marilyn, I have to tell you something. At today's exercise class...

Marilyn: Yes, Richard.

Richard: Well, I didn't really exercise.

Marilyn: I knew it!

Richard: I wanted to, but Jack Davis needed a photographer. I'm sorry, Marilyn.

Marilyn: I don't understand. Did you exercise or not?

Richard: No. Instead of exercising, I photographed the class.

Marilyn: And you didn't exercise?

Richard: No.

Marilyn: There's another advanced class today at four o'clock. We'll go together.

Richard: What about the bet?

Marilyn: Oh, the bet is still on, but you shop for the groceries. Remember, you win, and I cook dinner for the entire family.

Richard: You win, and I cook dinner for the entire family.

Marilyn: Including Susan. Four o'clock at the advanced exercise class. With me.

【语言点精讲】

1. How much broccoli do I need for seven people?

7 个人吃饭得买多少花椰菜？

how much 后面跟不可数名词，如 broccoli, lettuce。how many 后面则跟可数名词，如 tomatoes, onions。

2. Marilyn, I have to tell you something.

玛丽琳，有件事我得告诉你。

在向人承认自己隐瞒的事时可以用这句话来开头。谈一件不幸或不愉快的事时也可以用它来开头。

3. I knew it!

我早料到了！

Richard 终于说出实话，Marilyn 便埋怨丈夫一句。I knew it 之所以用过去时，是因为意思是“我早知道”，“我本来（当时）就知道了”。

4. Instead of exercising, I photographed the class.

我没参加锻炼，而是给他们班拍照来着。

instead of...表示“而不是.....”，“没有.....，而是”。后面跟名词、代词宾格或动名词。of 后面的是没有做的事，主句里的动词是做了的事。

5. Oh, the bet is still on.

嗨，这个赌还得接着打呀。此处 on 是副词，表示某件事或者某种状况仍在延续。又如：

Don't worry about grammar, so long as the communication is still on. （只要交际活动能够有效进行，就不必为语法伤脑筋。）

The battle is still on. （战斗还在进行。）

ACT 3-2 “这是你生平第一回上健身操课吗？”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 和 Richard 一同去了高级健身课程。1 个小时的课程让 Richard 精疲力尽，他承认了高级班的课程确实强度很大。Marilyn 心疼他，主动提出帮他做晚饭。

Jack: Don't forget to breathe.

Instructor: Skip, hop, front. Twist...again...OK, now...scissors.

Richard: This is fun. It's a piece of cake.

Marilyn: Yeah. Just wait.

Instructor: 5, 6, 7, go right, 1, 2, back, 2, 3, 1, 2, 3, pony, pony... 1, 2, 3, kick...1, 2, 3, kick...pony. And twist, twist.

Jack: OK. Let's pick up the pace.

Marilyn: How are you doing, Richard?

Richard: I can **barely** move.

Instructor: 2, 3, 4, front. Now we're going to run it off. Front... knees up, knees up.

Jack: OK. Finish off by jogging in place. OK. Keep those knees up. All right. That's it for today. Thank you, everyone. See you next week.

Richard: Thank you, Jack, but no thank you.

Marilyn: The advanced exercise class is not so easy, huh?

Richard: No, no, you were right. I was wrong.

Marilyn: Come on, Richard. Get up. Let's go. You have to cook dinner for the entire family.

Richard: Marilyn, I'm **exhausted**. I can't move.

Marilyn: Oh, you'll do it. It's a piece of cake.

Jack: Excuse me, Richard, Marilyn.

Richard: You are a terrific instructor, Jack.

Jack: Thanks. But I have a question. Is this your very first advanced aerobics class?

Richard: Yes. It is.

Jack: You are in great shape, Richard. Very few people last in this class for the full hour the very first time.

Marilyn: It's true. You are in great shape.

Richard: Thanks!

Marilyn: I think we'll cook dinner together.

【语言点精讲】

1. Don't forget to breathe.

别忘记（调整）呼吸。

本情景中出现了许多用于表述健身操的动作用的短语，让我们一起来看一下：

exercising to music: 随着音乐做操，在音乐的伴奏下跳健身操。

skip, hop, front: 跳，蹦，向前。

twist: 扭腰。

scissors: 剪刀步。

go right: 向右。

back: 后退。

pony: 原义是“小马驹”，此处指“像小马一样跳跃，垫步”。

kick: 踢腿。

pick up the pace: 加快速度。pick up 在这里的意思是“加速”。

Now we're going to run it off.: 好，我们加快跑动。

knees up: 膝盖抬高。

jogging in place: 原地慢跑。

2. That's it for today.

今天就到这儿。

3. No, no, you were right.

是，是，你说的对。这里的 No, no 指 not so easy, 而不是用来否定 Marilyn 说的话。汉英之间这种表达习惯上的差异，请加留心。

4. Is this your very first advanced aerobics class?

这是你生平第一回上健身操课吗？

very: 与最高级形容词或 first, last 等连用时也表示强调，意思是“就是...，确实是...”，或“绝对的，最最.....的”。

5. You are in great shape.

in great shape 身体状况很好。这是一种非正式场合的用语。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第5课：钓鱼秘诀

ACT 1-1 “反正也不是一场重要的比赛。”

【故事梗概】

星期六早上，Grandpa 在厨房里做早饭。Robbie 进来了。他们谈起了这个周末的计划。原来 Philip 答应带 Robbie 去看棒球赛而又因为工作太忙而失约，Robbie 只好用这场比赛反正并不重要来自我安慰。

Robbie: Hi, Grandpa.

Grandpa: Hi, Robbie.

Robbie: Can I help?

Grandpa: Yes, indeed. Hand me two eggs from the refrigerator, and I'll make you two fried eggs.

Robbie: How about some bacon?

Grandpa: I made enough for an army. You going to the baseball game today? It's a perfect day for it - a little cloudy but nice and warm.

Robbie: Dad and I were planning to go to the game, but he has to work today, and my friends don't want to go. It's not an important game, anyway.

Grandpa: Do you have any other plans for the day?

Robbie: I'll work on my computer. I have a new math program, and I want to learn how to use it.

Grandpa: Maybe you can teach me how to work on a computer someday.

Robbie: Anytime. It's really easy, but, like anything, you need to work at it, Grandpa.

【语言点精讲】

1. I made enough for an army.

我做的已经够一支军队吃的了。

enough for an army: 很多，远远超过需要。用这话表示东西已经够多了。

2. You going to the baseball game today?

"You going...?"是"Are you going...?"的一种在非正式场合使用的简略的说法，用以询问别人的计划。询问别人的计划，也可以说"Do you have any plan for the day?"

baseball game: 棒球赛。

3. It's a perfect day for it - a little cloudy but nice and warm.

今天可是（打棒球的）好天气——有一点多云，可是很温暖舒服。

a perfect day: 天气极好。cloudy: 阴，多云。

4. It's not an important game, anyway.

反正也不是一场重要的比赛。

anyway: 不管怎样，总之，反正。可以使用这个词来表示说话人认为某事并不是很重要的，常放在句首或句尾。

5. Maybe you can teach me how to work on a computer someday.

也许哪一天你能教我怎样用电脑。

Maybe you can...也许你能.....，用这个短语用于询问别人是否可以做某事。

6. It's really easy, but, like anything, you need to work at it, Grandpa.

实际上很容易，可是得下功夫，爷爷，跟学一切东西一样。

work at it: 致力于.....，钻研。

ACT 1-2 “也许你爸爸和我可以带你去钓鱼”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 建议第二天去钓鱼，Robbie 欣然同意。随后，Grandpa 试着同 Philip 提起这个话题。可是 Philip 太忙了，他急匆匆的吃过早饭就离开了。

Robbie: This **bacon** is great. I love **crispy** bacon.

Grandpa: Oh, what are you doing tomorrow?

Robbie: Nothing much.

Grandpa: Well, maybe your dad and I could take you fishing with us.

Robbie: I'd like that, but...

Grandpa: But what?

Robbie: But Dad is always so busy.

Grandpa: Well, can you come fishing with me tomorrow?

Robbie: Sure, I can.

Grandpa: Robbie says you can't take him to the game today.

Philip: I really feel bad about it, but they need me at the hospital today, in the children's **ward**.

Grandpa: I understand.

Philip: Maybe we can spend some time together next weekend.

Grandpa: **Definitely**. We should. You and Robbie and me. Remember our first fishing trip?

Philip: I sure do.... Well, I've got to run, Dad. See you later.

【语言点精讲】

1. What are you doing tomorrow?

明天你要做什么？这句话相当于“What will you do tomorrow? ”，用来询问别人的计划。

现在进行时可以用来表示计划中未来某一具体时间预定要进行的事。

2. Nothing much.

没什么要紧的事。也可以说“Nothing important.”

3. Well, maybe your dad and I could take you fishing with us.

嗯，也许你爸爸和我可以带你去钓鱼。

可以用“Maybe you could/can...” 来开始一个句子，用来建议某人做某事。

有如后面 Grandpa 对 Philip 说的“Maybe we can spend sometime together next weekend.”（也许下个周末我们可以一起相聚。）

4. Well, can you come fishing with me tomorrow?

那么，你明天能和我一起去钓鱼吗？

在 come 或 go 后面加上 doing，表示“来（去）做一下某事”，是常见的句型。

5. I really feel bad about it.

我的确感到过意不去。

6. Remember our first fishing trip?

fishing trip: 外出钓鱼。钓鱼是美国最常见的休闲活动之一，但在很多州里，随便垂钓可能是非法的。一般都要购买钓鱼执照，并遵照各地的特殊规定。例如在若干长度以下的鱼，钓上之后须再放回水中，或对于钓竿的使用，有些特别的限制等。

7. I've got to run.

我得马上走了。这是一个非正式表达法。也可以说“I've got to go.”

这里的“have got to...”是“have to...”的较口语化的说法。

ACT 1-3 “我只是在当个好爷爷而已。”

【故事梗概】

Philip 从医院回来，看见 Grandpa 正在摆弄钓具。Grandpa 想劝诱 Philip 也去钓鱼，用尽了心思，唤起了 Philip 对少年时光的追忆。
Philip 决定放下第二天的工作带 Robbie 去钓鱼。

Philip: Going fishing?

Grandpa: I'm thinking about it. So, how's work?

Philip: Oh, the usual problems.

Grandpa: You're working pretty hard these days.

Philip: I guess I am.

Grandpa: When did you last go fishing with Robbie?

Philip: I remember exactly. It was on his birthday, June second, two years ago. We didn't catch anything.

Grandpa: Remember our fishing trips?

Philip: Yes. I loved them.

Grandpa: Remember catching your first fish?

Philip: How can I forget? I fell out of the boat! We had some good times together.

Grandpa: Yes, we did. Maybe we should do it again.

Philip: How about tomorrow?

Grandpa: Don't you have to work?

Philip: My paper work will wait.

Grandpa: Oh, Robbie will be **thrilled**. I am, too, Son.

Philip: I want to spend more time with Robbie.

Grandpa: Tomorrow. It'll be like old times for you and me. And Robbie will love it.

Philip: Well, what's the weather going to be like?

Grandpa: Radio says sunny and **mild**.

Philip: Well, I'll tell Robbie. And thanks, Dad.

Grandpa: Don't thank me. I'm just being a grandfather.

【语言点精讲】

1. Going fishing?

要去钓鱼吗？动词 go 可与其他表示活动的动词的 ing 形式连用，表示“去做某事”。如 go running（跑步），go swimming（去游泳），go dancing（去跳舞），go shopping（去购物）等。

2. I'm thinking about it.

think about: 考虑，尤指计划，看其是否可行。

3. Remember catching your first fish?

记得你头一次钓到一条鱼吗？remember doing something 意为记得曾做某事，而 remember to do something 是记住要去做某件事。

4. I fell out of the boat!

注意 Philip 发音时“out of the boat”读成“outa the boat”。在口语中，of 一词中的 f 常常不发音。

5. We had some good times together.

我们在一起度过一段美好的时光。

have some good times 是“玩得好”的意思，与 have some fun 用法相近。

6. Maybe we should do it again.

Maybe (we) should... 也许（我们）应该……，这是用来提建议的另一种句法。

7. It'll be like old times.

过去的美好时光又要重现。当未来发生的某种事与过去的某个愉快的经历相似时可用这个句子。

8. What's the weather going to be like?

天气会是怎么样？这是一个询问未来天气情况的问句。

9. I'm just being a grandfather.

我只是在当个好爷爷而已。

这里用了动词 be 的现在进行时，表示人们在说话时正在进行的短暂活动或行为，常含有各种感情色彩。如：

The boy is being naughty. 那孩子在（故意）调皮捣蛋。

You're being patient with us. 你（特意）对我们耐心。

You're being stubborn. 你是在（成心）固执己见。

ACT 2-1 “为了要钓鱼，你得这么做。”

【故事梗概】

次日清早，在纽约州北部一个湖畔，Grandpa, Philip 和 Robbie 在准备钓鱼。他们遇到了一个叫 Albert 的小男孩。他也在钓鱼，但是他只有一个人。

Robbie: This is really neat! When do we eat?

Philip: First, we have to catch some fish. In order to catch fish, you have to do this. Here we go. That's it. Then drop it into the water. All of this comes before eating. OK?

Robbie: How do you know so much about fishing?

Philip: Grandpa taught me. We spent a lot of time fishing together. Now, the important thing is to get the hook close to the fish. All right? Like this.

Robbie: I think I see some fish right under us, Dad.

Philip: Oh, not a chance!

Robbie: I just saw a big one!

Grandpa: Hi, there!

Albert: Hi.

Grandpa: What's your name?

Albert: Albert.

Grandpa: Are you all alone?

Albert: Yes, sir.

Grandpa: How old are you, Albert?

Albert: I'm ten.

Philip: Where's your father?

Albert: He's up there at the lodge.

Philip: Does he know you're here?

Albert: Yes, sir.

Philip: Ok, Robbie, maybe you should watch him. The water's pretty deep here.

Robbie: I'll watch him, Dad.

【语言点精讲】

1. In order to catch fish, you have to do this.

为了要钓鱼，你得这么做。in order to...为了，以便；想要。

2. Here we go.

在这里的意思是"We're starting now. "，现在我们可以开始。这是一种非正式的表达法。

3. We spent a lot of time fishing together.

我们曾多次一起钓鱼。spend + 时间 + doing something 表示“花了多少时间做某事”。

4. Not a chance!

不可能。意思相当于"That's impossible. "

5. Hi, there!

你好。这是一种口语式打招呼方式。

6. Are you all alone?

就你一个人吗？all 在这里的意思是“完全，就”，常用以加强语气。

ACT 2-2 “鱼，鱼，给我送条鱼来。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 已经饿了，可是还没有钓到鱼，Grandpa 教了他一个让鱼上钩的“钓鱼秘诀”。念了遍“秘诀”之后，Robbie 还真的钓到了一条鱼。

Philip 只钓上了一只靴子。

Robbie: What time is it?

Grandpa: It's almost lunchtime, and no fish yet.

Robbie: I can go up to the lodge for some hot dogs and drinks.

Philip: No way! We're here to catch our lunch.

Grandpa: To catch fish, you need the right magic.

Philip: That's right. I forgot! The right magic. Do it for Robbie, Dad.

Grandpa: You remember?

Philip: Sure. Come on.

Grandpa: Well, first, you have to turn your hat around like this. Then you close your eyes and say the magic words. Fish, fish, send me a fish.

Robbie: Fish, fish, send me a fish...I got one!

Grandpa: See, it works!

Robbie: It's a big one!

Philip: Well, it always worked for me, too.

Robbie: Grandpa, get the net, please!

Robbie: Dad, you got one, too!

Philip: You bet I have!

Grandpa: Easy, Philip, easy.

Robbie: Sorry, Dad.

Philip: Well, one more and I've got a pair of boots.

Robbie: You didn't say the magic words.

Grandpa: Robbie's right.

Philip: Yes, but you did, and we've got our lunch.

【语言点精讲】

1. No way!

不行，决不可以。相当于"Absolutely not; forget it."

2. Well, first, you have to turn your hat around like this. Then you close your eyes and say the magic words.

Fish, fish, send me a fish.

首先，你得把帽子这样转过来。然后你闭上眼睛念咒语，鱼，鱼，给我送条鱼来。

First...then....，首先...然后....，用来描述顺序。

3. See, it works!

你瞧，很灵吧！work 在这里是指“有效，起作用”。随后 Philip 说的"Well, it always worked for me, too."，里面的 work 也是这个意思。

4. You bet I have!

当然了我也钓到一条！

You bet 相当于 "You can be sure. " (当然了)。

5. One more and I've got a pair of boots.

再钓一只我就有一双靴子了。这是 Philip 用来自我调侃的话。这里的 and 表示必然会发生的后果，又如：

Say that again and I'll hit you. (你再说一遍我就揍你。)

One wrong step and you fall down the cliff. (走错一步，你就会掉下悬崖。)

ACT 2-3 “醒醒，孩子。”

【故事梗概】

Philip 开始烤 Robbie 钓上来的鱼，他把它烤得有点焦了。这时，他们听到了 Albert 呼救的声音。Albert 掉到水里了。他们赶过去救人。

Philip: Let's build a fire and cook it! Come on, Albert, you can help us!

Albert: I want to stay here and fish.

Grandpa: All right, but be careful.

Robbie: Is it finished yet?

Philip: I think so. I hope you like your fish well done.

Grandpa: Burned, you mean.

Philip: Hey, I'm a doctor, not a chef.

Albert: Help! Help! I can't swim!

Robbie: Dad! Grandpa! He fell in!

Philip: Easy does it, Robbie. That a boy. That's it.

Grandpa: He's not breathing, Philip!

Philip: Robbie, run to the car! Bring a blanket and my medical bag.

Robbie: Yes, Dad.

Philip: Now, come on, son. Come on, son.

Grandpa: Breathe, Albert!

【语言点精讲】

1. Let's build a fire and cook it!

咱们生起火来把它做熟吧！

Let's... / Let us..., 用来建议别人与自己一起做某事。

2. Is it finished yet?

做好了吗？用以询问食物是否已经准备好了。

3. Burned, you mean.

你的意思是说烧焦了。you mean 可以用于纠正对方的话或者确定对方的意思和自己理解得是否相同。本情境中，Philip 说 "I hope you like your fish well done." 这里 well done 指煎（炸）得十分熟的（牛排、肉块等）。而实际上鱼已经有点烤焦了，于是 Grandpa 以开玩笑方式纠正他。

4. Easy does it.

别慌，慢点。与 "take it easy, take things easy" 同义。

5. That a boy. That's it.

两句的意义相同，都是“对了，就这样”的意思，是在夸奖别人干得好或干得对的时候说的。

6. Now, come on, son.

醒醒，孩子。son：孩子。Albert 当然不是 Philip 的儿子，但是年纪大的人常常直接用 son 来称呼小男孩。

ACT 3-1 “咱们还回去钓鱼好吗？”

【故事梗概】

Philip 救了 Albert 的命，Albert 的父亲对他非常感谢。在 Grandpa, Philip 和 Robbie 准备返回去钓鱼的时候，Philip 的 BP 呼机响了。

Robbie: Here's the bag. Will he be OK, Dad?

Philip: I hope so. That's it. That's the way. That's it. There. Oh, it's going to be all right. That's it. Wrap him in the blanket,

Dad! That's it. That's it. It's all right, Albert. You're going to be OK.

Albert: I want my daddy!

Philip: We'll take you to him. Easy now. Easy does it. That's it.

Grandpa: Your dad is quite a guy.

Robbie: I know, Grandpa.

Grandpa: How is he, Philip?

Philip: He's asleep. He's going to be fine.

Father: How can I thank all of you?

Philip: Thank my son Robbie. He pulled him out of the water.

Father: I'm very grateful, Robbie.

Robbie: Dad saved him, not me.

Father: I'm so thankful to all of you.

Philip: So long.

Grandpa: He's a lucky boy. Well, what do you say we get back to our fishing?

Philip: That's a great idea. [His beeper sounds.] Uh-oh. It's probably the hospital. I have to get to a phone. It probably means we can't stay.

Robbie: That's OK.

【语言点精讲】

1. Easy now. Easy does it.

别着急，沉住气。

2. Your dad is quite a guy.

你爸爸是个了不起的人。

"quite a guy"的意思相当于"a wonderful man"，一个了不起的人。

3. How can I thank all of you?

叫我怎么谢你们几位才好？用以表达自己对别人的感激之情。

表达感谢的说法还有后面出现的"I'm very grateful."（我非常感激你。）以及"I'm so thankful to all of you."（我对你们都非常感谢。）

4. So long.

再见。与"bye, see you"同义，都为比较随便的告别语。

5. Well, what do you say we get back to our fishing?

怎么样，咱们还回去钓鱼好吗？

"What do you say we...?"（你说我们.....怎么样？），可以理解为在 say 后面省了连词 if，表示一种建议。此短语仅用于提非正式的建议。

6. Uh-oh.

英文中这种声音意味着有麻烦了。

7. I have to get to a phone.

我得找个地方打电话。get to: 赶快去。

ACT 3-2 “我想我今天扫你的兴了。”

【故事梗概】

Philip 给医院回了电话，被告知他的病人发高烧，他必须马上赶回医院去。祖孙三人的钓鱼活动不得不提前结束。不愿空手回家的 Robbie 和 Grandpa 在超市买了特价的冻鱼。Ellen 对他们这么早就回来了表示惊讶。

Philip: One of my patients has a high fever, and I have to go to the hospital. I'm sorry, Robbie. I guess I ruined your day.

Robbie: You didn't ruin my day, Dad. I understand. I really do.

Ellen: Why are you back so early?

Grandpa: Philip had to go back to the hospital.

Robbie: He had an emergency.

Ellen: Oh, that's too bad, Robbie. Did it spoil your fun?

Robbie: No, Mom. We had a great time.

Ellen: Well, did you do any fishing?

Robbie: Yeah, we caught lots of them. Look! They had a special on frozen fish down at the supermarket.

Ellen: Oh, you really had a bad day.

Grandpa: We had a good day. Robbie pulled a boy out of the water.

Robbie: And Dad saved his life. He's a terrific doctor, Mom.

Ellen: I know.

【语言点精讲】

1. One of my patients has a high fever, and I have to go to the hospital.

我的一位病人发高烧了，我得去医院去。

"have a high fever", 发高烧。

2. I guess I ruined your day.

我想我今天扫你的兴了。

"ruin sb's day", 扫某人的兴。也可以说"ruin sb's good time"或者"spoil one's fun"

3. He had an emergency.

他有急诊病人。"emergency", 急事，紧急情况，急症(病人)。

4. They had a special on frozen fish down at the supermarket.

超级市场里特价出售冻鱼。

"have a special", 有便宜货买(或卖)。“special”这里指特价商品。

ACT 3-3 “我们算是约好了吗？”

【故事梗概】

晚上，Philip 从医院回来。Robbie 表达了对父亲的敬慕。Philip 决定改动工作日程，再带 Robbie 去钓鱼。Grandpa 却“功成身退”，要让他们父子两个单独去玩一次。

Philip: Hi, Pop. Hi, Son.

Robbie: Hello, Dad.

Philip: What a day!

Grandpa: How about a cup of coffee, Son?

Philip: I'd love a cup of coffee.

Robbie: How was the patient?

Philip: She'll be fine.

Robbie: Was it serious?

Philip: No.

Robbie: Until today, I was never really interested in medicine.

Philip: Well, it's hard work.

Robbie: Now I know.

Philip: I had a good time today, Robbie.

Robbie: Me, too.

Philip: Why don't we do it again?

Robbie: Can we? When?

Philip: How about next Saturday?

Robbie: Won't you be busy?

Philip: I'm changing my **schedule**. Well, do we have a date?

Robbie: We sure do, Dad. Grandpa, can you come?

Grandpa: I have other plans, Robbie. But I think you two can have a good time together without me.

Philip: No, Dad, certainly not without the right magic.

【语言点精讲】

1. What a day!

这一天过的！好忙的一天啊！

"What a day!"是惊叹语，可以表示很好，也可以表示很不好。

2. I'd love a cup of coffee.

我想喝杯咖啡。

"I'd love (to have)..."，我想来点...，这是在被人招待时常用的句子。

3. Until today, I was never really interested in medicine.

直到今天，我才对医学真正感兴趣。

"until"，在...以前，到...为止。

"be interested in sth."，对...感兴趣。

4. Why don't we do it again?

咱们再去一回吧，好吗？

"Why don't we...?"（我们何不...？），用于提建议。

5. Well, do we have a date?

怎么样？我们算是约好了吗？

date 这里指“预约的活动，约定”。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 6 课：感恩节

ACT 1-1 “开始制作我著名的感恩节苹果派。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 和 Philip 在厨房里准备感恩节的晚餐。Philip 要做他拿手的甜点苹果派，他在准备材料的时候，发现他没有准备一种很重要的原料。

Ellen: OK, Philip. This is your third cup of coffee. We should get to work, or we won't be finished by dinner time.

Philip: I guess we must.

Ellen: We must.

Philip: OK. The beginning of my famous **Thanksgiving** apple pie. One apple. Two apples. Three apples. Four apples.

Ellen: Come on, Philip! Get busy with your famous apple pie. There's much more to be done.

Philip: Now, the **ingredients**.

Philip: What goes into my apple pie besides apples? Ah, yes. **Flour**, sugar, **butter**. Butter, nice and cold and hard. OK, here are the **walnuts**. Last but not least, the reason my apple pie is famous - **cinnamon**. Cinnamon... Ellen, where's the cinnamon?

Ellen: If there is any cinnamon, it's in the **cabinet** with the salt and pepper.

Philip: Salt, pepper, **dill weed**, **garlic** powder, cinnamon. Ellen?

Ellen: Yes, Philip.

Philip: Is it possible that we forgot to buy cinnamon?

Ellen: Yes, it is possible that we forgot to buy cinnamon.

Philip: Well, how can I make my famous apple pie without cinnamon?

【语言点精讲】

1. We should get to work, or we won't be finished by dinner time.

咱们该着手干活了，不然到晚饭时候也干不完。

get to work, 开始工作，着手干活。

2. The beginning of my famous Thanksgiving apple pie.

开始制作我著名的感恩节苹果派。

感恩节(Thanksgiving Day)在每年 11 月的第 4 个星期四。不同宗教信仰的美国人都在这一天团聚，通常有一顿丰盛的感恩宴。人们见面时互相问候: Happy Thanksgiving to you (to your family)。火鸡是感恩节宴会上最具有传统特色的一道菜。感恩宴后，一家人一般围坐下来看感恩节橄榄球赛。

3. Get busy with your famous apple pie. There's much more to be done.

快点做你那著名的苹果派吧。要干的事还多着呢。

get busy with..., 快点做，忙于。

4. Ah, yes. Flour, sugar, butter.

啊，对了。有面粉、白糖、黄油。

在依次列举一系列事物时，每个词都用升调，到最后的词用降调。

5. Last but not least, the reason my apple pie is famous - cinnamon.

最后，但也是很重要的一样，使我的苹果派著名的东西——桂皮粉。

last but not least, 最后但也是很重要的。

cinnamon, 桂皮粉。

6. Is it possible that we forgot to buy cinnamon?

有可能我们忘了买桂皮粉吗？

It is possible that..., 有可能，大概。

ACT 1-2 “真是我的好儿子！”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 出门去为 Philip 买做苹果派所需的桂皮粉。在他出门的期间，Alexandra 打来了电话。

Robbie: Good morning.

Ellen: Oh, hi, Robbie. Good morning.

Philip: Good morning, Robbie. Can you do me a favor?

Robbie: Sure, Dad. What?

Philip: Remember my apple pie on Thanksgiving? What do you love about it?

Robbie: The apples?

Philip: No. The sssss...

Robbie: Cinnamon!

Philip: Right. We don't have any cinnamon.

Robbie: I'll go down to Henry's grocery. He's always open. I'll get some for you.

Philip: That's my boy!

Ellen: Oh, put your heavy jacket on, Robbie. It's cold outside.

Robbie: Alexandra might call. Tell her I'll call her right back.

Ellen: OK.

Philip: Thanks, Son.

Ellen: Uh, why does he always have to **slam** the door?

Ellen: Hello...Hello, Alexandra. How are you?...Fine. Robbie just went to the store. He'll be back soon. He said he call you. ... Well, do you have the phone number there? ... Please, I know he wants to talk to you. ...Thank you, and happy Thanksgiving to you and your family, too. Try to come by later for dessert. ...Bye.

【语言点精讲】

1. Can you do me a favor?

你能帮我个忙吗？请别人帮忙时常用这句话。

还有一些类似的表达方法，如"Can you lend me a hand?"以及"Can you do something for me?"。

2. Remember my apple pie on Thanksgiving?

还记得感恩节我做的苹果派吗？

"Remember...?"（还记得...吗？）。引出新话题时常用的开场白。

3. We don't have any cinnamon.

我们没有桂皮粉了。

"We don't have any..."等同于"We have no..."（我们没有...）。否定句加 **any** 与肯定句加 **no** 表示同样的意思。

4. That's my boy!

真是我的好儿子！这是一句很典型的父亲用来表扬自己的儿子的话。

5. Uh, why does he always have to slam the door?

唉，他为什么老要把门碰得山响？

"slam the door"，"砰"的一声关上门。

6. I see.

我知道了，明白。

7. Try to come by later for dessert.

你争取饭后来我们这儿吃甜点吧。

"come by"，顺路拜访，串门。

ACT 1-3 “他怎么了？”

【故事梗概】

买桂皮粉回来的 Robbie 为没有接到 Alexandra 的电话而闷闷不乐。这时来到厨房来吃早饭的 Grandpa 也看出了 Robbie 情绪不佳。

Ellen: That was Alexandra. She and the Molinas are going to spend Thanksgiving with their **cousins**. She doesn't have the phone number.

Philip: Oh, Robbie will be **disappointed**.

Ellen: He'll be **grouchy**. Maybe she'll call back. She promised.

Robbie: Here's your cinnamon, Pop. It was a dollar and sixty cents. You forgot to ask me for the change.

Philip: Or did you forget to give it to me?

[Robbie gives him the change. Philip puts it in his pocket.]

Philip: Thanks, Son.

Ellen: Alexandra called.

Robbie: I'll call her back.

Ellen: She said she'll call you later. She's not at home.

Philip: You should have your breakfast, Son. Make You feel better. Protein, vitamins.

Robbie: She said she'll call back?

Ellen: Yes, she did.

Grandpa: Good morning, everyone! Happy **Turkey** Day! What's wrong?

Robbie: Nothing. **Absolutely** nothing.

Grandpa: What's gotten into him?

Ellen: He missed a phone call.

Grandpa: From...?

Philip: Yes, Alexandra.

Grandpa: It's nice to see young love. ...Oh, to be young again! Where's the coffee?

【语言点精讲】

1. He'll be grouchy.

他该闹情绪了。

"grouchy", 情绪不佳, 闹别扭, 发牢骚, 抱怨。

2. You forgot to ask me for the change.

你忘了跟我要找头了。

"change", 在这里是名词, 指找回的零钱

3. Make you feel better.

这会使你舒服些。在这里是"It will make you feel better."的省略。

4. What's gotten into him?

他怎么了? 出什么事了? 类似含义的用语还有:

What's troubling/**bothering** him?

What's the trouble with him?

What's wrong with him?

What's the matter?

What's happened to him?

What's up?

ACT 2-1 “感恩节游行总是那么有趣。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 和 Robbie 在看电视直播的感恩节游行。Robbie 还在为错过了 Alexandra 的电话而闷闷不乐。Susan 的电话使他空欢喜了一下, 他的冷淡使 Susan 惊疑。Philip 走进来了, 他让大家尝一下 Ellen 做的火鸡填料。

Grandpa: I love parades. The Thanksgiving Day **parade** is always such great fun. Look at that Superman **balloon**! Wowee! Just **floating** along high above Central Park West. Don't you just love it? Oh, and the bands and the music. John Philip Sousa. I love his music. Da dada da da dada da da da da da dada. Oh, look at that float, Robbie. Look at those funny-looking clowns.

Robbie: It's for kids.

Grandpa: Maybe so, but parades always make me feel like a kid. Remember when you and your dad and I went to the Thanksgiving Day parade? You were four or five years old, I think.

Robbie: Hello, hello...Oh, hi, Susan. How are you?...Here's Mom.

Ellen: Hello, Susan. Yes, he missed a phone call from Alexandra. Yes, I know, but he'll get over it. Good. Then you'll be here about five? Oh, fine. I look forward to seeing you and Harry and Michelle. Drive carefully. Good-bye.

Philip: Taste Ellen's turkey dressing. It's delicious.

Grandpa: I'm not surprised. It's Grandma's **recipe**.

Robbie: It's my favorite part of the meal.

Philip: What about my famous apple pie?

Robbie: Dad, your apple pie is my favorite dessert.

Philip: How's the parade?

Robbie: OK.

【语言点精讲】

1. Wowee!

感到惊讶或是兴奋时，可以说"Wow!"或"Wowee!" Wowee 通常是儿童用语。这两种表达都是在非正式场合用的。

2. The Thanksgiving Day parade is always such great fun.

the Thanksgiving Day Parade: 感恩节游行。感恩节游行每年举行一次，这是由纽约 Macy 百货公司最初在 1924 年开始组织举行的，发展到今天，规模越来越大，全美许多大城市都相继组织感恩节狂欢游行了。在纽约，游行队伍从中央公园西路(Central Park West) 开始出发，游行队伍里，有许多巨型彩车(float)，天上飘着各种人们熟知的卡通形象的大气球(balloon)，电视明星、马戏团小丑(clown) 一路又唱又跳和人们一起欢庆节日，从美国各地来的乐队(band)演奏着进行曲，使人感到节日气氛无处不在。每年约有 55,000,000 人通过电视收看感恩节游行盛况。

3. Maybe so, but parades always make me feel like a kid.

可能是的，但是游行队伍总是使我感到回到了童年时代。

Maybe so: 在这里相当于"Maybe that's true"（也许是这样，或许是吧。）

4. Yes, I know, but he'll get over it.

是的，我知道，可是他这股子劲儿会过去的。

get over it: 恢复平静情绪。over 是个介词，其后的代词不能放置在 over 之前。

5. I look forward to seeing you and Harry and Michelle.

我盼着看到你和 Harry 还有 Michelle。

look forward to: 期待着，盼望着。这个短语后跟动词-ing 形式或名词。

6. Taste Ellen's turkey dressing.

你们尝一下埃伦做的火鸡填料。

turkey dressing: 火鸡填料，通常是把面包和调味料搅成糊状，然后塞在火鸡肚里烤。这种 dressing 有时也称为 stuffing。

ACT 2-2 “有人拨错号了。”

【故事梗概】

电话响了，但只是个打错的电话。Ellen 叫 Philip 去厨房帮忙。Philip 惦记的是快要开始的橄榄球比赛。Robbie 和 Grandpa 由球队谈到了大学。Robbie 居然开始考虑上大学的问题了。此时电话又响了。

Robbie: Mom! Is it for me?

Ellen: No, Robbie.

Philip: Who was it?

Ellen: Wrong number. Philip, would you join me in the kitchen. please? It's getting late. We have vegetables to prepare.

Robbie: Can I help with anything?

Ellen: No, honey. You just relax with Grandpa. I'll get you to help serve later.

Grandpa: Ellen reminds me so much of Grandma.

Philip: What time does the Michigan football game come on?

Robbie: Four.

Ellen: Philip!

Philip: I'll be back to see the game.

Robbie: Grandpa, when did Dad graduate from Michigan?

Grandpa: Let me think. He graduated from medical school in 1960 and from the University of Michigan in 1956.

Robbie: Did you go to Michigan, too, Grandpa?

Grandpa: Yup. I graduated in 1937.

Robbie: I've got to start thinking about college soon.

[The phone rings again. Robbie runs to answer it.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Wrong number.

（有人）拨错号了。

2. Can I help with anything?

有我能帮忙做的吗？help with sth.: 帮忙做...

3. You just relax with Grandpa. I'll get you to help serve later.

你就和爷爷一起放松放松吧，到吃饭时我再让你帮忙分菜。

to help serve: 帮忙分菜，帮忙端菜上桌。

help (to) do something: 帮忙做某事。注意：help 之后的动词之前，不定式符号 to 可省去。

4. Ellen reminds me so much of Grandma.

Ellen 使我想起了许多奶奶的事。

remind: 使想起，提醒。

5. What time does the Michigan football game come on?

密歇根大学的橄榄球比赛什么时候开始转播？

come on: 开始。只有在指电视或广播节目时，come on 才有此含义。

收看大学橄榄球赛与是节日狂欢游行一样，是现在感恩节的一个典型的的活动。成千上万的球迷收看比赛，这使感恩节的节日气氛更加热烈。美语中 football 指美式橄榄球，足球是 [soccer](#)。

6. Yup.

是的，对。这是 yes 的一种非正式说法。

7. I've got to start thinking about college soon.

我很快就得开始考虑上大学的问题了。

I've got to...: 在这里等同于"I have to ..."（我得...，我必须...）

think about sth: 这里指考虑，思考。

ACT 3-1 “感恩祷告”

【故事梗概】

Stewart 一家以及 Harry 和 Michelle 在吃感恩节晚餐前，在进行感恩祈祷。大家在轮流说出自己最深切的感受和美好的愿望。

Philip: OK, everybody. I want to welcome Harry and his daughter Michelle to Thanksgiving with us.

Harry: Thank you, Dr. Stewart.

Philip: Call me Philip.

Harry: OK.

Philip: But first, I think we should take a moment and remember the meaning of Thanksgiving.

Harry: Philip, I took Michelle to a school play about the first Thanksgiving.

Philip: Well, why don't you tell us about that, Michelle?

Michelle: Thanksgiving was about the [Pilgrims](#), the first [settlers](#) in America. They shared the first [harvest](#) with the Indians and gave thanks.

Philip: All right. Then in that spirit let's each of us give thanks. Each in his own way. Who wants to begin?

Grandpa: I will. I give thanks for being here with my family and for being well, so I can enjoy you all.

Robbie: All right! We love you, Grandpa.

Susan: I'd like to give thanks for a [healthy](#) year, a good job, and for meeting Harry and Michelle.

Harry: We'd like to give thanks for meeting Susan and the Stewart family.

Michelle: I love you, Daddy.

Susan: Thanks, Harry. That was very kind of you.

Robbie: I'd like to give thanks for Grandpa coming to live with us. And I'd also like to thank my math teacher for giving me a passing grade. And call me, Alexandra.

Ellen: Oh, Robbie!

Grandpa: She'll call.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, why don't you tell us about that, Michelle?

"Why don't you do...?" (为什么不...呢?) 是一种比较委婉的请某人做某事的说法。

2. Thanksgiving was about the Pilgrims, the first settlers in America. They shared the first harvest with the Indians and gave thanks.

感恩节是打清教徒前辈移民时候开始的, 他们是北美大陆的第一批移民。他们同印第安人分享了第一次收获, 以表示感谢之情。

这里 Michelle 讲述了感恩节的由来。

pilgrim: 最初的移民。P 大写时, 指 1620 年移居美国的英国清教徒。

settler: 移居者。

3. Then in that spirit let's each of us give thanks. Each in his own way.

那么让我们每一个人都以同样的心情表示感谢, 每一个人都说自己心里话。

晚餐开始之前, Philip 在主持家中的感恩祷告 (Say Grace)。感恩宴前, 一般都要进行感恩祷告。祷告一般由家长执行, 有时请客人来做。内容大致为: 主啊, 感谢您赐予我们这顿晚餐, 您使我们有幸享用它, 阿门 (Dear Lord, we thank Thee for this food. Please bless it for our use, Amen.) 这是非常传统、正式的仪式。美国不拘礼仪、风趣幽默的民族性格决定了他们不会那么“守旧”。比如 Stewart 一家人的“祷告词”就是非常生活化的, 这使人们可以在更加轻松、欢快的气氛中享用“主”赐予他们的这顿盛宴。

in that spirit: 基于同样的心意, 怀着同样的心情。

in one's own way: 以某人自己的方式。

4. I give thanks for being here with my family and for being well, so I can enjoy you all.

我为了能在这里和家人在一起, 还为了我身体还健康, 能够享受天伦之乐, 表示感谢之情。

give thanks: 意思是 "to say thank you", 感谢, 致谢, 感恩。

"give (sb.) thanks for..." 以及后面出现的 "thank sb. for..." 都是用来表示感激之情, 感谢之意的短语。两者所感谢的都是人, 而引起感谢的事或物要放在 for 后面。

5. That was very kind of you.

你真周到。表示感谢、感激的用语, 其后可以跟一不定式加以说明感激的原因。例如:

It's very kind of you to help me.

It's very kind of you to take care of my daughter.

ACT 3-2 “我应当谢谢你”

【故事梗概】

在感恩祈祷进行完之后, 大家开始吃感恩节大餐。晚餐后, 有人敲门。Ellen 告诉 Robbie, 因为她邀请 Alexandra 来吃甜点了, 所以来的人很可能是 Alexandra。这让 Robbie 很高兴。

Richard: You go first, Marilyn.

Marilyn: I'm thinking. You go first.

Richard: Well, you all know I'm working on my photo album. It's not finished yet. And I'd like to thank Marilyn for being so patient.

Marilyn: Thanks, Richard. I should thank you for encouraging me to keep working on my fashion designs. I'm lucky to have a husband with an artistic eye.

Ellen: Oh, we have a lot to be thankful for. For the food on this table. Just like the Pilgrims.

Philip: I'll go along with that, Ellen.

Ellen: Well, help me serve, Robbie.

[Later, after dinner.]

Harry: It was a wonderful meal, Mrs. Stewart. Thank you.

Richard: And now to see the end of the football game.

Philip: Exactly.

Ellen: Where are you going, Philip?

Philip: Remember, the Michigan football game? And Michigan needs a **touchdown**.

Ellen: Did you forget something?

Robbie: Dad, your famous apple pie.

Philip: Just let me see the **score**, Ellen.

Marilyn: Go ahead, Philip. We should all take a little break before dessert.

Ellen: Oh, who could that be? Oh, it must be Alexandra. I invited her to come by for dessert.

Robbie: You did?

Grandpa: I like Ellen.

【语言点精讲】

1. And I'd like to thank Marilyn for being so patient. ... I should thank you for encouraging me to keep working on my fashion designs. I'm lucky to have a husband with an artistic eye.

我想感谢 Marilyn 对我的极大耐心。... 我应当谢谢你，因为你鼓励我继续从事时装设计。我有个具有艺术眼光的丈夫，真是幸运。

这里 Richard 和 Marilyn 夫妇二人都用了 "thank someone for (doing) something" 来表达对自己的伴侣的感谢。这个短语所感谢的是人，而引起感谢的事或物要放在 **for** 后面。

to keep working on: 继续从事，继续努力。

with an artistic eye: 具有艺术眼光。

2. I'll go along with that, Ellen.

Ellen, 我同意你的说法。

go along with: 在这里表示“赞同，同意”的意思。

3. And Michigan needs a touchdown.

而且密歇根大学队需要一次越底线得分。

touchdown: 攻到底线得分。在（美式）橄榄球比赛中，持球越过对方底线，得六分。

4. We should all take a little break before dessert.

我们都应该稍微休息一下再吃甜食。

take a little break: 稍微休息一下。

ACT 3-3 “你怎么猜出来的？”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 的意外来到使全家都很高兴，而她带来的南瓜派又补救了 Philip 的巨大过失。这时电视上传来密歇根大学橄榄球队赢球的消息，使晚宴达到了高潮。Grandpa 给这个节日作了幽默而恰当的总结。

Robbie: You know everyone, Alexandra.

Ellen: No, she doesn't know Harry Bennett and his daughter Michelle.

Alexandra: Nice to meet you.

Harry & Michelle: Hi.

Marilyn & Susan: Hello, Alexandra.

Alexandra: Hi, Marilyn. Hi, Susan. Happy Thanksgiving.

Ellen: And Alexandra brought us a **pumpkin** pie.

Robbie: Please sit down, Alexandra. Dad, Richard - Alexandra's here.

Richard: Michigan needs a **touchdown**. Three minutes to play. Hi, Alexandra. Welcome.

Philip: Hello, Alexandra. Yes, Michigan needs a touchdown. One tiny little touchdown, with just three minutes to play.

Alexandra: You want Michigan to win.

Philip: How'd you guess?

Ellen: And Alexandra brought us a pumpkin pie.

Ellen: What happened?

Philip: We forgot to turn the oven on.

Ellen: We did? Philip, why don't you go watch the last three minutes of the game? I will serve coffee and pumpkin pie.

Philip: OK. I'll be back in a few minutes.

Ellen: Robbie, would you bring the dessert plates? And, Marilyn, would you pour coffee, please?

Marilyn: Sure, Ellen.

Grandpa: How was your Thanksgiving dinner, Alexandra?

Alexandra: Just wonderful, Mr. Stewart. The Molinas are a large family. I love being with them.

Robbie: I'm glad you came by, Alexandra.

Alexandra: I am, too.

Philip: Touchdown! Touchdown! Touchdown!

Grandpa: Great Thanksgiving. Lots to be thankful for. Michigan scored a touchdown. Alexandra came by. And nobody misses Philip's famous apple pie.

Ellen: Oh, Grandpa!

【语言点精讲】

1. And Alexandra brought us a pumpkin pie.

Alexandra 还给我们带来了一个南瓜派。

pumpkin pie: 南瓜派。南瓜派是传统的感恩节食品。

2. How'd you guess?

你怎么猜出来的？

How'd 在这里是 How did 的缩写。

3. We forgot to turn the oven on.

咱们忘了给烤箱点火了。

这里，Philip 说 "We" 显然是想少负点儿责任，而 Ellen 一句 "We did?" 就把他揭穿了。

turn on: 打开（灯、水龙头、煤气等）。

oven: 烘箱，烤箱。

4. Why don't you go watch the last three minutes of the game?

你干脆去看最后三分钟球赛吧。

在本句中，go 后面省略了 to，这是美国口语中常见的。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 7 课：人类最好的朋友

ACT 1-1 “我能感觉到。”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 已成为 Robbie 的益友。除了帮助 Robbie 学数学以外，她还经常同他一起听音乐和跳舞。一天一纸家书，勾起了 Alexandra 的乡愁。Alexandra 有些情绪低落。为了让她高兴起来，Robbie 提议两人一起出去吃点东西。

Alexandra: Robbie, this new Walkman is **absolutely** wonderful.

Robbie: Richard and Marilyn bought it for me for my birthday.

Alexandra: They're so **thoughtful**. You are very lucky, Robbie, to have such a nice family.

Robbie: Is something wrong, Alexandra?

Alexandra: No, nothing.

Robbie: Yes, there is. I can tell. What's the matter? Come on, you can tell me. What's up?

Alexandra: I don't know. Something's wrong.

Robbie: OK, let's talk.

Alexandra: I received a letter from my parents this morning.

Robbie: Did they write some bad news?

Alexandra: No.

Robbie: Well, then why are you so sad?

Alexandra: I miss them. I miss them very much.

Robbie: I'm sorry, Alexandra. But I understand.

Alexandra: The Molinas treat me so nicely, and I love being with your family so much ... but when I received the letter with photographs of my family, I cried. I cried because I miss them all.

Robbie: You really miss your family, don't you?

Alexandra: Yes. I know I must seem **silly**. It's not like I have nobody. I like the Molinas very much, and they're so kind to me.

Robbie: Hey, why don't we go out for a **cheeseburger** and **French fries**? That'll cheer you up. And you can use my Walkman.

Alexandra: That's a good idea. But if we go out, please don't **complain** about your math teacher or your math homework. I want to have fun.

Robbie: So do I.

【语言点精讲】

1. You are very lucky, Robbie, to have such a nice family.

动词不定式"to have such a nice family"用来表示"lucky"的理由。

such a nice family: 如此温暖的家庭, 这么好的家人。"such a+形容词+单数名词" 比 "a very+形容词+单数名词" 更有感情意味。

2. I can tell.

我能感觉到。我知道这里面有什么事。我能看出来。

3. What's up?

怎么啦? 出什么事了? 这是非常口语化的一种表达方式。

与本情景中出现的"What's the matter?", "Is something wrong?" 意思相同。

4. I know I must seem silly.

我知道我看上去一定傻得可笑。我知道别人一定觉得我很可笑。

silly: 在这里的意思是“可笑的, 滑稽的”。

5. Hey, why don't we go out for a cheeseburger and French fries? That'll cheer you up.

嗨, 咱们出去吃点芝士汉堡包和炸土豆条怎么样? 那会让你高兴起来的。

cheeseburger: 奶酪汉堡包, 芝士汉堡包。

French fries: 炸土豆条。

cheer you up: 让你舒畅些, 让你高兴起来。

6. But if we go out, please don't complain about your math teacher or your math homework.

可是我们要是出去玩的话, 请你不要抱怨你的数学老师和数学作业。

if we go out: 如果我们出去。这是一个由 if 引导的真实条件句。在 if 之后, 使用动词现在时形式 (go, 而不是 will go), 来表示将来可能发生的事。

complain about: 抱怨, 发牢骚。

7. I want to have fun.

我想玩个痛快。我想高高兴兴地玩一场。

ACT 1-2 “听起来像是有只狗在叫。”

【故事梗概】

在 Robbie 和 Alexandra 准备出门的时候，他们发现了一只迷路的狗狗。Robbie 按照狗狗脖子上的牌子上的电话号码打过去，发现那个电话已经停机了。

Robbie: I have to turn off the lights, or else my father will get really angry. He says I never turn them out when I leave.
If they come home and they're on...

[He moves his index finger across his throat to show that his father will be angry.]

Robbie: Do you hear something?

Alexandra: Yes. What was that?

Robbie: It sounded like a dog barking.

Alexandra: It sounded like a dog barking right here.

Robbie: Yeah.

[He opens the door. A dog is standing there.]

Alexandra: A dog!

Robbie: A **springer spaniel**! Come on in! Make yourself at home.

Alexandra: Oh, you poor little thing. Come here.

Robbie: Come on.

Alexandra: Poor baby.

Robbie: Where did you come from?

Alexandra: [She looks at the dog's **identification tag**.] Her name's Gemma, and she belongs to Mr. and Mrs. Levinson.
There's a phone number - five five five... eight four four eight. Robbie, maybe you should call them and tell the Levinsons we have their cute little spaniel.

Robbie: I've always wanted a springer spaniel. She's so cute.

Operator: The number you are calling - 555-8448 - is no longer in service.

Robbie: The number's no longer in service.

Alexandra: Oh, you poor, poor baby. You've lost your family.

Robbie: We'll find them. Don't worry, Alexandra.

【语言点精讲】

1. I have to turn off the lights, or else my father will get really angry.

我必须关上灯，要不然我父亲真要生气了。

turn off the lights: 关灯，闭灯。也可以说"turn out the lights"。

or else: 要不然，否则。相当于"if not"，用来说明后果。

get angry: 生气，发怒；变得生气。这里"get"的意思是“变成，成为”，用在形容词前或修饰形容词的副词之前时常有这种含义。

2. If they come home and they're on...

要是他们回来看见灯还亮着...

they're on: 在这里指灯还亮着。句型 to be on 中的 on 表示正在持续的一种状态。

3. It sounded like a dog barking.

听起来像是有只狗在叫。

sound like: 声音好像很熟悉，听起来像是...

4. Make yourself at home.

别拘束，随便些，就像在自己家里一样。

5. Oh, you poor little thing.

噢，你这可怜的小家伙。安慰小孩或动物时的常用语。

6. I've always wanted a springer spaniel.

我一直都想养条史宾格犬。

I've always wanted...：我一直想要。这句话用的是现在完成时。这一时态表示发生过或直到现在还在进行的事，侧重与现在的关系。

springer spaniel：史宾格犬，一种长毛垂耳猎狗

7. The number you are calling - 555-8448 - is no longer in service.

你要的电话 555-8448 是空号。

no longer in service：不再使用，（电话）空号。

ACT 2-1 “让我想想。”

【故事梗概】

为了找到迷路的狗狗 Gemma 的主人，Robbie 在为难时想到了防止虐待动物协会（ASPCA），因为过去他曾得到过他们的帮助。他想到给 ASPCA 打电话寻求帮助。

Robbie: Don't worry, Alexandra. We'll find the owner.

Alexandra: How, Robbie?

Robbie: Let me think.

Alexandra: Gemma, sit. Good Gemma. Give me your paw. Good Gemma. This dog is well trained.

Robbie: She likes you, too.

Alexandra: So how are we going to find the owners?

Robbie: With a little help from the ASPCA, the American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals. They're the ones. We once found a cat. She was caught in the branches of our tree. And Dad called the ASPCA. They came and solved the problem.

Alexandra: Robbie, let's call them.

Robbie: Let me see - ASPCA... Here it is. ASPCA Animal Shelter, 555-7700.

【语言点精讲】

1. Let me think.

让我想想。用于回答问题前略加思考时。

2. This dog is well trained.

这条狗受过良好的训练。well trained：受过很好训练的。

3. With a little help from the ASPCA, the American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals.

靠 ASPCA——美国禁止虐待动物协会帮忙。

ASPCA: American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals 的缩写。美国禁止虐待动物协会于 1866 年在纽约成立，其宗旨是保护动物。ASPCA 组织负责对各种虐待动物的事情进行调查、核实并使“犯法”之人受到惩罚。这个组织有自己的动物保护机构及动物医院。ASPCA 组织的工作人员还有权检查收养动物的人家、单位等以确保那里的动物得到良好的照顾。

4. They're the ones.

就得找他们。可以用 the one 或 the ones 来确指某人或某物。在这里 the ones 指最好的人选。

5. ASPCA Animal Shelter

ASPCA 动物收容所。shelter：收容所，避难所。

ACT 2-2 “咱们走吧，到动物收容所去。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 给 ASPCA 动物收容所打了电话，那里的工作人员 Linda 接了他的电话。Robbie 和 Alexandra 决定把 Gemma 送到 ASPCA 去。

Linda: Hello, ASPCA.

Robbie: Hello, my name is Robbie Stewart. I have a lost dog I'd like to bring to you. How late are you open?

Linda: We're open till nine P.M.

Robbie: Thank you. I'll bring the dog over by nine.

Linda: Thanks. Bye.

Robbie: Thanks. Good-bye.

Alexandra: They're still open?

Robbie: They're open until nine o'clock. We have two and a half hours. Let's take Gemma by there now. They'll find the owner.

Alexandra: I hope so. I'm so sad to see this little dog without her family.

Robbie: I'm sure they'll find the owner. But if they don't, I'll **adopt** her. She's so cute. Look at those eyes. She's hard to resist. Don't you just love her?

Alexandra: I'd like to keep her, too. But I'll be going home to Greece at the end of the **semester**. She just wants love and **affection**. Come on, Robbie. Let's get her to the animal **shelter**, so they can find her owners quickly. Don't worry, Gemma. We'll get you home. It's not easy being away from home.

Robbie: Come on, **poochie**. Atta girl! Let's go. We're off to the animal shelter.

【语言点精讲】

1. How late are you open?

你们几点下班？你们开门到几点钟？

2. Let's take Gemma by there now.

咱们现在就把 Gemma 送去吧。

by: 去，到。

3. Look at those eyes. She's hard to resist.

你看看她的眼睛，真招人喜欢。

hard to resist: 惹人喜爱，人见人爱，无法抗拒。

4. Come on, poochie.

来吧，小狗。

poochie: 狗。口头用语，**pooch** 比 poochie 更口语一些。

5. Atta girl!

意思相当于 That's a good girl! (真是个好女孩!)

Atta girl! 和 Atta boy! 都是很口语化的表达法。用这些词句来称赞小动物、小孩，干得好，好样的等。

6. We're off to the animal shelter.

咱们走吧，到动物收容所去。

be off: 出发，上路。

ACT 2-3 “我是认真的。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 和 Alexandra 争取时间，把小狗 Gemma 带到了 ASPCA 动物收容所。在 Linda Aborn 的办公室里，Robbie 得知了如在 48 小时内找不到狗主人，他可以申请领养 Gemma。

Linda: Your name?

Robbie: Robbie Stewart. And this is Alexandra Pappas.

Linda: Your name will do, Mr. Stewart. Your address?

Robbie: 46 Linden Street, Riverdale.

Linda: Where did you find the dog?

Alexandra: She found us.

Linda: You tried calling the number on the collar?

Robbie: Yes, but the number's no longer in service.

Linda: And there's no address on the dog tag?

Alexandra: There's no other information.

Linda: No ID number. Without that, it's hard.

Alexandra: You will try to find the dog's owner.

Linda: Oh, we'll try, believe me.

Robbie: And if you don't?

Linda: Yes?

Robbie: If you don't...can I... can I adopt the dog?

Linda: Why, yes. If the owners don't claim the dog in forty-eight hours, then you can apply for adoption.

Robbie: How do I do that?

Alexandra: You really want to?

Robbie: Yes, I'm serious. If no one comes to claim Gemma, I'd like to adopt her.

Linda: It's not difficult.

【语言点精讲】

1. Your name will do.

有你的名字就可以了。

不及物动词 do 在这里表示“够了，能行”。

2. No ID number. Without that, it's hard.

没有登记号码。没有的话，可难找啊。

ID: identification. 识别证，身份证的缩写形式。

3. You will try to find the dog's owner.

你会尽力找到狗的主人的。

注意这里 Alexandra 重读了“will”。will 重读时不只表示未来，而且带有较强的感情色彩，表示较强的意愿或承担做某事，有时也表示固执、不听劝阻。

4. If the owners don't claim the dog in forty-eight hours, then you can apply for adoption.

如果狗的主人在 48 小时内不来认领，那么你就可以申请领养了。

claim: 认领，要求（应得的权利）。

apply for: 申请，请求。

5. How do I do that?

我该怎么（申请领养她）呢？

这个句子可以用来询问事情的办理过程、处理程序。第一个 do 在此与 can 和 should 意思相同。

6. I'm serious.

我是认真的。还可以说: I mean business.或者 I mean what I say.

ACT 3-1 “人类最好的朋友就是他的狗。”

【故事梗概】

动物收容所的 Linda 在为 Robbie 和 Alexandra 进一步解释领养一只狗所必需的各种条件，那是相当的繁琐啊~~

Linda: OK. If you want to adopt an animal, first we need to know some references.

Robbie: References? People we know?

Linda: Friends, teachers...We need to talk to some people about you. We want to be sure that you're responsible and that you can take good care of an animal. Then you have to fill out this form about your family background.

Robbie: Is that it?

Linda: No, there's more. We need to know about your history with animals. Have you ever owned an animal?

Robbie: Yes. We had a cat when I was eight years old. I love cats.

Linda: Do you have any animals now?

Robbie: Unfortunately, no.

Alexandra: Anything else?

Linda: We also like to know your reasons for wanting an animal.

Alexandra: Just to hold it and **cuddle** with it. Just to have as a pet. I love animals.

Robbie: To have a friend - a **pal**. You know, man's best friend is his dog.

Linda: And one thing more. If you're under twenty-one years of age...

Robbie: That's me.

Linda: Then an adult must sign for you.

Alexandra: Uh-oh.

Robbie: No problem. My parents will think it's a good idea. I'll be back with them.

Alexandra: If the real owners don't come to **claim** Gemma

Linda: After forty-eight hours. But please call first.

Robbie: Thanks for your information and for being so helpful.

Linda: It's my pleasure. Nice talking to both of you.

【语言点精讲】

1. If you want to adopt an animal, first we need to know some references.

如果你想领养一个动物，我们首先需要知道一些旁证材料。

reference: 证明人；证明人所提供的资料（有关某人人品、能力等情况）。

2. Then you have to fill out this form about your family background.

然后你得填写这张有关你家庭背景的表格。

fill out : 等同于 fill in, 填表。

family background: 家庭背景情况。

3. Is that it?

就这些吗？就这些手续啦？完了吗？

it 在这里表示“一切必要的手续”。

4. Have you ever owned an animal?

你曾经养过动物没有？

Have you ever done...? 可以用来询问对方是否有过做某事某种经验。ever: 曾经。

5. Unfortunately, no.

很遗憾，没有。

unfortunately: 很不幸，很遗憾。在表达遗憾的心情时的常用语。

6. To have a friend - a pal. You know, man's best friend is his dog.

我想要有个朋友，一个伙伴。你知道，人的最好的朋友就是他的狗。

pal: 好友，伙伴。

man's best friend: 人类最好的朋友。这一句是指狗可以成为一个人最亲密的伙伴。

7. And one thing more.

还有一件事。这句话可以用来补充前面说过的话，追加信息。

8. I'll be back with them.

我会和他们一起来。be back: 回来，再过来。

ACT 3-2 “二位，可以点菜了吗？”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 和 Alexandra 告别了 Linda。离开动物收容所之后，他们去了一家饭馆吃东西。Alexandra 还在担心着小狗 Gemma。

Robbie: Thanks again. Bye.

Alexandra: Maybe the real owners will come to **claim** her.

Robbie: Her eyes look so sad. She must really miss them.

Linda: I see you're both animal lovers.

Robbie: We are.

Alexandra: Good-bye, Miss Aborn. We'll call in a couple of days.

Linda: Good-bye, and thanks for bringing Gemma in.

Robbie: Bye.

Alexandra: I keep thinking about the dog - about Gemma, alone in the animal **shelter**.

Robbie: I know. But I promise you, Alexandra, the dog is just fine. They're very kind to the animals.

Alexandra: I know they are. I mean about her being alone. Even if they are kind to Gemma, she's still alone, without her family.

Waiter: Ready, folks?

Robbie: Are you ready, Alexandra?

Alexandra: Yes, I'm ready. I'll have the chef's salad, please.

Robbie: I will have a cheeseburger, **medium rare**, with raw onion, and French fries, please.

Waiter: Anything to drink?

Alexandra: A diet cola, please.

Robbie: **Ginger ale** with lots of ice for me, thank you.

Waiter: I've got it. Thanks.

Robbie: Aren't you surprised that the animal shelter is so careful about finding homes for the animals?

Alexandra: No, I'm not.

【语言点精讲】

1. Even if they are kind to Gemma, she's still alone, without her family.

即使他们对 Gemma 很好，她还是孤零零的，没有亲人。

even if: 即使；虽然。

be kind to sb.: 对某人很好，很友善。

2. Ready, folks?

二位，可以点菜了吗？

folks: 伙伴，朋友，诸位。这是在非正式场合，表示友好的称呼，很口语化。在本语境中，因为侍者与 Robbie 和 Alexandra 是同龄人，都是年轻人，这样称呼显得亲切，要是随便称有身份的人或年长者为 folks，就不礼貌了。

3. I'll have the chef's salad, please.

chef's salad: 主厨色拉，配料常包含莴苣、西红柿、火鸡、火腿和奶酪。

4. I will have a cheeseburger, medium rare, with raw onion, and french fries, please.

我要一个干酪汉堡包，偏嫩一些的，加上生葱头和炸土豆条。

I will have...: 我要...。这是点菜的常用说法。

medium rare: 偏嫩一些，五分熟的。raw: 生的，未煮的。

其他的表示食物烹调熟度的表达方式还有: well done (很熟的), medium well (偏老，偏烂一些), medium (适中), rare (颇生的)。

5. A diet cola, please.

diet cola: 不含糖的可乐饮料

6. I've got it. Thanks.

明白了，谢谢。

I've got it.: 我明白了，我懂了。

ACT 3-3 “有个好消息，同时还有个坏消息。”

【故事梗概】

在饭馆里，服务员端来了 Robbie 和 Alexandra 点的东西。他们边吃东西边聊天。当天晚上稍后的时候，在 Stewart 家，Robbie 和 Alexandra 正在跳舞时，Robbie 接到了来自 Linda 的电话。他被告知迷路的小狗 Gemma 已经被主人认领回去了。

Waiter: And a cheeseburger, medium rare, with onion and French fries. And a ginger ale with lots of ice. Salad dressing?

Robbie: Hey, I wanted you to hear my new sound system when the dog **scratched** on the front door. Let's finish eating, and then we'll go back to my house. I want you to hear my new tapes. I've got some great new dance music.

Robbie: Hello. Stewart **residence**.

Linda: Hello. Is Robbie Stewart there?

Robbie: This is he. Who's this?

Linda: This is Linda Aborn from the animal shelter.

Robbie: It's Linda from the animal shelter. Yes, Linda. Hi.

Linda: We have good news and bad news, Robbie.

Robbie: Oh?

Linda: The good news is that the Levinsons have come by to pick up the dog. The bad news is, you won't be able to **adopt** the dog.

Robbie: That's OK.

Linda: Come by one day and look at some of the other dogs. I'm sure there's one for you. Thanks, Robbie. And the Levinsons thank you for bringing their dog to us.

Robbie: Thanks, Linda. Bye.

Alexandra: The owners **claimed** Gemma?

Robbie: That's right.

Alexandra: I'm glad for the dog.

Robbie: I guess I am, too. She said if I come by, she'll help me find another dog.

Alexandra: Come on. Let's dance.

【语言点精讲】

1. Hello. Stewart residence.

你好。这里是 Stewart 家。

Stewart residence: Stewart 公馆，Stewart 宅邸。这是打电话时的正式用语。

2. This is he.

我就是。当电话里要找的人就是接电话者时，常用“This is he.”或“This is she.”来回答，另一种说法是“Speaking”。此处请注意中英文表达上的差异。中文说：我就是 Stewart，英文不能说“I am Stewart.”，而说“This is he.”因为双方只能听见彼此的声音，看不见对方，故不用“I”。

3. Who's this?

您是哪位？在打电话的时候，用于询问对方的身份。此时不说 “Who are you?”

4. This is Linda from the animal shelter.

我是动物收容所的 Linda。

打电话的时候常用“This is + 自己的名字”来做介绍自己的身份。

5. It's Linda from the animal shelter.

是动物收容所的 Linda 打来的电话。Robbie 在告诉 Alexandra 电话是谁打来的。此处用 it, 而不是 she 做主语。

1—5 均为打电话用语, 相对来说, 这些说法以及使用场合都比较固定。

6. We have good news and bad news, Robbie.

Robbie, 我们有个好消息, 同时还有个坏消息。

good news and bad news: (有) 好消息和坏消息。美国人喜欢这样说。并常说 First, the good news... Now, the bad news...

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 8 课: 早日康复

ACT 1-1 “我知道你能够处理好这件事。”

【故事梗概】

一天上午, 在 Philip 工作的劳伦斯医院, Philip 医生和他的护士 Molly Baker 正在工作。Philip 要为一个叫 Carl 的小患者安排一个手术, 他希望 Molly 帮他调整一下工作日程。

Philip: Molly, I need your special talent for handling special matters.

Molly: Like what special matters?

Philip: Well, I have a scheduling problem.

Molly: Yes?

Philip: I have three tonsillectomies set for Friday with Dr. Earl.

Molly: Yes?

Philip: I need to fit a fourth operation into his schedule. And... I know you can do it.

Molly: Who's the patient?

Philip: Carl Herrera. The boy has infected tonsils, and we should remove them as soon as possible.

Molly: Well, I'll try to arrange the schedule, Dr. Stewart. But it's not going to be easy.

Philip: I know you'll be able to take care of it.

[Molly shakes her head and laughs.]

【语言点精讲】

1. I need your special talent for handling special matters.

我需要你的特殊才能来处理特殊的问题。

Philip 要多插进一例手术, 这给 Molly 出了个难题。他不是发号施令, 而是“商量”加表扬。

talent: 与生俱来的才能, 天资。

handle: 处理。意思相当于“take care of”。

2. Like what special matters?

像什么样的特殊问题?

“Like what...?” 这是一种极口语化的说法, 用于请对方详细说明某事的时候。也可只说 Like what?

3. I have three tonsillectomies set for Friday with Dr. Earl.

星期五我和 Earl 医生约定了三个扁桃腺摘除手术。

have...set for Friday: 在星期五有...约定, 把... (的时间) 定在星期五。这里 set 是过去分词。

tonsillectomy: 扁桃腺切除术。

4. I need to fit a fourth operation into his schedule.

我得在他的日程表上再加上第四个手术。

schedule: 日程安排, 工作安排。

5. The boy has infected tonsils, and we should remove them as soon as possible.

这男孩子扁桃腺感染了, 我们得尽快给他摘除扁桃腺。

have infected tonsils: 患扁桃腺感染。动词 have 表示生某种病, 患某种病。

as soon as possible: 尽快, 越快越好。

6. I know you'll be able to take care of it.

我知道你能够处理好这件事。

可以用这个表达来表示对某人有信心。

ACT 1-2 “她对孩子很有一套办法。”

【故事梗概】

Philip 在和 Carl 的妈妈 Herrera 女士讨论 Carl 的手术时间。Herrera 女士同意星期五就进行手术, 但是 Carl 不喜欢这个决定。

Philip: Well, Mrs. Herrera, Carl will be **perfectly** fine after we remove his **tonsils**.

Mother: Thank you for your **reassurance**, Dr. Stewart. He's had so many colds and sore throats recently.

Philip: Well, it's a very easy operation, Carl. You won't feel a thing.

Carl: But when do they do it?

Philip: This Friday.

Carl: But Saturday's my birthday.

Philip: Well, we could **reschedule** the operation, Mrs. Herrera, but I don't want to put it off too long.

Mother: No, I think it's important to do it now. We can have a birthday party for you, Carl, when you come out of the hospital.

Carl: But it won't be on my birthday.

Mother: But your health is more important, Carl, believe me.

Carl: I don't want my tonsils out.

Philip: Nurse Baker, would you come in, please?

Molly: Hello, Mrs. Herrera. Hi, Carl, how you doing?

Carl: I don't want my tonsils out.

Molly: Come with me, Carl. You and I will talk this over.

Mother: She has a special way with kids.

Philip: She sure does.

【语言点精讲】

1. Thank you for your reassurance, Dr. Stewart.

谢谢你使我放心, Stewart 医生。

reassurance: 消除顾虑, 安慰。

2. He's had so many colds and sore throats recently.

他最近老是感冒和嗓子疼。

cold: 感冒引起咳嗽和打喷嚏。

sore throat: 喉咙痛。

3. You won't feel a thing.

你一点也感不到疼的。

4. Well, we could reschedule the operation, Mrs. Herrera, but I don't want to put it off too long.

Herrera 夫人, 我们可以重新安排手术时间, 可是我不想把这手术推迟太久。

reschedule sth.: 重新排定...的日程; 重订...的时间表; 重新计划...的时间。

put (it) off: 延后, 推迟。

5. How you doing?

你怎么样啦? 是“How are you doing?”的省略。这是一种非常口语化的问法。

6. You and I will talk this over.

咱们俩把这事儿谈一谈。

talk (this) over: 商量, 充分讨论。

7. She has a special way with kids.

她对孩子很有一套办法。

ACT 1-3 “一切都会很好的。”

【故事梗概】

在医院里, Carl 坐在沙发上, 他很不高兴。Molly 护士给他拿来了医院的睡衣和罩袍。Carl 一心要过生日, 任性得够劲, Molly 在试着说服他。

Molly: Carl, does your throat hurt?

Carl: Yes.

Molly: Ok. Do you want to get better?

Carl: Yes.

Molly: Ok. We want you to get better, too. You'll have your **tonsils** out tomorrow, and you won't get so many colds anymore.

Carl: But if I have my tonsils out tomorrow, I'll miss my birthday party on Saturday.

Molly: I know. It's a problem, isn't it? Let me try to work something out.

Carl: What?

Molly: I have to think about it.

Carl: You're fooling me.

Molly: Oh, I'm not, Carl. Give me a chance to think about it, and I'll come up with something.

Carl: A surprise?

Molly: Maybe. But you just put on your **pajamas** and **robe**, and I'll think of a surprise.

Carl: Will it hurt?

Molly: No, There are other boys and girls here, and they're having their tonsils out. You'll meet them .

Carl: I don't want to.

Molly: Change your clothes, Carl. Everything will be just fine.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's a problem, isn't it

这是个问题, 对吗?

这是一个附加问句或反意问句的例子。附加问句一般用来确认前面提到的情况是否正确。

2. Let me try to work something out.

让我想个办法解决问题。work (something) out: 想个办法解决问题。

3. I have to think about it.

我得想一想。think about: 考虑。

4. You're fooling me.

你在哄我。fooling: 开玩笑, 哄骗。

5. Give me a chance to think about it, and I'll come up with something.

你给我个机会想一下, 我会想出个办法的。

give sb. a chance to do sth.: 给某人个机会做某事。

come up with something: 想出办法。

6. But you just put on your pajamas and robe, and I'll think of a surprise.

你先穿上睡衣和袍子, 我会想个办法给你惊喜的。Molly 在试着以奖赏劝服小患者 Carl。

pajamas: 睡衣睡裤（尤指男人的睡衣睡裤）。也可以拼写成 pyjamas.

robe: （长及地面的）宽松长袍，睡袍。

7. Everything will be just fine.

一切都会很好的。这是医生安慰病人时常用的一句话。不当医生的人，探视病人时也常这样说。

ACT 2-1 “猜哑谜”

【故事梗概】

在医院里，Molly 护士在陪几个快要做手术的孩子玩猜哑谜的游戏，只有 Carl 没有参加。其他孩子们都玩得很起劲。

Molly: OK. Do you know how to play charades?

Molly: Frank, you've never played charades?

Frank: Nope.

Molly: Carl, you're sure you're never played? [Carl shakes his head.]

Molly: Ok, Betty, Tim, and Frank. We're going to play charades. Frank, you can learn as we go. And, Carl, you join in at any time. OK, let me think. OK, I've got one. All right. [She pretended to hold an old-fashioned camera in her left hand and turning the handle with her right hand.]

Betty: A movie! A movie!

Molly: Right. A movie. OK. [She counts to six on her fingers.]

Tim: Six words. It has six words.

Frank: That's easy. I can play.

Molly: Good. OK. We've got a movie. The title...

Betty: Six words.

Molly: Right. First word...[She pulls her ear.]

Betty: Sounds like.

Tim: Sounds like...

Molly: You got that part right. Yes. [pulling her ear] Sounds like... [She shakes her head no.] Sounds like what?

Frank: Sounds like no.

Molly: Absolutely right, Frank. Sounds like no. OK. We've got a movie. Six words. The first word sounds like no.

Frank: Row. Row.

Tim: Go.

Molly: Nope.

Tim: Show. That's it-show.

Molly: NO...OK... [She acts out the word snow with her fingers.]

Betty: Snow.

Molly: Absolutely right,

Betty. Sounds like no - snow. OK, a movie. Six words. The first word is snow.

Frank: This is fun.

Molly: Oh, OK. [She holds up five fingers.]

Betty: The fifth word.

Molly: Right, fifth word. [She holds up seven fingers.]

Tim: Seven?

Molly: Absolutely right. Very good. The fifth word is seven. OK, we've got a movie. The first word is snow. Fifth word, seven.

Betty: I got it!! I got it!

Frank: Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs.

Betty: I got it.

Frank: I got it.

Molly: Frank, you got it. Betty, you had it, but you didn't say it.

Tim: I knew it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Do you know how to play charades?

你们知道怎么玩猜哑谜游戏吗？

“how to play charades”为疑问词带动词不定式构成的短语，不是完整句，不能单独作为问句。但这样的短语可以放在某些动词之后。

如直接说“How to go to the park?”是错误的，但是可以说“I wonder how to go to the park.” “Can you tell me how to go to the park?”

2. You're sure you've never played?

你肯定你从来没玩过吗？这是一种核对事实的说法。

3. You join in at any time.

你随便什么时候都可以参加进来。

join in: 参加，加入。

4. OK, I've got one.

好，有了。这里是指“我想出来了。我想到了一个。”

动词 get 是一个口语常用词，在非正式的语境中，可以表达多种含义，如“得到，获得，想到，猜到”，等等。本情境中就出现了多次。

如：

We've got a movie. （我们已经猜到是部电影。）

I got it! （我猜到了！我明白了！）

5. Sounds like no.

sound like: 听起来像...

6. That's it-show.

就是 show 这个词。That's it. : 就这样，对啦，就是这个。

ACT 2-2 “这帮孩子可真不好对付。”

【故事梗概】

猜哑谜游戏没有提起 Carl 的兴致，他还在对因为手术而不能有生日派对的事耿耿于怀。

Molly: Carl, now you know charades. Why don't you join us?

Carl: I don't like charades. It's for babies.

Molly: Oh, I like it.

Carl: Well, they're babies.

Betty: You're a sore loser.

Tim: Yeah.

Molly: No arguing. Save your voices. Between now and tomorrow you're all going to have your tonsils out. And you won't be able to speak for a while. So save your voices till then.

Philip: Hi, gang. Hi, everybody. Well, what's going on?

Molly: I sure am glad to see you, Dr. Stewart. This is a rough group.

Carl: I didn't want to play charades, so they're angry at me.

Philip: Why don't you want to play?

Carl: Because I don't want to be here. I don't want my tonsils out.

Philip: Why not?

Carl: Because my birthday is tomorrow. My mother promised me a birthday party with a clown.

Molly: But you can have one when you go home, Carl.

Carl: But my birthday is tomorrow.

Philip: I'm sorry, Carl.

Molly: Carl, you'll have your party when you go home.

Carl: But it won't be on my birthday! And you promised me a [surprise](#).

【语言点精讲】

1. You're a sore loser.

你是个输不起的人。

a sore loser: 输不起的人。用来形容一些玩游戏输了，就表现得有失风度的人。a sore loser 也可以叫 a bad loser。输得有风度的人叫 a good loser。

2. No arguing.

别吵。No+动名词，构成一个命令句，表示禁止做某事，用于阻止别人做某事，也常出现在告示上。又如：

No littering.（禁止乱扔果皮纸屑。）

No smoking.（禁止吸烟。）

3. Hi, gang. Hi, everybody.

嗨，各位。两句都是用很轻松随便的口吻来向一群人打招呼的非正式短语。

gang: 一帮人，一群人。

4. Well, what's going on?

再干什么呢？怎么这么热闹啊？也可以说成 What's happening?

going on: 进行，发生。

5. This is a rough group.

这帮（孩子）可真不好对付。Molly 在说这句话时带有一种开玩笑的口气。

6. I didn't want to play charades, so they're angry at me.

我不想玩猜哑谜，所以他们都生我的气了。

be angry at someone: 生某人的气，对某人发怒。

7. My mother promised me a birthday party with a clown.

我妈妈答应给我举办生日庆祝会，并请小丑来助兴。

promise someone something: 答应给某人以某物，承诺给某人某物。

ACT 3-1 “噢，别这样了。”

【故事梗概】

在医院里，四个孩子刚做完手术，还不能说话。他们疼痛难受，兴致不高。Molly 在逐一开导安慰他们，并承诺晚饭会有他们喜欢的口味的冰淇淋。

Molly: It hurts, doesn't it? [Betty nods her head yes.]

Molly: You'll feel better tomorrow, Betty, believe me. Only one day, and it won't hurt as much. Do you feel like eating?

Having some dinner? Oh, don't look so sad. Let me tell you about your dinner. It's ice cream. [Betty smiles.]

Molly: Ice cream. All kinds of [flavors](#). Chocolate? [Betty shakes her head no.]

Molly: [Strawberry](#)? [Betty nods yes.]

Molly: [Vanilla](#)? [Betty nods yes again.]

Molly: Vanilla, too? [Betty smiles.] I see you're feeling better already, Betty. So you will have dinner? [Betty agrees she will.]

Molly: OK, honey, we'll see to it that you have strawberry and vanilla ice cream. Just rest now. You need some rest to help you get better quickly. Hi, Frank. How you doing? Oh, come on now. You're a big boy. It doesn't hurt that much, does it? Oh, I'm sorry it hurts so much, and you won't be able to have dinner. You're just going to have ice cream. Yes,

ice cream. Lots of flavors. Want to hear them? [Frank nods his head yes.]

Molly: Chocolate? [Frank loves chocolate, and he smiles.]

Molly: Then chocolate it is. One **scoop** or two? [Frank holds up three fingers.]

Molly: Three scoops? [Frank nods.]

Molly: Then three it will be.

[She walks over to Tim, and he holds up three fingers.]

Molly: You want three scoops also? [Tim nods.]

Molly: Chocolate, too? [Tim nods.]

Molly: Well, I see you're feeling better. [Tim **shakes** his head no.]

Molly: Well, at least you're acting like you feel better. Three scoops of chocolate ice cream for Tim coming up.

【语言点精讲】

1. Only one day, and it won't hurt as much.

只要过一天，就不会这么疼了。

as much: 同样的，同样程度的，同样多的。表示与某种以前的事一样多、严重、厉害等。

2. Do you feel like eating?

你想吃东西吗？

feel like doing something: 想要，想做。

3. Having some dinner?

想吃晚饭吗？这是“Do you feel like having some dinner?”的缩略。

4. OK, honey, we'll see to it that you have strawberry and vanilla ice cream.

好，亲爱的，我们一定让你吃到草莓冰淇淋和香草冰淇淋。

see to it that...: 是负责保证或管好某事。

5. Oh, come on now. You're a big boy.

噢，别这样了。你是个大孩子了。

come on: 别这样了。相当于“stop acting like that”

You're a big boy.: 你是个大孩子了（不该这样耍小孩子脾气）。

6. It doesn't hurt that much, does it?

疼得并不那么厉害，是吧？

that much 中的 that 是副词，表示较大的程度，常用于疑问或否定的意思。如：

Your joke isn't that funny.（你的笑话并不那么可笑。）

I don't have that many books.（我没有像人们想的那么多书。）

7. Three scoops of chocolate ice cream for Tim coming up.

Tim 的三勺巧克力冰淇淋马上就到。这是 Molly 在模仿小饭店侍者常用的口吻。

coming up: 很快就拿来，马上送到。这是一个在非正式场合使用的短语，用于当你要帮别人盛食物或饮料时。

ACT 3-2 “但首先你得笑一笑。”

【故事梗概】

Molly 用晚饭有冰淇淋的方法并没有使 Carl 的情绪好起来。Molly 要求他用一个笑脸来交换一个生日惊喜。第二天，Carl 的生日。Molly 请来了小丑 Popo 来表演。这个惊喜令 Carl 很高兴。最后，Carl 主动要求玩猜哑谜的游戏。

Molly: Hi, Carl. How you doing? I know it hurts. But it'll be better tomorrow. In the **meantime**, what would you like?

Carl: Surprise.

Molly: A surprise? I promised you a surprise, didn't I? And it wasn't just ice cream, was it? Your birthday is tomorrow, isn't it? [He nods.]

Molly: Well, maybe, just maybe, there will be surprise. But first you have to smile. I just want to see one smile from you.

No smile, no surprise. That's the deal. No smile, no surprise. If you want a surprise, then you've got to smile first. [Carl finally smiles.]

Molly: How you all doing? Well, I'm glad you're feeling better because we have a little surprise for you today. It's Carl's birthday, and we have Popo the Clown to **entertain** you. And here he is -- Popo the Clown.

Philip: Happy birthday, Carl. Happy birthday. All right, everybody. OK, Carl. It's your birthday. What's your wish? What would you like?

[Carl pulls his ear. Then he points to his nose.]

Philip: Hmm?

Molly: You want to play **charades**?

【语言点精讲】

1. In the meantime, what would you like?

这会儿，你想要点儿什么？

in the meantime: 在此期间；当其时；同时。in the meantime 的一个同意说法是 meanwhile，它是一个副词。

2. But first you have to smile.

但首先你得笑一笑。这是用于与某人谈条件的方法之一。其他的说法还有：

No smile, no surprise. （不笑就没有惊喜。）

If you want a surprise, then you've got to smile first. （如果你想要一个惊喜，你就得先笑一笑。）

3. That's the deal.

就这么定了。也可以说 "It's a deal." 或者 "It's a date!"

deal: 协议，交易。

4. It's Carl's birthday, and we have Popo the Clown to entertain you.

今天是 Carl 的生日，我们请来了小丑 Popo 给大家表演助兴。

Popo the Clown: 小丑 Popo。Popo（小丑名）与 the Clown 是同位语。

to entertain people: 使欢乐；使娱乐。

5. And here he is -- Popo the Clown.

这位就是小丑 Popo。这是介绍演员上场的一个用语。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第9课：选校风云

ACT 1-1 “我明天一早就得交稿。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 在自己的房间里为高中的校刊写关于毕业感受的文章，Philip 敲门进来，为他送来一些吃的东西。父子二人小谈了一会儿。

Robbie: Who is it?

Philip: Dad.

Robbie: Come on in, Dad.

Philip: I thought you might be hungry. I brought you a chicken **sandwich** and a glass of milk.

Robbie: I am hungry. Thanks, Dad. What time is it, **anyway**?

Philip: Ten o'clock. What are you working on?

Robbie: I'm writing a story for the high-school paper.

Philip: Can't you finish it tomorrow?

Robbie: No, I have to turn it in in the morning.

Philip: What's it about?

Robbie: I'm writing an article on the feelings about **graduation**.

Philip: And... how do you feel?

Robbie: Me? A little scared and excited, too.

Philip: I felt the same way.

Robbie: The scary part's leaving home and moving to college.

Philip: Oh, leaving home is part of growing up. Well, don't work all night.

Robbie: I don't mind. I enjoy writing.

Philip: Well, maybe you should think about becoming a writer.

Robbie: Maybe I should.

Philip: You have lots of time to decide.

Robbie: That's the worst part -- making decisions.

Philip: You'll be OK. Good night, Son.

Robbie: Good night, Dad.

【语言点精讲】

1. Who is it?

谁呀？在问是谁叫门、打电话、有事来访等时都这样说。

2. Come on in.

请进来。等同于“Come in.”

3. What are you working on?

你在忙什么？注意重音落在 work 上，on 是介词，所以不重读。

4. Can't you finish it tomorrow?

明天再接着写完它不行吗？这里 Philip 使用了否定疑问句，他的意思是：你非得连夜赶写么？别累着自己。

5. I have to turn it in in the morning.

我明天一早就得交稿。

turn it in: 交（稿），交作业；交上去，交进去。

6. The scary part's leaving home and moving to college.

害怕的是要离开家去到大学里住了。

the scary part's...的意思是“让人发怵的是...，令人不安的是...”。这里的 part 指事情或过程的某一方面，相当于 thing。下句中出现的 part 也是这种用法：

That's the worst part -- making decisions.

7. I don't mind. I enjoy writing.

我不在乎。我喜欢写作。

I don't mind. : 我不在乎。相当于“It doesn't bother me. ”

enjoy doing something: 乐于做某事，喜欢做某事。

ACT 1-2 “没想到他是 Philip 的同班同学。”

【故事梗概】

早上，在 Robbie 吃早饭的时候，Grandpa 和 Philip 唱着密歇根大学的校歌走了进来。他们告诉 Robbie 该校到纽约考查新生人选的招生主任 Charley Rafer 是 Philip 的同学，而且 Charley 已经同意为 Robbie 安排面试。

Grandpa & Philip:

“Hail to the victors valiant,

Hail to the conquering heroes,

Hail, Hail to Michigan,

the champions of the West!”

Philip: Ah, good morning, Robbie.

Robbie: Good morning, Dad.

Grandpa: How's my grandson?

Robbie: Fine, Grandpa. Fine! What's all the cheering about? Did the University of Michigan win another football game?

Grandpa: Better than that. Tell him, Philip.

Philip: I just spoke with Charley Rafer.

Robbie: Who's Charley Rafer?

Philip: He's the [Dean of Admissions](#) for the University of Michigan.

Grandpa: And it turns out he's a classmate of Philip's.

Philip: We were both on the tennis team.

Robbie: Great!

Philip: It is great. He's going to be in New York tomorrow to interview [applicants](#) for admission.

Grandpa: And he's agreed to fit you into his schedule.

【语言点精讲】

1. "Hail to the victors valiant / Hail to the conquering heroes / Hail, Hail to Michigan / the champions of the West!"

这是 Grandpa 和 Philip 在唱 University of Michigan song (Michigan 大学校歌)。

hail to...: 向.....致敬。

the victors valiant: 英勇的胜利者, 斗勇之师。

the conquering heroes: 勇于征服的英雄们。

the champions: 冠军。

the West: 指美国西部。

2. What's all the cheering about?

你们为什么这样兴高采烈?

cheering: 欢呼, 喝彩。

3. He's the Dean of Admissions for the University of Michigan.

Dean of Admissions: 新生注册主任, 招生办公室主任。

4. And it turns out he's a classmate of Philip's.

没想到他是 Philip 的同班同学。

it turns out: 没想到的是, 原来是, 后来发现竟然是。表示最后的结果出乎意料。

5. He's going to be in New York tomorrow to interview applicants for admission.

他明天要到纽约来同申请入学的学生面谈。

interview: 面谈, 面试。美国没有全国统一的大学入学考试, 各所大学或学院都有自己的招生要求。多数院校要求学生提出 SAT

([Scholastic Achievement Test](#) 学业成就测验) 等类似高中会考的成绩, 高中生可参加数次测验, 以较优成绩提出申请。在决定是否录取一名学生时, 学校不但考虑学生的中学成绩, 也要看上述考试成绩。此外, 有些院校还要求面试 (interview)。

applicants: 这里指申请入学的人。

6. And he's agreed to fit you into his schedule.

他还答应了把你安排到他的日程里。

agree to do something: 同意做某事; 允诺去做某事

fit you into his schedule: 把你安排到他的日程里, 安排你与他见面。

ACT 1-3 “这并不是说你一定就上密歇根大学了。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 对 Grandpa 和 Philip 擅自为他安排密歇根大学的面试产生了反感, 也不认为自己一定想当医生。Grandpa 和 Philip 承诺他面试只是一次锻炼的机会, 最后的决定权在他。最终 Robbie 同意去同大学来纽约招生的 Charley 先生面谈一次。

Robbie: But I may not want to go to Michigan.

Philip: It's one of the best schools in the country, Robbie. I studied medicine there. Your grandfather went to the Engineering School there.

Robbie: I know that, but . . .

Grandpa: You said you wanted to be a doctor like your father.

Robbie: Not **exactly**.

Grandpa: You couldn't pick a finer medical school than Michigan.

Robbie: Yes, I know that.

Philip: Let's meet with Charley at the university club. Ten o'clock tomorrow morning. It doesn't mean you're going to Michigan.

Grandpa: It doesn't mean you have to be a doctor. But the interview will be good experience for you.

Robbie: In that case, it's OK. Dad, growing up means making my own decisions, doesn't it?

Philip: You're right, Robbie. But, like your Grandpa suggested, have the interview.

Grandpa: And then make your own decision.

Robbie: That sounds fine.

Philip: I know it's **sudden**, Robbie, but this is an important **opportunity**. We'll head down there first thing tomorrow morning. OK?

Robbie: Sure, Dad.

Philip: I want you to know something, Son. I love you. I'm very proud of you.

Robbie: Thanks, Dad.

Philip: Well, I've got an **appointment** at the hospital. I'll see you all at dinnertime.

Robbie: Bye, Dad.

Grandpa: Is something still wrong, Robbie?

Robbie: I'll be OK.

Grandpa: Going away to college for the first time always makes one a little **nervous**.

Robbie: I guess so. I'll be OK. I just need time to think.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's one of the best schools in the country.

那是全国最优秀的大学之一。

one of the best +名词的复数形式: 最好的...之一。the best: 最好的, good 的最高级形式。

schools: 此处指“大学”。

2. Your grandfather went to the Engineering School there.

你爷爷是在那儿念的工学院。

Engineering School: 工学院。

3. Not exactly.

并没有, 不见得, 未必见得。在这里的意思是: 不是特别想(当医生)。

4. It doesn't mean you're going to Michigan.

这并不是说你一定就上密歇根大学了。

It doesn't mean...: 这并不是意味着...。此处用于说明某事情并非必然。

5. But the interview will be good experience for you.

可这次面谈对你来说是一次有益的经历。

6. In that case, it's OK.

In that case... : 要是那样的话。相当于 If that's true...

7. But, like your Grandpa suggested, have the interview.

like your Grandpa suggested: 照你爷爷的话(去做)。句中 like 是非正式用法, 相当于连词 as (照...去做)。

8. We'll head down there first thing tomorrow morning. OK?

我们明天一早就奔那儿去吧, 好吗?

head down there: 直奔那儿。

ACT 2-1 “您真是个能理解人的好父亲。”

【故事梗概】

次日上午, Robbie 坐在起居室里等 Philip 带他到密歇根大学校友俱乐部去见招生主任 Charley Rafer。出发前, 他们还有点时间来喝杯咖啡、聊一聊。

Philip: Sorry, Robbie. Sorry to be late this morning, but, well, we've still got some time for a cup of coffee. I can't wait to see my old pal Charley Rafer.

Robbie: Neither can I.

Philip: So you thought about it, huh?

Robbie: Yes, I have, Dad.

Philip: Well, I'm glad. I knew you'd realize that this interview could be an important experience for you.

Robbie: I came to that conclusion.

Philip: That's very wise, Robbie. Very wise. Now let's head off for the city and the university club.

Robbie: Thanks, Dad.

Philip: Thanks...for what?

Robbie: Thanks for hearing me out. And...

Philip: And...?

Robbie: And thanks for being such an understanding father.

Philip: Well, thank you, Robbie. Thank you.

【语言点精讲】

1. I can't wait to see my old pal Charley Rafer.

我迫不及待地想见到我的老伙伴 Charley Rafer 了。

can't wait to...: 迫不及待的想做.....

old pal: 老友。pal 是非正式用法, 作“哥们儿, 伙伴”解。

2. Neither can I.

我也恨不能早点见到他。

neither 是副词, 是“也不”的意思, 放在句首时情态动词(如 can)或助动词(如 do)也要相应提前。如: Andy doesn't like coffee.

Neither do I.

3. I knew you'd realize that this interview could be an important experience for you.

我知道你会明白这次面谈对你来说可能是一次有益的经历。

I knew (that)...: 我就知道....., 我早就知道.....

4. I came to that conclusion.

我也是这么认为的。我也得出这样的结论。

conclusion 是名词, 作“结论”解。

5. Thanks for hearing me out.

谢谢你耐心听取我的意见。

hear ... out: 耐心听取、倾听。

6. And thanks for being such an understanding father.

谢谢您，您真是个能理解人的好父亲。

understanding: 这里指“通情达理的，善解人意的”。

ACT 2-2 “咱们马上谈正事怎么样？”

【故事梗概】

在校友俱乐部的一间办公室里，Philip 和 Robbie 见到了密歇根大学的招生主任 Charley Rafer。Robbie 的面试开始之前，Philip 和 Charley 叙了一会儿旧。

Dean: Philip Stewart! It's great to see you!

Philip: Charley Rafer -- you look as young as ever.

Dean: You must be Robbie.

Robbie: Hi.

Philip: Yes, this is my younger son Robbie. Robbie, I want you to meet one of the best tennis players on the Michigan team -- Charley Rafer.

Robbie: Nice to meet you, Dean Rafer.

Dean: Well, are you as good a tennis player as your dad?

Robbie: No, I'm not very good at it.

Philip: Frankly, neither was I. Charley was the star of the team.

Dean: Yeah. Thanks. Well, how've you been, Philip?

Philip: Oh, working too hard.

Dean: Doesn't show. How's Ellen?

Philip: Fine, thank you. And how's Marge?

Dean: She's still giving the toughest English history exams in the school and loving every minute of it. And speaking of minutes, I have interviews until noon, so why don't we get right to work?

Philip: Can you have lunch with us later?

Dean: I'd love to, Philip, but I'm afraid I can't. I'm only here two days, and I have interviews with twenty-six applicants.

Philip: I understand. Well, thanks. I'll wait outside. Good luck, Son.

【语言点精讲】

1. Charley Rafer -- you look as young as ever.

You look as young as ever: 你看上去还像当年那么年轻。也可以说“You haven't change a bit.”

“as + 形容词或副词 + as”句型表示“跟.....一样”，是常见的表示强调的句法。

as...as 中间也可以用名词短语，但名词短语中必须有一表示性质的形容词来修饰名词。如 Rafer 主任说的: Are you as good a tennis player as your dad? (你的网球打得跟你爸一样好吧?)

2. You must be Robbie.

你一定是 Robbie 吧。must be 表示一种有把握的猜测。

3. Frankly, neither was I. Charley was the star of the team.

老实说，我打得也不太好。Charley 是我们队的明星选手。

frankly: 坦率地说。也可以说 honestly.

neither was I: 我也(打网球打)不好。neither 短句表示“某人也不”，用倒装句法。

the star of the team: 一群人中的明星，这里指球队中的明星选手，也可以说“the soul of the team”。star 在口语中常作“出色的人”解。

4. Well, how've you been, Philip?

How've you been?: 这些年来你好吗? 可以用来问候多年不见的朋友。

6. Doesn't show.

倒是看不出来。用于表示某事、某种状况并不明显。

7. She's still giving the toughest English history exams in the school and loving every minute of it.

她还是在学校里出最难的英国史考试题，且乐此不疲。

the toughest: 最难的，是形容词 tough 的最高级。

English history: 英语史。这是一门介绍英语演变及发展的课程。

love every minute of it: 形容非常享受作某事的样子，忙得乐此不疲。

8. And speaking of minutes, I have interviews until noon, so why don't we get right to work?

谈到每一分钟，我面谈一直排到了中午，咱们马上谈正事怎么样？

speaking of: 说起……来。转移话题或开辟新话题时常用的开场白。

get right to: 马上开始。

ACT 2-3 “最重要的是你要为你自己的未来做出决定。”

【故事梗概】

在面试中，Rafer 主任看出 Robbie 还心存犹豫。Rafer 主任对青年人很理解，不采取高压促销的办法，充分尊重 Robbie 的特长和愿望。

面试结束后，他给了 Robbie 值得深思的忠告。

Dean: Did you bring your transcript from high school?

Robbie: Yes, sir. Right here.

Dean: Thank you. Please sit down. I see under “activities” that you've been writing for the school paper.

Robbie: Yes, sir.

Dean: What kinds of articles have you written?

Robbie: All kinds -- sports, editorials, theater reviews. You name it, I've written it.

Dean: Hmmm. Well, have you ever thought of becoming a journalist?

Robbie: A professional writer? Not until recently.

Dean: Michigan has a fine School of Journalism.

Robbie: Yes, I know that.

Dean: You seem to have some reservations.

Robbie: I'm a little uncertain.

Dean: It's been very nice talking to you.

Robbie: Nice talking to you, sir.

Dean: One piece of advice. The most important thing is for you to decide your own future.

Robbie: Yes, sir. Good-bye, Dean Rafer.

Dean: Good-bye, Robbie. Good luck.

【语言点精讲】

1. Did you bring your transcript from high school?

你把高中的成绩单带来了么？transcript: 这里指“成绩单”。

2. Right here.

就在这儿呢。right 修饰 here，起着加强语气的作用。

3. All kinds -- sports, editorials, theater reviews.

什么方面的都有——体育、社论、戏剧评论。

sports: 体育。

editorials: 社论。

theater reviews: 戏剧评论。

4. You name it, I've written it.

你说得出的，我都写过。来自市面上小贩或店主常说的一句话：You name it, we got it.（你要什么，我们有什么。）有时只说半句：You name it....

5. Hmmm.

相当于“嗯嗯”，表示赞许。

6. Not until recently.

最近才想到。此处 not until 表示以前并不曾想到。

7. One piece of advice. The most important thing is for you to decide your own future.

请容许我给你一句忠告。最重要的是你要为你自己的未来做出决定。

One piece of advice.：给你一句忠告。advice 是不可数名词，可说 some advice。“一件”时说 a piece of advice，不能说 an advice。
the most important：最重要的，important 的最高级形式。三音节及更多音节的词变为比较级、最高级用加上 more, most 的办法。

ACT 3-1 “我倒是愿意走我自己的路。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 在家里一边浇花一边和他的朋友 Mike 聊关于大学面试的事。Mike 刚刚参加过哥伦比亚大学的面试。

Mike: I had an interview today, too. I had a great interview with Admissions at Columbia University.

Robbie: Really? What did they say? Will you get into the school?

Mike: Well, they didn't say anything for sure. But I figure that with my grades and with my **personality**, I'll have no problem.

Robbie: Columbia's a terrific school. What are you going to do?

Mike: Do? I don't know. I also applied to NYU.

Robbie: You sound excited about Columbia. What's your problem, Mike?

Mike: **Indecision**. Indecision. It's not easy, and this is an important decision we have to make. What about you? How was your interview with Michigan?

Robbie: The interview was fine.

Mike: It's a great college.

Robbie: It is. My father would like me to go there. He and my Grandpa both went there.

Mike: Great medical school, too.

Robbie: I know.

Mike: You can follow in your father's **footsteps**.

Robbie: Ah! I'd like to follow in my own footsteps, Mike.

Mike: What do you want to study?

Robbie: I've been thinking. I think I want to study **journalism** to be a reporter -- a newspaperman.

Mike: You do a pretty good job on the Riverdale High School paper.

Robbie: And I've been thinking about it a lot **lately**.

Mike: Have you discussed it with your parents?

Robbie: No. But I have to.

Mike: OK. Let's talk.

【语言点精讲】

1. I had a great interview with Admissions at Columbia University.

Columbia University: 哥伦比亚大学，纽约市的一所私立大学，是著名的常青藤盟校（Ivy League）之一。其他的常青藤盟校包括：布朗大学(Brown University)，康乃尔大学(Cornell University)，达特茅斯学院(Dartmouth College)，哈佛大学(Harvard University)，宾夕法尼亚大学(University of Pennsylvania)，普林斯顿大学(Princeton University)以及耶鲁大学(Yale University)。

2. Well, they didn't say anything for sure. But I figure that with my grades and with my personality, I'll have no problem.

他们没有给明确的答复。但是我猜想以我的分数和我的品行，我不会有问题的。

I figure: 我合计，我猜想，我估计。

grades: 这里指“分数”。

personality: 指人的个性，性格，品行。

3. I also applied to NYU.

我还申请了纽约大学。

NYU: 纽约大学 (New York University)。这是纽约的另一所私立大学。

4. You sound excited about Columbia.

You sound excited about...: 听起来你对.....兴趣很大。

5. You can follow in your father's footsteps.

你可以走你父亲的路（当医生）。

follow in your father's footsteps: 走你父亲的路。

6. Ah!

用这个声音表示不以为然、不认同。

7. I think I want to study journalism to be a reporter -- a newspaperman.

我想我要念新闻专业，当记者——当新闻工作者。

newspaperman: 新闻记者，新闻工作者。后缀-man 表示职业，例如: milkman (送牛奶的人), fireman (消防队员), mailman (邮递员)等。但近年来女权运动者对这类合成词愤慨不已，认为有明显的性别歧视，因此很多改以中性词代替，例如: journalist, milk person, firefighter, mail carrier 等。

ACT 3-2 “我想了很久上哪所大学好。”

【故事梗概】

当晚，Robbie 和 Philip 进行了一次长谈。他坦诚的讲出了自己对申请大学这一问题的想法。Philip 表示理解他做的决定。

Philip: Hi, Son. Is everything all right?

Robbie: Hi, Dad. Everything's fine. I was just waiting for you to get home so we could talk.

Philip: Anything special you want to talk about?

Robbie: There is, Dad.

Philip: I'm listening.

Robbie: Well, I know you and Mom have given up a lot to save money for my college tuition.

Philip: We want you to go to college, Robbie.

Robbie: I know. I do.

Philip: But?

Robbie: Well, I've thought a lot about which college, and one of them is Columbia.

Philip: Columbia? Why Columbia?

Robbie: First, they have an excellent School of Journalism.

Philip: They do. And your friends are planning to go to Columbia?

Robbie: That's only part of it. It's complicated. I'll try to explain. Mike and I had a hamburger this afternoon, and we talked.

Philip: Yes?

Robbie: Well, we talked about a lot of things. He applied to Columbia, and his interview was very successful. He thinks he'll be accepted, and he really wants to go there.

Philip: Dean Rafer called me today. He told me he was very impressed with you.

Robbie: He's a nice man. He was very kind.

Philip: He told me you had some doubts about wanting to go to Michigan.

Robbie: Yes. I do. I'm just not sure about what I want to do.

Philip: That's OK.

Robbie: You understand?

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, I know you and Mom have given up a lot to save money for my college tuition.

嗯，爸爸，我知道你和妈妈为攒钱供我上大学，做出不少牺牲。

give up: 放弃，牺牲（享受）。

tuition: 这里指学费。

2. I know. I do.

我知道。我真的知道。

"I do."是"I do know."的简略，do 表强调。

3. But?

然而？这里相当于 But what's on your mind, anyway?（知道归知道，不过你是想说.....？）

4. Well, I've thought a lot about which college, and one of them is Columbia.

嗯，我想了很久上哪所大学好，其中有一所就是哥伦比亚大学。

I've thought a lot about...: 关于...我想了很久。这里用现在完成时，表示一个在过去开始而延续到现在，或可能延续到将来的动作或情况，一般表示延续的时间较长。

5. That's only part of it. It's complicated. I'll try to explain.

这只不过是一部分理由。事情很复杂，我会尽力解释一下。

complicated: 难以理解的，难以说清楚的，复杂的。

explain: 解释，说明...的含义（或原因、理由）；

6. He thinks he'll be accepted

他认为他会被录取入学的。

be accepted: 这里指被大学录取，相当于 be permitted to enter.

7. He told me he was very impressed with you.

他对我说他对你的印象很不错。

He told me (that)...: 他告诉我..., 后面接的是间接引语，用来转述别人的话。又如 Philip 说的: He told me you had some doubts about wanting to go to Michigan.（他告诉我说你对于是否上密歇根大学还拿不定主意。）

be impressed with you: 对你留有好印象，对你印象很深。

ACT 3-3 “你真的了不起！”

【故事梗概】

Philip 给 Robbie 讲了自己申请大学选择专业时的经历。原来 Philip 当年也是很有主见，要自己来选择和塑造自己的前途。Philip 评价 Robbie“真是 Stewart 家的人”

Philip: Let me tell you something, Robbie. Something that might be surprising to you.

Robbie: What? Tell me.

Philip: Well, Grandpa wanted me to study engineering, like him. Well, I wasn't clear about my future, but I knew engineering was not for me.

Robbie: What did you tell Grandpa?

Philip: The truth.

Robbie: Then you're not upset about my not wanting to go into medicine?

Philip: I'm not upset at all. I'm just happy that we're able to talk about it.

Robbie: I am too, Dad.

Philip: I **suppose** you want to apply to Columbia.

Robbie: Yes, but I also want to apply to several other colleges.

Philip: I thought you wanted to go to Columbia.

Robbie: Well, I might want to go to Columbia. But I might not. I just want to be able to make my own decision.

Philip: You're a real Stewart!

Robbie: And if I think about it long enough, you never know ...

Philip: Never know what?

Robbie: If I make my own decision, I might choose Michigan.

Philip: Robbie, you're something! You know, when I was your age, I said exactly the same thing to Grandpa.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, I wasn't clear about my future, but I knew engineering was not for me.

嗯，我当时对自己的未来也不很清楚，但我知道我不该学工程。

be clear about: 对...清楚，关于...很明白。

not for me: 这里指“某事不适合我”。

2. I suppose you want to apply to Columbia.

我猜想你想申请上哥伦比亚大学。

I suppose : 我猜，我认为，我推想。

apply to: 正式申请，向...要求

3. You're a real Stewart!

a real Stewart: 真是 Stewart 家的人。Philip 是指 Robbie 有自己的主见。从这点来讲，他和 Stewart 家的人具有同样的个性。

4. And if I think about it long enough, you never know ...

再说，如果我考虑的时间够长的话，说不定.....

you never know: 说不定，说不准。

5. You're something!

你真了不起！something 在 you're something 中，表示某种了不起的给人以深刻印象的物或人。

6. You know, when I was your age, I said exactly the same thing to Grandpa.

When I was your age: 当年我像你这么大的时候。

I said exactly the same thing: 我说的话跟你现在的一模一样。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 10 课：偷得浮生半日闲

ACT 1-1 “今天的日程是怎么安排的？”

【故事梗概】

Susan 在办公室里和她的助手 Sam 确认当天的日程安排。她有非常忙碌的一天。

Sam: Good morning, Susan.

Susan: Good morning, Sam. What's the **schedule** today?

Sam: Ten o'clock, telephone FAO Schwarz about the new twin baby dolls.

Susan: OK.

Sam: Telephone Mrs. Zaskey at the advertising agency.

Susan: I did that. Go on.

Sam: Eleven o'clock, **approve** the **sketches** for the toy spaceship.

Susan: Where are they?

Sam: Right here.

Susan: Did you look at them?

Sam: Yes, I did.

Susan: What do you think of the spaceship?

Sam: I think the kids'll love it.

Susan: Would you show me the drawings, please?

Susan: Huh.

Susan: Now, what else is on the schedule today?

Sam: Well, at one o'clock you have a lunch appointment with Mr. Levine, the **client** from the Toytown Stores.

Susan: Where?

Sam: At Rossano's.

Susan: Hmm. Anything else?

Sam: At four o'clock, you have a meeting with the **production** staff in the **conference** room.

Susan: Make sure everybody is at that meeting.

Sam: Will do. At six you're meeting Mr. Ozawa.

Susan: Oh, yes. Are his **models** here?

Sam: They're in my office.

Susan: I'd like to see them.

Sam: Right.

【语言点精讲】

1. What's the schedule today?

今天的日程是怎么安排的？也可以说 What is on the schedule today?

schedule: 时间表，计划表，议事日程。

2. Ten o'clock, telephone FAO Schwarz about the new twin baby dolls.

十点钟，给 FAO 施瓦茨公司打电话，谈双胞胎娃娃玩具问题。

telephone sb.: 给某人打电话。telephone 在这里用作动词。

FAO Schwarz: 是纽约一家著名的玩具公司。

twin baby dolls: 双胞胎娃娃玩具。

3. Eleven o'clock, approve the sketches for the toy spaceship.

十一点，批准玩具太空船的草图。

approve sth.: 批准，通过；同意。

sketches: 素描图，草图。还有其他的一些词汇来表示不同的图。如 drawing（用线条构成的图画），painting（色彩图，如油画），picture（泛指图画、肖像以及照片），portrait（肖像画），chart（图表），cartoon（卡通或漫画），blueprint（蓝图），design（设计图），photo（照片），snapshot（抓拍的照片，常是不很正式的），candid photo（趁人不备时偷拍的照片）。

4. At four o'clock, you have a meeting with the production staff in the conference room.

四点钟你在会议室和生产人员开会。

production staff: 在一起从事生产的工作人员。staff 是集合名词，指某一单位的全部工作人员或雇员，一般不用复数形式。

conference room: 会议室。conference 通常是指大型的会议。

5. Will do.

相当于 Sure, I'll do it.（我会去办的，没问题。）这是表示同意做某事的口语说法。

6. Right.

好的，行。这也是同意做某事的一种口语说法。

说“Right”也可以表示同意别人的观点。

ACT 1-2 “去享受一下鸟语花香。”

【故事梗概】

Sam 念完了日程表上的所有安排，但 Susan 觉得自己好像还计划了什么其他的事情。Sam 看到她工作过于紧张劳累，建议她抽空去享受一下鸟语花香。

Susan: What else? Come on, Sam...

Sam: You work too hard, Susan. When was your last day off?

Susan: Hmm. I can't remember.

Sam: You really ought to take some time off.

Susan: What for?

Sam: To enjoy the simple things in life...

Susan: I know, Sam. Maybe soon.

Sam: To smell the flowers.

Susan: Oh, wait a minute. What's today's date?

Sam: Today is the twelfth. Why?

Susan: It seems to me I **scheduled** something else.

Sam: There's nothing else in the **appointment** book.

Susan: I'm sure I did. Oh, well, I'll probably remember it later.

Sam: I hope it isn't important.

Susan: Hmm. It's probably nothing. OK, let's get started. Would you call Priscilla Smith at FAO Schwarz, please?

Sam: Right.

Later that morning...

Sam: These are the models from the Japanese film maker.

Susan: Thank you. Just put them on my desk.

Sam: And the new drawings for the toy spaceship.

Susan: Wonderful. That was fast.

Sam: We have a new artist. She's very talented.

【语言点精讲】

1. You really ought to take some time off.

你真的应该休息一下。

ought to do sth.: 应该做某事。ought to 的口语说法的发音为 awta。

take some time off: 抽出时间（休息一下，放松一下）。

2. What for?

为什么？在这里相当于“Why?”

3. To enjoy the simple things in life...

享受一下人生的小小乐趣.....

the simple things in life: 人生的小乐趣。这里 simple things 指的是轻松愉快的谈话，欣赏美丽的天空，或是散步之类的简单但是令人感到放松和快乐的事。

4. To smell the flowers.

去享受一下鸟语花香。这个短语场用来指“轻松一下，放松一下，休息一会儿”。

5. What's today's date? Today is the twelfth.

用“What's today's date?”提问时，问的是日期，“今天是（几月）几号？”

用“What day is it today?”提问时，问的则是“今天是星期几？”

the twelfth: 这里表示日期，指 12 号。在表示日期时，使用序数词。

6. It seems to me I scheduled something else.

我好像还安排了一项别的日程。

It seems to...: 好像是...

schedule 在这里用作动词, “将...列入计划, 排入日程”。

7. It's probably nothing.

大概不是什么重要事。类似含义的说法还有 “It's probably no big deal.” 以及 “It's probably no big thing.”

ACT 1-3 “我已经解开了这个谜。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 父女来到了 Susan 的办公室找他。Susan 总算想起了她忘记的事情, 原来她竟把同 Harry 父女的午餐约会也给忘了。

Susan: What time is it, anyway? My watch stopped.

Sam: It's eleven thirty.

Susan: What time is my lunch date with Bill Levine?

Sam: One o'clock.

Susan: Remind me to leave at twelve forty-five.

Sam: Did you remember your other appointment for today?

Susan: No, but I have a feeling it's going to be too late when I do remember.

[Sam leaves Susan's office. A little later, he returns.]

Susan: Yes, Sam?

Sam: I just solved the mystery.

Susan: What did I forget?

Sam: You have some guests in the reception room.

Susan: What? Who?

Sam: Mr. Harry Bennett and his daughter.

Susan: I remember! Oh...Harry! I made a lunch date with him and his daughter weeks ago.

Sam: Is he a client?

Susan: He's a friend.

Sam: Well he's here with his daughter to have lunch.

Susan: I met her at Thanksgiving, and I promised to have lunch with both of them today.

Sam: Yes, indeed. What are you going to do about your appointment with Mr. Levine?

Susan: Any suggestions? Oh!

【语言点精讲】

1. It's eleven thirty.

eleven thirty: 十一点半。也可以说 half-past eleven.

2. Remind me to leave at twelve forty-five.

到十二点四十五分时请提醒我走。

remind sb. to do sth.: 提醒某人做某事。

twelve forty-five: 12 点 45 分。也可以说 a quarter to one.

3. No, but I have a feeling it's going to be too late when I do remember.

还没有, 可是我有一种感觉, 到真想起来时就太迟了。

I have a feeling...: 我有一种感觉, 我觉得。相当于 I think...

4. I just solved the mystery.

我已经解开了这个谜。

solve the mystery: 解开了这个谜。

5. You have some guests in the reception room.

你有客人在接待室里。

reception room: 接待室, 会客室。

6. What? Who?

什么? 是谁?

What 在此处是表示一般的惊疑: “怎么回事?” 而 Who 才是具体的问题: “来的是谁?”

ACT 2-1 “我得打个电话。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 在接待室见到了 Harry 和 Michelle。Michelle 对 Susan 的态度并不特别友好。Susan 给客户 Levine 先生打了电话, 把原定的工作午餐改了时间。

Susan: Hi, Michelle. Hello, Harry. It's nice to see you again.

Michelle: Hello.

Harry: Hi, Susan. We have both been excited about seeing you and having lunch with you today.

Michelle picked these flowers out for you.

Michelle: Daddy, can we go soon?

Harry: We're going to go to lunch in a few minutes, honey.

Michelle: But I'm **thirsty**.

Harry: OK. You go out and get a drink of water at the **fountain**.

Susan: The fountain is over there, Michelle. Near the Exit sign.

Michelle: Thank you.

Harry: Michelle is a little **shy**.

Susan: I used to be that way when I was her age. Harry, if Michelle doesn't want to go, we don't have to.

Harry: She'll be fine. Remember, I haven't dated anyone else since her mother died. This is a little difficult for her. Are you ready to go?

Susan: Yes. But could you wait one minute? I have a call to make. Would you excuse me? Sam, get Mr. Levine at Toytown Stores on the telephone for me, please.

Sam: Right. Hello. Susan Stewart calling Mr. Levine, please. He's on the phone.

Susan: Mr. Levine, Susan Stewart. I find myself in an **embarrassing** situation. I made another lunch date for today and forgot to enter it in my **appointment** book. Can you and I meet for drinks tomorrow? I'd really **appreciate** it ...Yes...Thank you...Tomorrow at five o'clock at the Biltmore. I'll see you then. Thank you, Mr. Levine.

【语言点精讲】

1. Michelle picked these flowers out for you.

这些花是 Michelle 给你挑选的。

pick sth. out: 挑选。pick out 是短语动词。另外我们还可以说 pick out sth.

2. You go out and get a drink of water at the fountain.

你可以出去到饮水器那儿喝点水。

fountain: 本意是“泉水”, 也指街道或公园里供行人饮水的流水龙头。一般较大的办公室常在走道里设一饮水器, 也称 fountain 或 water-cooler。

3. I used to be that way when I was her age.

我过去像她那么大时也是那样的。

used to be (do): 过去习惯于。指过去的习惯动作或状态, 而常意味着现在已不这样了。口语中的发音为 **yoosta**。注意不要将其和 be used to (doing) something 混淆, 后者是表示对某事物习以为常。

4. I have a call to make.

我得打个电话。have a call to make 是打电话的另一种表达方式。

5. Sam, get Mr. Levine at Toytown Stores on the telephone for me, please.

Sam, 请给我接通“玩具城”连锁商店 Levine 先生的电话。

get sb. on the telephone for me: 为我接通某人的电话。

6. He's on the phone.

他在接电话。他接电话了。

7. I find myself in an embarrassing situation.

我发现我现在的处境很为难。

embarrassing: 窘迫的; 令人为难的。

ACT 2-2 “你还记得吗?”

【故事梗概】

当天午后, Susan 和 Harry 以及 Michelle 在南大街海港口的一家餐厅吃饭。一盘蟹肉色拉勾起了 Michelle 对幸福家庭的追忆。

Waiter: Welcome to the South Street Restaurant, folks. What'll it be?

Harry: What do you recommend?

Waiter: Well, the crab salad's always a big hit.

Harry: Susan, would you like the crab salad?

Susan: I'd love the crab salad.

Harry: Michelle, would you like to try the crab salad, too?

Michelle: OK, Daddy.

Harry: We'll have the three crab salads and a pitcher of lemonade.

Waiter: Help yourself to celery and carrots and other vegetables.

Harry: We used to catch crabs.

Susan: Where was that?

Harry: We had a summer house on Fire Island. Do you remember, Michelle?

Michelle: Sure. You and Mommy used to take me on the ferryboat.

Harry: Sometimes, at night, we would go down to the beach and catch crabs, remember?

Michelle: With a piece of meat on a string!

Harry: Right. Well, I think I'm going to get us all some vegetables.

[Harry leaves the table. The waiter arrives and sets down their food.]

Waiter: There you go.

Susan: Thank you.

Waiter: And some ice-cold lemonade.

Susan: Thank you.

Waiter: Enjoy it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Welcome to the South Street Restaurant, folks. What'll it be?

欢迎到南大街餐厅来, 各位。想用点儿什么?

Welcome to sp.: 欢迎来到某地。

What'll it be?: 你们想来点什么? 在这里相当于“What would you like to eat (drink)?”这是侍者问顾客的常用句子之一。

2. Well, the crab salad's always a big hit.

哦, 蟹肉沙拉总是很受欢迎。

crab: 螃蟹。

a big hit: 指的是很受欢迎的（菜等）。

3. We'll have the three crab salads and a pitcher of lemonade.

我们要三个蟹肉沙拉和一大瓶柠檬汁。

We'll have...: 我要要点...。这是点菜时常用的句子

pitcher: 指的是一种有嘴和柄的水罐。

lemonade: 柠檬汁。

4. Help yourself to celery and carrots and other vegetables.

芹菜、胡萝卜和别的蔬菜，请随便自己取用。

help (yourself) to: 这里指请自己取用。

5. We used to catch crabs.

我们过去常去捉螃蟹。

used to do sth.: 过去常常做某事。又如 Michelle 说的: You and Mommy used to take me on the ferryboat. (你和妈妈常带我坐渡船去。)

6. Sometimes, at night, we would go down to the beach and catch crabs, remember?

有时在夜里我们就到海滩上去捉螃蟹，你还记得吗？

would go: 过去常去。与 used to 一样， would 指过去的习惯。用 would 时，通常指一段特定时间里常常发生的事。

7. There you go.

这是你们要的。你们点的东西来了。当食物或饮料端上桌时，侍者常说的句子。也可以说: Here you are.

本情景中出现的“What'll it be?”“There you go.”以及“Enjoy it.”都属于中低档餐馆侍者的口吻，比较随便。

8. And some ice-cold lemonade.

还有冰凉的柠檬汁。

ice-cold: 冰凉的。相当于“very cold”。

ACT 2-3 “只不过是女孩子之间的谈话。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 离开了餐桌去取些蔬菜。Susan 抓紧时机同 Michelle 进行了开诚布公的谈话，并被她接受为朋友。

Susan: Michelle, can I help you with the [lemonade](#)?

Michelle: No, thank you. I'll wait for my father.

Susan: Michelle, can we have a talk?

Michelle: Sure.

Susan: I know you miss your mother.

Michelle: You do?

Susan: Yes. And I'm not trying to take her place.

Michelle: Then why are you and Daddy spending so much time together?

Susan: Because we like each other. And right now, he needs a friend.

Michelle: I'm his friend.

Susan: I know you are.

Michelle: Sometimes he's very sad.

Susan: And so are you, I think.

Michelle: Sometimes.

Susan: I'd like to be your friend, too. Will you let me be your friend, Michelle?

[She offers her hand to Michelle. Michelle accepts it.]

Harry: So, what were you two talking about?

Michelle: Just girl talk, Daddy. It's too hard to explain.

Harry: You're probably right. Well, let's get started.

【语言点精讲】

1. Michelle, can we have a talk?

Can we have a talk? : 咱们谈谈好吗? 常用这个句子开始一个比较严肃的话题。

2. And I'm not trying to take her place.

我并不想要取代她的位置。

try to do sth.: 设法做某事。试图做某事。

take (her) place: 取代(她的)位置。

3. Will you let me be your friend, Michelle?

你肯让我成为你的朋友吗, Michelle?

Will you...? : 你可以...吗? 用以表示请求或邀请。

4. She offers her hand to Michelle.

她向 Michelle 伸出了手。

offer one's hand to...: 向...伸出手。

5. Just girl talk, Daddy. It's too hard to explain.

只不过是女孩子之间的谈话, 爸爸。很难解释。

这是一种常用的表示自己不想继续某话题的方式。所表达的意思其实是: I don't want to go into detail about it. I really don't want to discuss any more right now.

girl talk: 女孩子或女人之间的谈话。

too hard to...: 太难了以至于不能..., 很难...。

ACT 3-1 “外面天气真好。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 心里惦记着下午的业务会议, 她想要回去工作。Harry 和 Michelle 的失望使 Susan 决定改变自己的工作计划。

Susan: Oh, it's a quarter to four, and I have a production meeting at four.

Harry: I planned to take you for a ride in Central Park in a horse and carriage.

Susan: Harry, I'd love to, but I have work to do.

Harry: OK, We'll walk back to your office with you. It's so nice out. I decided to forget about my accounting problems and just enjoy this beautiful spring day. Take the time, Susan.

Susan: I know I should, but... well, there are too many things to do.

Harry: I understand. I'll go for a ride with Michelle.

Susan: Right. Well, I had a really nice time.

Harry: So did I.

Michelle: So did I. I'm sorry you can't come with us, Susan.

Susan: So am I.

Harry: Bye-bye.

Susan: Harry! Michelle! Can you wait till I make a phone call?

Harry: Sure.

【语言点精讲】

1. I planned to take you for a ride in Central Park in a horse and carriage.

我原来计划带你到中央公园坐马车兜风的。

take (you) for a ride: 带(你)去坐车。take for 是 短语动词, 带(某人)去(乘车, 散步等)。

Central Park: 中央公园。纽约市的中央公园位于曼哈顿 (Manhattan) 中心, 是美国最大的公园之一。园内可供徒步健行、慢跑、骑自行车, 还可以乘四轮马车 (carriage) 游览, 公园旁的大都会博物馆 (Metropolitan Art Museum) 则更是世界闻名的艺术宫殿。

2. It's so nice out.

外面天气真好。在此 out 意为 “outside”。

3. I decided to forget about my accounting problems and just enjoy this beautiful spring day.

我决定忘掉我那些会计上的问题, 只是享受一下这美好的春日。

decide to do sth.: 决定做某事, 下定决心做某事。

forget about (sb./sth./doing sth.): 忘记, 忘掉(某人/某事/做某事)。

4. Take the time.

花这点时间吧。不要吝惜这个时间。在这里 Harry 的意思是说: Take a break from your work and be with us.

5. I had a really nice time.

我今天过得很高兴。这是和朋友、熟人告别时常用的说法。

6. So did I.

so+助动词 (情态动词) + 名词或代词: 这一简捷地表示肯定的相同事物或状况的说法中, 中间的助动词或情态动词由前面句子来决定。

如本情境中 Susan 说了 “Well, I had a really nice time.”, Harry 和 Michelle 回应 “So did I.” (相当于 “I also had a nice time.”)

又如下面一句: Michelle 对 Susan 说 “I'm sorry you can't come with us, Susan.” 这次 Susan 的回答则是 “So am I.” (相当于 “I am also sorry I can't go with you.”)

ACT 3-2 “我要用点儿时间享受一下鸟语花香。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 决定下午和 Harry 父女在外面玩, 她给公司打了电话, 重新安排了工作。她总算是忙里偷闲一次。她和 Michelle 的友谊更亲密了, 但这是 “女人” 间的秘密。

Sam: Susan Stewart's office.

Susan: Sam, this is Susan.

Sam: Hi. How was lunch?

Susan: Fine.

Sam: You're late. The production department's waiting in the conference room.

Susan: I know. Ask Paul Smith to fill in for me. He knows everything about the production schedule, and he can answer any questions.

Sam: Right.

Susan: Don't tell anyone, but I'm taking a little time to smell the flowers.

Sam: Good for you. It'll be our secret.

Susan: But schedule another production meeting for tomorrow. I'll be back for my six o'clock appointment with Mr. Ozawa.

Sam: OK, Susan. And have a nice afternoon.

Susan: Thanks.

[Later, in Central Park. Harry, Susan, and Michelle are riding in a carriage.]

Harry: She likes you.

Susan: I know. I like her.

Harry: How'd you do it?

Susan: We had a talk.

Harry: About what?

Susan: Life.

Harry: And what did you decide?

Susan: That's a secret ... between us women.

【语言点精讲】

1. The production department's waiting in the conference room.

生产部的人都在会议室里等着呢。

这里视 production department 为一个整体，故动词用单数形式“is”。

2. Ask Paul Smith to fill in for me.

请 Paul Smith 代我主持一下吧。

fill in for me: 暂时代替我处理事务。相当于“to take my place”。

3. Don't tell anyone, but I'm taking a little time to smell the flowers.

别跟任何人说，我要用点儿时间享受一下鸟语花香。

take a little time to do sth.: 花点时间去做某事。

4. Good for you. It'll be our secret.

我为你高兴，这是我们的秘密。

Good for you.: 为你高兴。在这里相当于 I'm glad to hear it ; congratulations!

secret: 秘密。

5. But schedule another production meeting for tomorrow. I'll be back for my six o'clock appointment with Mr. Ozawa.

但是请安排一下明天再开一次生产会议。我会赶回来参加我六点钟和小泽先生的约谈的。

schedule sth.: 安排某事。schedule 在这里用作动词。

an appointment with sb.: 与某人的会面，约见某人

6. And what did you decide?

你们俩得出什么结论？

decide: 得……结论；解决(有争执或疑问的事情)；决定。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 11 课：私人宅邸

ACT 1-1 “我想听听您的意见。”

【故事梗概】

在 Stewart 家的起居室里，Marilyn 正在设计一件连衣裙。她停下来一会儿，和 Ellen 谈心。她和 Richard 将要有了孩子了，买自己的房子另住的事提上了议事日程。就此事她想听听 Ellen 的意见。

Marilyn: Ellen, I'd like your opinion.

Ellen: About what?

Marilyn: Well, Richard and I feel that with a baby coming we need to have our own place to live.

Ellen: Oh.

Marilyn: Well, what do you think about Richard and me looking for a small house or an apartment at this point in our lives?

Ellen: We love having you here, and there is room and ... and when the baby comes, the baby can stay in your room for a while.

Marilyn: Richard feels we need to find a small house.

Ellen: I remember when I was pregnant with Richard Philip and were living with Grandma and Grandpa. Philip was a young doctor, and he kept talking about having a house of our own. It's natural.

Marilyn: What did you do?

Ellen: We looked at a lot of houses.

Marilyn: Did you find one?

Ellen: Oh, not at first. We couldn't afford it. Grandpa wanted to lend us the money to buy one, but Philip is too independent. He didn't want to borrow any money.

Marilyn: Sounds like Richard.

Ellen: They're all alike. Richard is a real Stewart. He's independent and sometimes just stubborn.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'd like your opinion.

我想听听您的意见。这是一种征求别人的意见，询问某人的看法的表达方式。

2. About what?

我的什么意见？ 在这里相当于“My opinion about what?”

口语中，当上下文意思比较清楚时，句中可省略重复的部分。

3. Well, Richard and I feel that with a baby coming we need to have our own place to live.

哦，Richard 和我觉得，我们快要有孩子了，需要有自己的房子住。

with a baby coming: 指快要生孩子了。

our own place: 这里指的是“a house belonging to ourselves”，自己的房子。

4. Well, what do you think about Richard and me looking for a small house or an apartment at this point in our lives?

呃，Richard 和我在我们生活中的这个时候找一所小住宅或者一处公寓房子，你认为怎么样？

What do you think about...?: 你觉得...怎么样？你认为...怎么样？在征求别人的意见时可以使用这个句型。

at this point: 在这个时刻。相当于 at this time.

5. We couldn't afford it.

我们买不起。

afford: 买得起，承担得起(费用等)。常接在 can, could 或 be able to 后面。

6. Grandpa wanted to lend us the money to buy one, but Philip is too independent. He didn't want to borrow any money.

爷爷要想借给我们钱买一所房子，可是 Philip 独立性太强了。他不想借钱。

lend: 借出，借给。borrow: 借入，借来。

7. Sounds like Richard.

听起来像 Richard 一样。用来表明 某人的行为方式像另一人的。

8. They're all alike.

他们斯图尔特家的人都是一个样子。

alike: 在这里作为表语形容词，用于 be, look, sound 等系动词或半系动词后面，表示“一样的，相同的，相似的”。

ACT 1-2 “没有必要操之过急。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 回顾了自己同 Phillip 建设小家庭的历程。Ellen 建议 Marilyn 先去房地产经纪人处看看再说。

Marilyn: When did you buy a house?

Ellen: After Richard was born. I was teaching music, and Philip was opening his first medical office.

Marilyn: Where was the house?

Ellen: Right here in Riverdale. Of course, it was a small house, but just right for us.

Marilyn: It's funny. History repeats itself. Now Richard and I are having a baby, and we probably won't be able to afford a house right

Ellen: Why don't you look at some houses, Marilyn?

Marilyn: Good idea.

Ellen: Look in the [real-estate section](#) of Sunday's Times. You'll learn a lot.

Marilyn: Maybe we should speak to a real-estate [agent](#) about a house.

Ellen: And a bank about a [mortgage](#).

Marilyn: I'll talk to Richard about it. I think it's a good idea, Ellen. We can learn a lot by asking.

Ellen: And if I can be of any help, let me know. As a matter of fact, my friend Virginia Martinelli is a real-estate agent.

Marilyn: Good.

Ellen: You won't believe this, but she sold us our first house and this one.

Marilyn: Well, I'll tell Richard, and we'll go to see her. Do you think the skirt length is right, Ellen? Do you think it's too long?

Ellen: I think the skirt is just right. Are you planning to attach a [train](#) to it?

Marilyn: No. No train. Just the dress. But I am going to make a [headpiece](#) of [lace](#).

Ellen: That dress is [gorgeous](#).

Marilyn: Thanks, Ellen. And thanks for the advice about the house. I'll talk to Richard about it the minute he comes home.

Ellen: And remember, we love having you here. There's no need to rush.

【语音点精讲】

1. When did you buy a house?

你们什么时候买的房子？

Marilyn 把重音放在助动词 **did** 上了。如果句中的助动词重读了，表示急于知道更多的内容，否则句中助动词不重读。

2. History repeats itself.

历史在重复。意思是说今天发生在 Richard 夫妇身上的情况与多年前他父母买房的情景相似。

3. Why don't you look at some houses?

你们为什么不先看看房子呢？

Why don't you...? : 为什么不...呢？这是提建议的一种说法。

4. Look in the real-estate section of Sunday's Times. You'll learn a lot.

看看星期天的《纽约时报》房地产广告部份，你会学到不少东西的。

real-estate section: 报纸上刊登出售房子消息的版面。

Times: 指《纽约时报》。这是 New York Times 的简称。

5. Maybe we should speak to a real-estate agent about a house. ... And a bank about a mortgage.

也许我们该去找一位房地产经纪人，谈谈买房子的事。.....还可以找一家银行谈谈买房抵押贷款的问题。

speak to: 表示为某种目的而特为找某人谈话。

real-estate agent: 房地产经纪人。

And a bank about a mortgage. 是"And you should speak to a bank about a mortgage."的省略语。mortgage: 按揭，抵押贷款。通常是以房子作抵押向银行借款。大约用 15 到 30 年时间还清借款。

6. And if I can be of any help, let me know.

如果有我能帮忙的地方的话，就告诉我。用于向某人表示自己愿意提供帮助。

be of help: 是“能帮忙，有所帮助”的意思。

7. I'll talk to Richard about it the minute he comes home.

等 Richard 一回家，我就去和他谈这件事。

the minute: 在这里起一个连词的作用，相当于“as soon as”。

8. There's no need to rush.

没有必要操之过急。

ACT 2-1 “这里的房子的价格对你们来讲太高了。”

【故事梗概】

在房地产经纪人办公室里，Marilyn 和丈夫 Richard 正在同房地产经纪人 Virginia Martinelli 谈房子的事。Virginia Martinelli 是 Stewart 家的老朋友，她坦诚的告诉他们，以他们的经济情况是无法购买位于 Riverdale 的房子的。

Virginia: I remember your parents' first house very well. It was on Spring Avenue, near the park.

Richard: I grew up in that house.

Virginia: Yes, and you were such a cute baby.

Marilyn: I've seen pictures of him. He had blond hair.

Virginia: I've been friendly with the Stewart family for a long time, so it's my pleasure to help you find a house now.

Richard: Well, we're not sure we can afford one.

Marilyn: But we'd like to find out about the possibilities.

Virginia: That's a good idea. I love your house on Linden Street. I sold your father that house seventeen years ago.

Marilyn: Really?

Richard: Yes, Mom was pregnant with Robbie then, and they needed the extra room.

Virginia: I hear you're expecting a baby, Mrs. Stewart.

Marilyn: Mmm-hmm. So we will be needing more room.

Virginia: Oh, so you don't need something immediately?

Richard: No. But in five or six months...

Marilyn: And time passes so quickly.

Virginia: Yes, it does. Well, when you called, you gave me enough information about your salaries and your savings. So I have a good idea about your financial situation. Let me show you some pictures of houses.

Marilyn: With two bedrooms?

Virginia: Yes, I think I can show you some. Of course, they won't be in Riverdale. The cost of housing's too high for you here.

Richard: Haven't thought about living anywhere else. We've always lived in this area.

【语言点精讲】

1. I've been friendly with the Stewart family for a long time, so it's my pleasure to help you find a house now.

我同 Stewart 一家人熟识很久了，现在我感到很高兴能帮助你们找一所房子。

be friendly with sb.: 与某人很友好，对某人很友好，和某人友好相处。

It's my pleasure to...: 做.....是我的荣幸，我感到很高兴能.....。

2. I hear you're expecting a baby.

我听说你们快要有小孩了。

You are expecting a baby.: 你有孕了，你快要有孩子了。这里可以省去“a baby”，只说“You're expecting.”其它同意的说法还有“be pregnant”和“be in the family way”。

3. So we will be needing more room.

因此我们将需要更多的地方。

will be needing: 将需要。这是一个将来进行式的句子，表示将要发生的事。

room: 在这里指空间、地方，是不可数名词。

4. Well, when you called, you gave me enough information about your salaries and your savings.

好，你们打电话来的时候，已经把你们的工资收入和储蓄存款情况都谈了。

salary: 薪水。

savings: 存款，储蓄。注意，这个词当存款讲时，多为复数形式。

5. So I have a good idea about your financial situation.

因此我对于你们的经济情况相当了解。

have a good idea of...: 对.....有较透彻的理解。相当于“know enough information about...”。类似的用法还有“have no idea of...”（不知道，不明白），“have some idea of...”（略有所知），“have little idea of...”（所知甚少）。

financial: 经济的，财政的。

6. Let me show you some pictures of houses.

我拿些房子的照片给你们看看。

在美国，买房子一般都要通过房地产经纪处。房地产经纪人一般掌握很多要出售的房子的情况，如坐落地点、建筑样式、新旧状况及价格。他们根据客户的要求，先向他们展示房子的图片，给他们提供信息和建议，就像 Virginia Martinelli 这样。

7. The cost of housing's too high for you here.

这里的房子的价格对你们来讲太高了。

the cost of sth.: 某物的 价钱，某物的价格。

ACT 2-2 “我更喜欢两层的房子。”

【故事梗概】

Virginia Martinelli 女士给 Marilyn 和 Richard 看了一些他们有可能负担得起的房子的照片。他们有了比较中意的候选，并打算周末去看看。Virginia 建议他们在多看一些照片，给自己多一些选择。

Marilyn: Where should we look for a house, Mrs. Martinelli?

Virginia: Well, we have an office in Mount Kisco. It's a lovely area, and it's only about an hour's drive from here. Here. I have a book with photos of some homes in that area. Now, let's see. Here. This is a lovely two-bedroom house in your price range.

Marilyn: It's pretty, but I prefer a two-story home.

Richard: I do, too. I don't care for a **ranch** type.

Virginia: OK. Oh, this is a wonderful house. I know it well. I sold it to the present owners.

Richard: It looks wonderful.

Virginia: This is a two-bedroom, two-bath house. It has a full basement, and it is on a half- acre lot. You can probably afford this one.

Marilyn: I like this house.

Richard: So do I.

Virginia: And the price is right. Would you like to go and see it?

Richard: Yes. We're planning to talk to someone at the bank next week. Perhaps we could see the house this weekend.

Virginia: If someone doesn't buy it before then. But let's keep looking. Just to get an idea of some other **possibilities**.

Richard: This is very helpful, Mrs. Martinelli.

Virginia: Here. This is a wonderful example of Spanish style **architecture**.

Richard: Oh, I love the roof **tiles** on a Spanish-style house.

Marilyn: It looks like the houses in Hollywood.

Virginia: It's interesting. A house like this in Riverdale costs double the price.

【语言点精讲】

1. Where should we look for a house?

我们究竟应该在哪儿找房子呢？

通常情态动词是不需要重读的，但这里 Marilyn 重读了情态动词 **should**，有强调的意味，可以传达出她很急切地想知道买哪里的房子的心情。

2. Well, we have an office in Mount Kisco. It's a lovely area, and it's only about an hour's drive from here.

Mount Kisco: 纽约市北面的一个城镇。

an hour's drive: 驾车一小时的路。在美国，经常用开车所用的时间来描述距离。

3. This is a lovely two-bedroom house in your price range.

这是在你们支付能力范围以内的一所很漂亮的两卧室的住宅。

two-bedroom house: 有两间卧室的房子。bedroom 是名词, 但数词+连词符+名词(如这里的 two-bedroom) 则成为复合形容词, 此时不能在 bedroom 后加 s。

in your price range: 在你们支付能力范围内, 在你们能负担的范围内。

4. It's pretty, but I prefer a two-story home.

它很美, 可是我更喜欢两层的房子。

two-story home: 两层楼房。story, 楼层, 这是美式英语的拼法, 英式英语中多拼做 storey。two-story 是复合形容词, 注意这里的 story 不能使用复数。请参见条目 3 下面的解释。

5. I don't care for a ranch type.

我不喜欢平房型的。

care for: 在这里的意思是“喜爱, 对...中意”。

ranch: 平房。

6. This is a two-bedroom, two-bath house. It has a full basement, and it is on a half- acre lot.

这是一所两卧室、两浴室的住宅。它有全房大的地下室, 地皮是半英亩。

two-bath house: 有两间盥洗室的房子。

a full basement: 全间的地下室(即地下室面积与一楼相同)。

lot: 这里用作名词, 指一块地。

7. And the price is right.

而且价格也合适。

right: 适当的, 合适的。

8. This is a wonderful example of Spanish style architecture.

这是西班牙式建筑的美妙的例子。

architecture: 这里指(某一国家或历史时期的)建筑样式。

ACT 2-3 “这是真正价廉物美的住宅。”

【故事梗概】

Virginia Martinelli 又给 Marilyn 和 Richard 看了一所刚上市要卖的房子, 她认为这是真正价廉物美的住宅。Marilyn 和 Richard 决定要去看一看房子, 还打算去和银行谈一谈抵押贷款的事。

Virginia: Oh my! Here's a real buy. It's a bargain. This house just came on the market.

Marilyn: It's quite lovely. Is it a two-bedroom house?

Virginia: No. It has three bedrooms and three baths. I know the house. It has a brand new kitchen. And a living room with a twelve-foot ceiling. And there's a two-car garage.

Richard: Then why don't we go and look at this house, too?

Virginia: It's a good investment.

Richard: Thank you, Mrs. Martinelli.

Marilyn: Thanks so much.

Virginia: My pleasure. Give my best to your parents. Your father's a wonderful doctor, Richard. He took care of my daughter when she was a child. He's the best pediatrician in Westchester.

Richard: Thanks, Mrs. Martinelli. I'll give them your regards.

Marilyn: We really appreciate your advice

Virginia: I do think you should go and see the houses and talk to the bank. Here. Let me give you some information sheets about the houses. They're both very good buys.

Richard: Well, thanks so much for your help and your time, Mrs. Martinelli. We've got a lot to talk about.

Marilyn: Mmm-hmm. Thanks.

【语言点精讲】

1. Oh my! Here's a real buy. It's a bargain.

噢，天啊！这是真正价廉物美的住宅，这房子买得过。

Oh my! : 表示惊讶。相当于汉语中的“哎呀！天啊！”

a real buy: 真的很合算的买卖，确实是价钱很便宜。buy 在这里是名词，指“价钱便宜，买了上算的东西”，它可以有复数。例如下文 Virginia 女士讲的 They're both very good buys. (这两所房子都值得买。)

a bargain: 与 a real buy 意义相同。

2. This house just came on the market.

它刚上市要卖。

come on the market: 上市，出售。

3. It has a brand new kitchen. And a living room with a twelve-foot ceiling. And there's a two-car garage.

厨房是崭新的装修，起居室天花板离地板 12 英尺高，有个能停两辆车的车库。

brand new: 崭新的，全新的。

twelve-foot ceiling: 离地 12 英尺高的天花板。

two-car garage: 可停放两辆车的车库。

4. Then why don't we go and look at this house, too?

那么我们何不也看看这一所房子？

Why don't we...? : 为什么我们不...? 相当于“Shall we ...? ”，是一种提建议的讲法。

5. Give my best to your parents.

替我向你父母问好。这里 best 后面省了 regards (问候，致敬意)。

也可以说: Remember me to your parents.

6. I'll give them your regards.

我会向他们转达您的问候。这句话是对 5 的应答。也可以只说: Yes, I will. 或者 Sure, I will.

7. I do think you should go and see the houses and talk to the bank.

这里的 do 表示强调，传达出“我确实认为……”的语气。这里的 do 需要重读。

8. Well, thanks so much for your help and your time.

嗯，非常感谢你帮助我们，花了不少时间。

ACT 3-1 “我能为你做些什么？”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 和 Richard 正在银行里。银行的贷款负责人 Ralph Riley 先生在询问他们现在的住房情况、职业及收入情况。

Mr. Riley: How do you do?

Richard: Hello.

Mr. Riley: I'm Ralph Riley.

Richard: I'm Richard Stewart, and this is my wife, Marilyn.

Mr. Riley: Pleased to meet you.

Marilyn: Likewise, Mr. Riley.

Mr. Riley: Please, sit down. What can I do for you?

Richard: We'd like to discuss a mortgage.

Marilyn: For a house.

Mr. Riley: Fine. Are you buying a house or are you refinancing your present home?

Richard: We're planning to buy a house.

Marilyn: And we'd like to find out about a mortgage.

Richard: We are customers of the bank. As a matter of fact, my whole family banks here.

Mr. Riley: I have some questions to ask. Do you own your house or do you rent?

Richard: Neither. We live with my parents, Dr. and Mrs. Philip Stewart.

Mr. Riley: And how old are you?

Marilyn: I'm twenty-nine.

Richard: I'm thirty.

Mr. Riley: And, Mr. Stewart, what is your **occupation**?

Richard: I'm a **freelance** photographer.

Mr. Riley: And, Mrs. Stewart, are you working?

Marilyn: Yes. I'm a designer, and I work in a boutique.

Mr. Riley: Did you bring any savings or salary information? Last year's tax forms?

Richard: Yes. Here they are.

【语言点精讲】

1. Likewise, Mr. Riley.

我也很高兴见到你，Riley 先生。这是对于“Pleased to meet you.”的一种回答方式。likewise 也可以说 the same here，两者都是非正式的说法。

2. What can I do for you?

我能为你做些什么？这是营业人员或服务人员接待顾客时常用的套语。

3. Are you buying a house or are you refinancing your present home?

你们是想新购住房，还是要再次申请新的贷款？

Are you buying... or are you refinancing...: 这里使用现在进行时，是表示当时当地的行为，“你们此次光临是为了……还是为了……？”
refinancing: 重新按揭，重新安排按揭，把旧贷款还清后重新申请（买房）贷款。

4. As a matter of fact, my whole family banks here.

事实上，我们全家都是同这家银行来往的。

as a matter of fact: 事实上，实际上。

bank: 这里用作动词，指“存款于银行”。

5. I'm a freelance photographer.

我是自由摄影师。

freelance: （从事）自由职业（的人）。Richard 不为某家公司工作，他把他的摄影作品卖给不同公司。

6. Did you bring any savings or salary information? Last year's tax forms?

你们有没有带来储蓄或工资方面的材料？比如说去年的纳税申报表？

tax form: 纳税申报表。在美国，个人所得税的多少依每人的年收入而定。每年在 4 月 15 日前，人们必须填好 tax form 交到国家税务局。

ACT 3-2 “要视情况而定。”

【故事梗概】

银行的 Riley 先生对 Richard 和 Marilyn 的经济情况作了进一步了解了情况。他认为 Richard 和 Marilyn 没有足够的收入来保证他们可以偿还贷款，也并没有其它财产可以作为抵押，因此银行要求他们提供担保人后才可贷款。

Mr. Riley: OK. What... what kind of house did you have in mind?

Richard: We're talking about buying a two-bedroom house in Mount Kisco. Here are the **financial** details on the house.

Mr. Riley: Thank you. Are you prepared to make a ten-percent down payment?

Richard: Yes, we are.

Mr. Riley: Payments over thirty years?

Richard: Yes.

Marilyn: Do you think we can get a loan?

Mr Riley: Well, it depends. Do you own any other **property**? Any **stocks** or **bonds**?

Richard: No.

Mr. Riley: I see. Then you don't have any **collateral**. Perhaps you could get a guarantor -- some one to sign for the loan for you.

Richard: Why is that necessary?

Mr. Riley: Since you don't have enough income, and you don't already own any property, the bank needs to be sure you can pay the **mortgage** every month. A guarantor is responsible for the loan if you can't make the payments.

Richard: I see. Well, the idea of buying a house is exciting.

Marilyn: Thank you, Mr. Riley. We'll read this over carefully.

Mr. Riley: Thank you.

Richard: Good-bye. Thanks.

Mr. Riley: Good-bye. And hope to see you soon.

Richard: I hope so, too.

Mr. Riley: Take care.

Marilyn: Good—bye.

【语言点精讲】

1. Are you prepared to make a ten-percent down payment?

你愿意付百分之十的头期款吗?

down payment: (分期付款中的) 头期款。

2. Payments over thirty years?

余款分 30 年付清?

over (thirty years): (30 年) 期。这里的 over 是“.....之久, 在.....的期间”的意思, 而不是指“超出.....”。

3. Well, it depends. Do you own any other property? Any stocks or bonds?

嗯, 还要分是什么情况。你们拥有不动产吗? 有股票或是债券吗?

It depends.: 要视情况而定。看情况, 不一定。

property: 财产, 多指土地、房产等不动产。stock: 股票。bond: 债券。

4. Then you don't have any collateral.

那么就是说你们提不出任何担保物。

collateral: 抵押物, 担保物。

5. A guarantor is responsible for the loan if you can't make the payments.

如果你不能按月偿还, 保证人就要对贷款负责。

guarantor: 担保人。

be responsible for sth.: 为某事负责, 对某事负责。

make the payments: 偿还(贷款)。

6. We'll read this over carefully.

我们要仔细地读一读这份材料。

read (this) over: 详读, 仔细阅读。

7. Take care.

保重。相当于“Take care of yourself.”这是告别时常讲的话。

ACT 3-3 “我想要自己来解决这件事。”

【故事梗概】

从银行回来后，Richard 和 Marilyn 终于完全弄清楚了买房子意味着什么。既无担保品，又不愿去求 Phillip 当担保人，他们只能寄希望于出版 Richard 的摄影集出版之后的稿酬了。Ellen 及时宽慰了他们的焦虑，Stewart 家的传统又得到了发扬。

Richard: It all sounded so easy until they mentioned needing collateral or a guarantor.

Marilyn: We have no collateral.

Richard: And I don't think it's a good idea to ask Dad to sign as a guarantor. I don't feel right about it.

Marilyn: I understand your feelings about it, Richard.

Ellen: Now, tell me, what's the problem?

Marilyn: We can get a loan from the bank if we can put up some collateral.

Richard: And we don't own anything to use as collateral.

Marilyn: Or someone can sign with us as a guarantor.

Ellen: Why don't you speak to Dad?

Richard: No. If we buy a house, I want to be able to handle it alone.

Ellen: Everybody needs help sometimes, Richard.

Marilyn: I understand Richard's feelings about it, Ellen.

Richard: In two or three months, I'll have an advance on my book and be able to put more money down.

Marilyn: What about the house in Mount Kisco? Somebody else'll buy it by then.

Richard: Then there'll be other houses, Marilyn.

Ellen: Richard has a point. You're just beginning to look.

Marilyn: We're in no great rush. It's true.

Richard: This has been a great learning experience for us, Marilyn. Talking to the real-estate agent. Looking at the houses. Talking to the loan officer at the bank.

Marilyn: It has been a learning experience. That's true.

Ellen: I think you're doing the right thing. Taking your time. Looking around. Especially with a purchase of this kind. You're talking about a lot of money.

Marilyn: We'll call Mrs. Martinelli and tell her to keep looking for us.

Richard: And I'll call Mr. Riley at the bank and tell him we'll see him in a couple of months.

Ellen: And if you ever need Dad or me to help you ...

Marilyn: We know.

Ellen: You know we'll be there for you.

Richard: It's a Stewart tradition. We're a family.

【语言点精讲】

1. It all sounded so easy until they mentioned needing collateral or a guarantor.

一起头好像什么都很容易，可后来他提到了需要担保物或担保人，就不是那么容易了。

until: 在此表示“到.....之后情况就完全不同了”。可以使用“It all sounded so easy until...”来说明某事比预期的要难。

2. I don't feel right about it.

我觉得那样不合适。我认为那样做不对。

3. We can get a loan from the bank if we can put up some collateral.

我们要想得到银行的贷款，得提供担保物。

put up collateral: 提供担保物、抵押物。这是个常用的固定搭配。

4. If we buy a house, I want to be able to handle it alone.

如果我们买一所房子，我想要自己来解决这件事。

handle: 对付，承担，解决。

5. In two or three months, I'll have an advance on my book and be able to put more money down.

再过两三个月，我这本书就能得到预付稿酬了，那时就能拿出更多的一笔头期款了。

an advance: 预付款。这里指在书出版前, 出版者预付给作者的钱。

put more money down: 这里指增加首付款的数目。

6. Somebody else'll buy it by then.

到那时候会被别人买去了。

介词 by 表示“到某时为止, 在某时以前”。

7. Richard has a point. You're just beginning to look.

Richard has a point.: Richard 说的有道理。用来表示对某人观点、说法等的赞同。

You're just beginning to look.: 你们只不过刚开始看房子而已。意思为, 不用慌, 不必着急去买。

8. We're in no great rush.

in no great rush: 不很急(买房子)。

9. You know we'll be there for you.

We'll be there for you.: 我们会在你的身边。这里指“如果你们需要帮助, 我们会伸出援助之手。”

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 12 课: 顶尖高手

ACT 1-1 “见到你我真高兴!”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 在家中起居室里等 Susan 来吃晚饭。他们见面后, Grandpa 和 Susan 讲到了打自己退休以后, 每天都有很多时间不知道该如何打发。

Grandpa: Is that you, Susan?

Susan: It's me, Grandpa.

Grandpa: Am I glad to see you!

Susan: And am I glad to see you! I am also glad to be here.

Grandpa: How are things?

Susan: I have been talking to a group of sales men since ten this morning, and I'm real **exhausted**.

Grandpa: Well, you look good. What's Harry doing tonight?

Susan: He and Michelle are visiting **relatives** in New Jersey today.

Grandpa: The rest of our family went to the movies. So it's just you and me, Susan.

Susan: It's nice to be alone with you, Grandpa. We don't get to see enough of each other.

Grandpa: Oh, I feel the same way, Susan. I miss seeing you. But to tell the truth, next time I'd like to go into the city and meet you there, instead of you coming here.

Susan: You don't need to do that, Grandpa.

Grandpa: Yeah, I do. I need to get out more. Well, I mean there's a lot to do around the house, and I love being here with the family, you know, but I'm **restless**. Since I **retired**, I've got **extra** time on my hands.

Susan: I understand, Grandpa.

Grandpa: I think you do. **Frankly**, I'd like to use my brain a little more.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's me, Grandpa.

It's me. 是我。这是非正式用法。正式用法应该是 It's I。但是大多数美国人用非正式用法。另外这句话主语用的 It。讲话时如果看不见对方, 彼此称呼时常用 that, it, this 等词, 如上一句话: Is that you, Susan?

2. Am I glad to see you!

见到你我真高兴! 这种句子形式上是问句, 实际上是感叹句, 加强感情和语气。

3. I have been talking to a group of sales men since ten this morning, and I'm real exhausted.

我从今天上午十点钟一直在同一批推销员谈话，真是筋疲力尽了。

I have been talking to...我一直在和（他们）谈.....。这是现在完成进行时的表达法，表示从过去某一时间一直持续到现在的动作或状态。

real: 确实。这是一个非正式用法，正式用法应该是 really 或 very。

4. It's nice to be alone with you, Grandpa.

能跟你单独在一起很好，爷爷。

to be alone with you: 单独和你在一起。

6. We don't get to see enough of each other.

我们见面的时候不多啊。

get to: 有机会或时间做某事。表示通过一个过程逐渐做到某事，或花费一定的力气做到某事。

7. Oh, I feel the same way, Susan. I miss seeing you.

我也这样感觉，苏珊。我见不到你时很想念你的。

I feel the same way: 我也有同感。我有同样的感觉。

miss doing sth.: 在这里指“怀念作某事，怀念做过的事”。

8. But to tell the truth, next time I'd like to go into the city and meet you there, instead of you coming here.

可是跟你说真心话，下次我愿意到市内去，在那儿见你，而不是让你上这儿来。

to tell the truth: 说实话，老实说。类似含义的表达还有 frankly, to be frank with you, as a matter of fact, frankly speaking 等。

instead of...: 而不是..., 不是...而是。

9. Since I retired, I've got extra time on my hands.

打从我退休以来，我手头有许多多余的时间无法打发掉。

time on my hands: 可以自由支配的时间，无法打发的时间。on one's hands 常含有“必须自己承担或解决的负担”的意义。

ACT 1-2 “我们会找到一个解决办法的。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 看 Grandpa 并不喜欢这种清闲的退休生活，主动提出要帮他找点事情做。Grandpa 没有在意，让她帮助摆餐桌。没想到 Susan 却是当真的。

Susan: Grandpa, you have so much energy and so many years of experience. There are probably a lot of places for you to work. Particularly in the construction field.

Grandpa: But at my age, I'm not looking for a full-time job. I'm retired. But I'm bored.

Susan: Well, there must be something. Maybe I can help.

Grandpa: Let's go into the kitchen, and maybe you can help me set the table.

Susan: Sounds good to me. What are we having?

Grandpa: I prepared lamb chops, mashed potatoes, and a tossed green salad to begin with.

Susan: Grandpa, you are a terrific guy!

[A little later, Grandpa and Susan are eating dinner in the kitchen.]

Susan: You're still thinking about something to do, aren't you? A job of some kind.

Grandpa: That's right. I've been thinking about it for weeks now. There must be some way to put my mind to good use.

Susan: We'll find a solution. A positive solution to your finding a way to use that wonderful mind of yours.

【语言点精讲】

1. But at my age, I'm not looking for a full-time job. I'm retired. But I'm bored.

可是我这把年纪了，我不想找一个全职的工作。我是退休了，可是我腻烦得要命。

a full-time job: 全职工作, 全天工作。

retired: 退职的, 退休的。这种形容词由动词加-ed 构成, 类似的词还有 bored (厌烦的)、interested (感兴趣的) 等。

2. Sounds good to me.

这(主意)听着不错。sound: 意思是“听来像, 令人觉得”。

这个句子省略了主语 it。省略主语在口语里比较常见, 例如: “Want something to drink?” 的完整形成为 “Do you want something to drink?”。

3. I prepared lamb chops, mashed potatoes, and a tossed green salad to begin with.

我做了羊肉块, 土豆泥, 还有拌蔬菜色拉当头道菜。

lamb chops: 羊肉块。chop 这里指(一块)排骨, 肋条肉。

mashed potatoes: 土豆泥。

tossed green salad: 蔬菜色拉。

4. A job of some kind.

找个什么工作之类的。

some 在这里表示“某一种、未知的”, 后面带单数可数名词。

5. I've been thinking about it for weeks now.

我想了有几个星期了。

have been thinking about: 使用了动词的现在完成进行式, 表示“想”这个行为在过去发生并持续到现在。

6. There must be some way to put my mind to good use.

总该有个办法让我施展我的才能。

put my mind to good use: 施展我的才能。

7. We'll find a solution. A positive solution to your finding a way to use that wonderful mind of yours.

我们会找到一个解决办法的。为让你能使用你那了不起的头脑寻找一个积极的解决办法。

find a solution: 找到一个解决办法。与后面的 find a way 同义。

to use that wonderful mind of yours: 使用你那了不起的头脑。最后面的 of yours 起强调作用, 强调“你的”, 这样说更有感情色彩。

ACT 2-1 “那么说我已经解决了你的问题了。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 想请自己的老板 John Marchetta 帮忙, 为 Grandpa 找点事做。她叫来了自己的助手 Sam“商量”这个想法是否可行。

Susan: Sam, would you come in, please?

Sam: You sound like something's bothering you, Susan. The sketches for the cover of the new doll book?

Susan: That's not it. Please sit down.

Sam: Sure.

Susan: I need your advice on a personal matter, but it's not about me.

Sam: You need my advice on a personal matter, and it's not about you. OK.

Susan: It's about my grandfather.

Sam: What's the problem?

Susan: It won't sound like a big deal, but it is. I had dinner with him Saturday, and he's very unhappy about not working.

Sam: I thought he was retired and pleased to be living with the family.

Susan: He is, but there's so much energy and talent in the man, and he doesn't get to use it.

Sam: But what can I do? What kind of advice are you looking for?

Susan: Simply this. John Marchetta runs this company.

Sam: He founded this company.

Susan: Right. John Marchetta gave me my start here six years ago, when I first graduated from college. He gave me the chance to use my talents and made me feel more confident.

Sam: Right. Maybe he can do the same thing for your grandfather.

Susan: Or at least give him some advice.

Sam: Right. Then I've solved your problem.

Susan: I can always depend on you, Sam.

Sam: I'm glad to help. Shall I call Mr. Marchetta for you?

Susan: No, no. I'll do that. Thanks.

【语言点精讲】

1. You sound like something's bothering you.

听起来好像有什么事使你心烦。这是一种关心别人，询问别人怎么了、是不是有麻烦了的说法。bother: 使烦恼，打扰。

2. I need your advice on a personal matter, but it's not about me.

我有一件私事需要听你的意见，可并不是关于我自己的。Susan 的话有些表面上的矛盾，这显然让 Sam 有点摸不着头脑，所以他说“You need my advice on a personal matter, and it's not about you.”这里 Sam 重复了 Susan 的话。重复别人的话是确认对方意图的一种方式。

a personal matter: 个人的事情，私事。

3. It won't sound like a big deal, but it is.

听起来不像是一件重要的事情，可事实上是的。

sound like: 听起来好像...

a big deal: 指的是 something very important (很重要的事情)。

4. I had dinner with him Saturday, and he's very unhappy about not working.

我星期六和他一起吃的晚饭，他因为没有工作很不高兴。

I had dinner with him Saturday: 正式的说法应该在 Saturday 前面加上一个 on。但是在美国英语中，这个 on 常被省略。

be unhappy about: 因为.....而不高兴。

5. Simply this.

简单说就是这样的。

6. He gave me the chance to use my talents and made me feel more confident.

他给了我使用我的才能的机会，使我更有信心。

give sb. the chance to do sth.: 给某人机会做某事。

made me feel more confident: 使我更有信心。make sb. do sth. 是 make 加不带 to 的不定式作宾补，其他类似的动词还有 feel, let, see, watch, have 等。

7. Then I've solved your problem.

那么说我已经解决了你的问题了。

solve the problem: 解决问题。这是个常用的搭配。

8. I can always depend on you.

我总是可以信赖你的。可以用这句话来感谢对方对自己的协助，这里的“对方”应该是和自己比较熟悉的人。

depend on: 依靠；信赖。也可写作“depend upon”。

9. Shall I call Mr. Marchetta for you?

要不要我给 Mr. Marchetta 打电话？

表示主动为某人做某事时，如果主语是 I 或 we 时，一般用 shall，例如：“Shall I/we wait for you?”。主语是 you 时则用 would，

例如：“Would you like me to help you?”。

ACT 2-2 “他怎么了？”

【故事梗概】

Susan 在自己的老板 John Marchetta 的办公室里，鼓足勇气请老板给 Grandpa 一个工作的机会。另她有些出乎意料的是，John Marchetta 先生立即就答应让 Grandpa 明天来面试。

Marchetta: Now, how's the Stewart family?

Susan: Fine, thank you, Mr. Marchetta. Except for my grandfather.

Marchetta: What's wrong, Susan? What's wrong with him?

Susan: He needs to work. In fact, that is the reason why I'm here to see you. I know you're building a new factory, and I thought...maybe ...my grandfather is so experienced in the **construction trade**, he could be so **valuable**.

Marchetta: Tell him to come and see me at ten o'clock tomorrow morning. I have an idea that may solve the problem for him and help a lot of other people.

Susan: Really, Mr. Marchetta? Can I tell him that?

Marchetta: Sure can. Ten o'clock in the morning. Here.

Susan: Oh, thank you!

【语言点精讲】

1. How's the Stewart family?

Stewart 全家人还好吗? 这里动词用单数 is, 因为 family 是集体名词, 表示全家人作为一个整体。

2. Except for my grandfather.

这句话是“Everyone is fine except for my grandfather.”的省略。

except for: 除.....之外。指若不计被除掉的这一点, 其它方面都符合主句的断言。

3. What's wrong, Susan? What's wrong with him?

怎么了, Susan? 他怎么了?

向对方表示关怀, 询问对方遇到什么麻烦了、有什么困难, 可以有多种表达方式。如:

What's wrong?

What's the problem?

There is something on your mind.

Something's bothering you.

What's the matter?

Is anything/something wrong?

4. In fact, that is the reason why I'm here to see you.

事实上, 我就是为这事来见你的。

the reason why ... : ...的原因, ...的理由。也可以说 the reason that 或者 the reason for.

5. My grandfather is so experienced in the construction trade, he could be so valuable.

so experienced in the construction trade: 在建筑行业很有经验。trade 除“贸易, 交换”以外, 还有“行业, 手艺”的意思, 因此有 the construction trade 的说法。

valuable: 有价值的, 有用的。注意以下几个词的意思: **invaluable** (无价的; 非常贵重的), **valueless** (无价值的; 不值钱的), **unvalued** (不受重视的), **valued** (重要的; 宝贵的)。

6. Sure can.

当然可以。是一种非正式用法。

ACT 3 -1 “这是很了不起的经历!”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 在 John Marchetta 先生的办公室里接受面试。Marchetta 先生浏览了 Grandpa 的简历, 给了他很高的评价。

Grandpa: Hi. I'm Malcolm Stewart.

Marchetta: John Marchetta. Sit down, sit down.

Grandpa: Susan has told me a great deal about you. She says you're quite a man.

Marchetta: She says a lot of wonderful things about you too, Mr. Stewart.

Grandpa: That's always nice to hear, Mr. Marchetta.

Marchetta: Call me John. May I call you Malcolm? Let's talk business.

Grandpa: That's music to my ears.

Marchetta: I understand you used to be in the **construction** business.

Grandpa: Yup. Forty-three years. Here's a brief **description** of forty-three years of on-the-job training.

Marchetta: That is some history! You're a valuable **asset**, Malcolm. Very **valuable**.

Grandpa: Thank you. Yup. Forty-three years. Half that time in my own construction company. Big jobs -- factories, shopping malls. That kind of thing.

Marchetta: Then you retired.

Grandpa: Yes. After my wife died, and I felt I should spend more time with my children and grandchildren. I lived in Florida, and they lived in New York.

Marchetta: I understand. My daughter, Cami lives in New York. I like being near her.

【语言点精讲】

1. Susan has told me a great deal about you. She says you're quite a man.

Susan 跟我说了不少有关你的事，她说你是个很了不起的人。

a great deal: 很多。也可以说 a great deal of sth. , 但后面的名词只能是不可数的。

You're quite a man. 你真是了个了不起的人。

2. Call me John.

叫我 John 好了。在对方称自己为某先生或用其它尊称时，欲使对方直呼己名以示亲近，常这样说。也可以: "John to you. "

3. Let's talk business.

talk business: 谈工作，谈生意。这是个惯用语，talk 在这里用作及物动词。

类似的不带介词，以 talk 为及物动词的用法还有: talk politics/sport (谈论政治/体育)，talk shop (说行话，谈本行业或本职工作的事)，talk sense/nonsense, talk nonsense/**rubbish** (说胡话，胡说八道) 等。

4. That's music to my ears.

正合我意。正是我想听的。

5. I understand you used to be in the construction business.

我听说你过去是在建筑业工作的。

I understand: 在这里的意思是“我听说，我知道这样的信息”。

used to do: 过去曾做过某事。用来谈论过去的经历。

6. Here's a brief description of forty-three years of on-the-job training.

这儿有一份材料，简短地记录了我四十三年的工作经历。

a brief description: 简单的叙述。这里指简历。

on-the-job training: 指工作经历。美国人很重视实际工作经验，所以他们把工作经历称为“工作时的培训”。

7. That is some history! You're a valuable asset, Malcolm. Very valuable.

这是很了不起的经历！你是个很宝贵的人才，Malcolm，非常宝贵。

some: 了不起的，相当于“a wonderful...”。这是一种非正式用法。

asset: 资产，财富，人才。

8. I like being near her.

我喜欢离她近一点。

这里 like 后面接-ing 形式，表示“经常或总是或习惯性地”喜欢某事。

ACT 3 -2 “TOPS: 优秀老人协会”

【故事梗概】

Marchetta 先生和 Grandpa 讲了关于优秀老人协会 TOPS 的事情，Grandpa 很感兴趣，随即表示要入会。Marchetta 先生还要带 Grandpa 去建筑工地。Grandpa 的新工作马上就要开始了。

Grandpa: When I came here, I planned to take a few months off. Relax with the family and then look for some work. Put my experience on the line...but, **unfortunately**, there isn't any work for a retired person my age.

Marchetta: Sometimes there is, and sometimes there isn't. Well, I'm involved with an organization, and we're trying to **resolve** that problem.

Grandpa: What's that?

Marchetta: TOPS. T-O-P-S-means Talented Older People's Society.

Grandpa: I'd like to be a member. How much are the **dues**?

Marchetta: There are no dues. The **organization** serves major companies in this city. Why? Because our members are men and women like you. Experienced, talented, retired. But our members want to go out there and use their talents. They want to work.

Grandpa: That is **fantastic**, John!

Marchetta: I've got an idea for you, Malcolm. Just fill out this form for me. It'll only take a few minutes. Sit right here, and do it while I talk to my **secretary**. When I get back, we'll talk about my new factory. My company is a member of TOPS. So I try hard to find opportunities for people like you, Malcolm. And when I see an opportunity, I can act on it. Well, I can use your **brainpower** on the job right now. Have you got time this morning to go over to the construction site with me? I'd like to have you meet my **foreman** -- get some background on the job.

Grandpa: I've got plenty of time.

Marchetta: I'll be right back. We'll go over to the job site together.

【语言点精讲】

1. When I came here, I planned to take a few months off.

我来这里以后，计划先休息几个月。

plan to do sth.: 计划做某事，打算做某事。

to take a few months off: 休息几个月。

2. Put my experience on the line.

这句话的意思相当于“to test my experience by trying something.”（把我的经验考验一下。考验我的阅历。）

3. Well, I'm involved with an organization, and we're trying to resolve that problem.

说起来，我参加了一个组织，我们这个组织正在力求解决这个问题。

be involved with: 意思是“与.....有关系”，“与.....有牵连”。

resolve: 解决（问题）。

4. TOPS. T-O-P-S-means Talented Older People's Society.

TOPS: Talented Older People's Society 的缩写，即优秀老人协会。另外 Tops 这个词本身也有“最优秀”的意思，即“the best”，所以 TOPS 是个含义丰富的机构名称。

5. How much are the dues?

会费是多少？dues: 费用，会费。

6. Just fill out this form for me.

请把这张表格填好。

fill out: 意思是“填写（表格）”，这是美国用法。英国英语用 fill in。

7. Sit right here, and do it while I talk to my secretary.

请就坐在这儿，趁我和我的秘书谈话的时间你（填一下这张表）。

talk to sb.: 和某人谈话，对某人说...。talk to 是从主动的立场对某人谈，有时是去吐露心里发愁的事，有时是去责备、吩咐或抗议、要求等。

8. I've got plenty of time.

我时间多得是。

plenty of 后面既可带不可数名词，也可以带可数名词。它主要表示量大，还含有“足够”或“有余”的意思，等于 lots of。

9. I'll be right back.

我马上回来。

ACT 3 -3 “欢迎加入。”

【故事梗概】

在建筑工地，Grandpa 见到了 Marchetta 先生的工头 Danny。针对 Danny 遇到的问题，Grandpa 给了他一个很好的建议，这赢得了 Danny 对他的信任和尊重。

Danny: Malcolm, you worked on the Spaceport project?

Grandpa: My company was the contractor. I built the theater there with my own two hands, practically.

Danny: I understand.

Marchetta: Well, I'm glad to see you two guys getting along so well because, Danny, Malcolm is on the TOPS team. He's going to be working with you for a while. His experience will be valuable to both of us.

Danny: Welcome aboard, Malcolm!

Marchetta: I'm going back to my office. Give me a call later, Malcolm. I'll tell you the time and date of the next TOPS meeting. I'd like you to meet the group.

Grandpa: I will, John. And again, thanks.

Marchetta: No ... thank you. And thank Susan.

Grandpa: He's quite a man.

Danny: A real inspiration for me.

Grandpa: OK, Danny. I know you didn't expect to have me around, but I think I can be of some help to you.

Danny: Let me tell you something, Malcolm. With your background and experience, I can learn something...and I do need some advice on a difficult problem. Let me show you this.

Grandpa: I don't want to give you a final opinion without studying these building plans more carefully. But a simple solution might be to move the air-conditioning units instead of redesigning the entire system. It might be simpler and less expensive.

Danny: You just earned your weight in gold, Malcolm. Welcome aboard!

【语言点精讲】

1. Malcolm, you worked on the Spaceport project?

worked on the Spaceport project: 参与了 Spaceport 建设工程。work on 是“从事.....”, “参与.....的工作”的意思。

2. My company was the contractor. I built the theater there with my own two hands, practically.

我的公司是承包商。我差不多是独力地修建了那里的剧院。

contractor: (工程)承包商, 立约人。

with my own two hands: 独立地。相当于“without help, by myself.”

practically: 差不多, 几乎。

3. Well, I'm glad to see you two guys getting along so well because, Danny, Malcolm is on the TOPS team.

getting along so well: 相处得好。

get along (with) 是表示过日子, 与人相处或应付事物是否成功的用语

4. Welcome aboard, Malcolm!

Welcome aboard. : 欢迎加入。在欢迎新成员时通常用这个表达法。aboard 原意为“在船(车、飞机)上”。如, 火车将要离站时, 车长照例要喊一声 All aboard! (各位请上车)。Welcome aboard 由此有了“欢迎参加到我们这一事业中来”的意思。

5. I will.

我会的。这是对上一句话“I'd like you to meet the group.”的回答。当问句中用 would, might, could 等词时, 回答时要用 will, may, can 等词表示确定之意。

6. A real inspiration for me.

他能鼓舞我努力干。inspiration: 给人启发或灵感的人或物。

7. I know you didn't expect to have me around, but I think I can be of some help to you.

我知道你本来没料到我会来到这里和你共事，可是我想我能对你有所帮助。

to have me around: 有我在你身边（共事）。

be of some help: 有所帮助。这里的介词 of 表示“具有”。

8. You just earned your weight in gold, Malcolm.

你已经帮了大忙了，Malcolm。

earned your weight in gold: 你帮了大忙。相当于“helped very much”。当某人完成一件很重要的工作时，可用这个惯用语表示致谢。

ACT 3 -4 “一言为定！”

【故事梗概】

在 Susan 的办公室里，Grandpa 和 Susan 讲了 Marchetta 先生带他去工地和 Danny 见面的事情。两人都为 Grandpa 找到了事情做而高兴。

Grandpa: It all happened so quickly! I can't believe it!

Susan: I'm glad Mr. Marchetta was so helpful.

Grandpa: He was more than helpful. He **actually** took me to meet his **foreman**.

Susan: I'm thrilled for you, Grandpa.

Grandpa: I don't know how to thank you, Susan. You're a wonderful granddaughter.

Susan: It's good to see you so happy.

Grandpa: I'll be at the construction site tomorrow. What are you doing tomorrow night?

Susan: I'm not doing anything. Why?

Grandpa: How about a date with your grandfather? I owe you a good steak dinner.

Susan: I'll accept. Tomorrow night. You and me. Dinner. What time?

Grandpa: I'll pick you up here at seven. Is that OK?

Susan: I can't wait! And you can tell me all about your first full day back on the job.

Grandpa: It's a deal!

【语言点精讲】

1. He was more than helpful.

他不仅仅是帮忙而已。

more than: 这里的意思是“不仅仅”。

2. I'm thrilled for you, Grandpa.

我真为你高兴极了，爷爷。

thrilled: 非常兴奋的，极为激动的。

3. What are you doing tomorrow night?

你明天晚上有什么安排？这里用现在进行时态表示将来要发生的事情。

4. I owe you a good steak dinner.

我欠你的情，应该请你吃一顿精美的牛排晚餐以示感谢。

owe: 这里指“欠...的人情”，后面常接双宾语。

5. I'll pick you up here at seven.

我七点钟到这儿来接你。

pick sb. up: 开车去接某人

6. And you can tell me all about your first full day back on the job.

你还可以把你头一天再次开始工作的情况都告诉我。

back on the job: 又开始工作。

7. It's a deal!

一言为定!

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 13 课：一个真正的斯图尔特家的后代

ACT 1-1 “他的眼睛和 Richard 的像极了。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 和 Susan 正在 Marilyn 的房间里，她们在为迎接 Richard 和 Marilyn 的新生婴儿 Max 回家而作准备。两人看着 Max 的照片，在评论他长得更像谁。

Ellen: There's nothing more joyous than the arrival of a new baby.

Susan: I am so excited, Mother! Just imagine -- Marilyn and Richard must be thrilled! Oh, a new baby!

Ellen: Max...Max... Max. Oh, it's a sweet-sounding name for a sweet little boy. My first grandchild.

Susan: And my first nephew. Isn't he just adorable? He looks a lot like you, Mom. He does.

Ellen: Do you think so? Well, I guess. He does look a lot like Richard, and I guess he looks a lot like me. Oh, he's got Richard's eyes, though.

Susan: I really want Harry and Michelle to see Max.

Ellen: When are they coming?

Susan: Tomorrow. Harry has an account to work on today. Yes, he does have Richard's eyes. Big blue eyes. The baby even looks at you like Richard does.

Ellen: Well, children usually resemble their parents.

Susan: It's true. Michelle is a lot like Harry in so many ways. And she's shy with new people, just like he is.

Ellen: You really like Michelle, don't you?

Susan: Yes, I'm very fond of her.

Ellen: And Harry, too?

Susan: Well...

【语言点精讲】

1. There's nothing more joyous than the arrival of a new baby.

再没有比新生儿的到来更叫人高兴的了。

there is nothing more...than sth.: 没有比某事更让人.....的了。这个结构虽然表面上看是比较级的形式，但是实际上表达的是最高级的含义。

2. Isn't he just adorable?

他不是简直可爱极了吗?

这里的 just 起强调作用，意思等于 simply。

adorable: 可爱的。

3. Well, I guess.

嗯，我想是的。等于 I guess so 或 I guess you are right。

4. He's got Richard's eyes, though.

他的眼睛和 Richard 的像极了。

表达某人与某人相像时，除了用 look like, resemble, alike 等词外，还可以说 sb. has got sb.'s features, 具体说明哪个部位相像。

though 这里是副词，放在句中或句尾，用逗号隔开，起补充说明的作用，意思是“然而，可是，不过”，表明前面加上去的话虽似乎与更前面的话相反，但仍是正确的。在这里是说明“他虽像我，然而眼睛却不像我，而像 Richard”。

5. When are they coming?

他们什么时候来？

come, go 等动词常用进行时态表示将来时，例如：The rain is coming. 雨要来了。

6. The baby even looks at you like Richard does.

这孩子连看人的时候的神气都像 Richard。

like Richard does: 像 Richard 那样（看）。这是非正式用法，相当于 as Richard does。like 也有“像……一样”的意思，但后面一般接名词或代词，而不接句子。

7. Michelle is a lot like Harry in so many ways.

Michelle 在很多方面都像 Harry。在这里 a lot 起状语作用，相当于 very much。

in so many ways: 在很多方面。

8. I'm very fond of her.

我很喜欢她。

be fond of: 喜爱，喜欢，喜好。感情上，be fond of 不如 love 强烈。

9. Well...

嗯……。说话时，如果一时回答不上来，或犹豫不决，可用 Well...拖延时间。

ACT 1-2 “又一代人来把 Stewart 家的姓传下去。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 走进了房间，他已经为 Max 挂起了欢迎的标语。他也为自己的第一个曾孙即将回家来而兴奋不已。

Ellen: Uh, it's four-thirty. Oh my! Marilyn and Richard will be home from the hospital any minute, and we must prepare this room.

Susan: Where will we put all the presents?

Ellen: Well, let's take everything to the living room. Marilyn and Richard and the baby need the space. It's crowded in here.

Grandpa: The welcome sign is up: "Welcome home, Max."

Ellen: Isn't it exciting, Grandpa?

Susan: Your first great-grandchild.

Grandpa: Yes. Yes, sir. A great-grandchild. A great-grandson. Another generation to carry on the Stewart name.

Susan: I love you, Grandpa. You make me feel so proud to be part of our family.

Grandpa: And one day, you'll have your own family, and I'll be proud to be part of it.

Ellen: Now you understand my feelings, Susan. I'm Grandpa's daughter-in-law, but I feel like a Stewart. He's always made me feel like his own daughter.

Grandpa: Well, that's because you're so much like us, wonderful!

【语言点精讲】

1. Oh my! Marilyn and Richard will be home from the hospital any minute, and we must prepare this room.

天哪！Marilyn 和 Richard 随时都可能从医院回来了，咱们得把这间屋子准备好。

Oh my!: 啊，天哪！表示惊讶的感叹句。Oh my! 源于 Oh my God! 因宗教上禁忌随意说上帝之名，故简略一字。

any minute: 随时，在这里等于 at any minute。

2. It's crowded in here.

这里太拥挤了。

在 here 前面加了 in，是强调“在这里”。

3. The Welcome sign is up.

欢迎的标语已经挂起来了。

4. Yes. Yes, sir.

是的，一点不错。这里 Grandpa 用的 sir 只是男人在回答的时候的一种说法，并不是用 sir 在指代 Susan。

5. Another generation to carry on the Stewart name.

又一代人来把 Stewart 家的姓传下去。

generation: 这里指“一代人”。

to carry on the Stewart name: 继承 Stewart 家的姓；传宗接代。

6. You make me feel so proud to be part of our family.

你使我因为自己是这家里的人而感到自豪。

feel so proud to be: 为.....而感到自豪。也可以说 feel/ be proud of doing sth.

ACT 1-3 “没有中间名字。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 找到了礼物的包装纸。她走进了起居室。Ellen 和 Grandpa 在包礼物的时候，Susan 开始在她给 Marilyn 和 Richard 买的婴儿纪念册上填写一些信息。

Susan: Mom, got it. This will make a nice gift for Marilyn and Richard. They can keep a record of all of the important dates and information about Max's life here. Let's see. Name: Max Stewart. Does he have a middle name?

Ellen: No, just Max. I like that. No middle name. No middle initial.

Grandpa: Like me. I'm Malcolm Stewart. Just Malcolm Stewart.

Susan: And Max has your initials, Grandpa: M.S.

Ellen: Uh, it must mean something.

Susan: Weight: eight pounds six ounces.

Grandpa: Eight-six. Big boy! All the Stewart men were big.

Ellen: Well, Robbie was eight pounds two ounces, and Richard was eight pounds three.

Susan: And me?

Ellen: Eight pounds six. You were big, just like Max.

Susan: Eight pounds six, just like me. That's nice. Length. Length?

Ellen: Richard says Max is twenty-one inches long.

Susan: Twenty-one inches. Is that tall or average or what?

Grandpa: Tall.

【语言点精讲】

1. Mom, got it.

got it: 找到了。got it 是 I've got it 的省略，这是口语中省略主语的用法。

2. This will make a nice gift for Marilyn and Richard.

This will make a nice gift: 这是一件好礼物。句中的 make 不是“制作”的意思，而是“成为、构成”的意思，属于非正式用法。

3. They can keep a record of all of the important dates and information about Max's life here.

他们可以在这里记下 Max 生活中一切重要的日期和事情。

keep a record of: 为.....作记录。

4. No middle name. No middle initial.

没有中间名字，也没有中间名字的第一个字母。

middle name: 中间名字。美国人一般有 first name, middle name 和 last name。有的没有 middle name。first name 也称 given name, 是名。last name 也称 family name 或 surname, 是姓氏。middle name 有时是母亲的姓氏，有时是为了纪念某位亲人而取的。

initial: 名字的第一个字母。后面 Susan 说的“And Max has your initials, Grandpa: M.S.”中的 initials 是指姓和名的第一个字母的组合, 如 Malcolm Stewart 的 initials 就是 M.S.

5. Weight: eight pounds six ounces. --Eight-six. Big boy!

weight: 重量。

eight pounds and six ounces: 8 磅 6 盎司, 约 4 公斤。美国人通常用英制计量单位。虽然美国政府曾经积极推广采用公制单位, 但人们还是习惯用英制单位。科技和医药用公制单位。

Eight-six.: 等同于 Eight pounds six ounces (8 磅 6 盎司)。讲重量时, 常常省略单位名称。

6. Length.

length: 身高, 身长。length 是形容词 long 的名词形式。在谈婴儿时, 身长用 length, 但在谈及年龄稍大的人或成年人时, 身高需用 height。

7. Richard says Max is twenty-one inches long.

twenty-one inches long: 21 英寸 (约 53 厘米) 长。

表示长度或宽度时, 用 be+ 数字+ 长度单位+形容词 long 或 wide。例如:The table is five inches long and four inches wide。

ACT 1-4 “一个真正的 Stewart 家的后代。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 听到了汽车的声音。Max 终于被接回家了。他的到来使全家人都非常高兴。

Grandpa: All the Stewart men are tall.

Ellen: Well, Grandpa, you're about five-nine or five-ten. I wouldn't call that tall.

Grandpa: I take after my mother's family. They were...they were...they were average.

Susan: Mother, Marilyn. Father, Richard. And lots of pages for Richard's photos of Max.

Grandpa: Speaking of mother and of father-and speaking of Max-I hear the car. They're here!

Ellen: Oh! Oh, quickly! Go, go, go!

[Ellen, Susan, and Grandpa rush to open the door. Marilyn, Richard, Philip, and Robbie enter the house. Marilyn is carrying Max.]

Ellen: Let's see. Oh, welcome home. Oh, let her in. Wait with your pictures for a second. Come on, darlings.

Sweetheart...Sit down right here.

Susan: Oh, he's so cute! Oh, Marilyn!

Robbie: Max looks just like Grandpa.

Grandpa: A real Stewart.

Marilyn: I'm so happy to be home with my family - and with Max.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, Grandpa, you're about five-nine or five-ten. I wouldn't call that tall.

哦, 爷爷, 你大约身高 5 英尺 9 英寸或是 5 英尺 10 英寸。我不认为这叫个子高。

Grandpa 因为有了接班人乐得几乎忘形。他夸口说 All the Stewart men are tall. (斯图尔特家男人个个都高)时, Ellen 委婉的纠正了他。

five-nine: 指的是 five feet nine inches, 5 英尺 9 英寸。1 英尺为 12 英寸, 等于 30.48 厘米。

I wouldn't call that tall.: 我不认为这个身高很高。I wouldn't call that 是一种委婉的纠正别人的话的说法。

2. I take after my mother's family. They were...they were...they were average.

我像我母家的人, 他们.....他们.....他们身材都是中等。

take after: 指像某个直系亲属, 否则不能用这个短语, 因为它的意思是“因遗传或血缘的关系而像”。例如, He takes after his grandfather. 他像他爷爷。

average: 平均, 一般。这里 average 指“中等身材”。

3. Speaking of mother and of father - and speaking of Max - I hear the car.

说起孩子的父亲和母亲——说起 Max——我听见汽车来了

speak of: 谈到, 说起。在这里等于 speak about。

4. Let her in.

让她进来。相当于“Let her enter or come in.” 反义词是“Let her out.”

5. Wait with your pictures for a second.

先别忙着拍你的照片。

6. A real Stewart.

一个真正的 Stewart 家的后代。Stewart 一家人常用这个短语, 指某一成员确实具备 Stewart 家族的优良品质。

ACT 2-1 “这是我们的家训。”

【故事梗概】

晚上, Susan 要回自己的住所去了。Philip 要开车送她去地铁站。同时, 在楼上, Marilyn 和 Richard 在谈论大家送给 Max 的礼物。

Susan: It's almost ten o'clock. I've got to go. Tomorrow is Monday, and work begins at eight in the morning for me. Oh, I'm so happy that Max is home. He's the sweetest little thing.

Ellen: I'll drive you to the station, dear. You can catch the ten-twenty train to Grand Central Station.

Philip: I'll drive Susan, dear.

Ellen: Thank you, Philip. Then Grandpa, Robbie, and I can finish wrapping all these gifts.

[Upstairs in Marilyn and Richard's room. Marilyn and Richard are watching Max sleep.]

Richard: It's so good to have you home again...and to see Max asleep in his bassinet at home with us.

Marilyn: To be with our family and all that Stewart TLC.

Richard: TLC -- tender loving care. That's our motto.

Marilyn: Did you see the washcloth and the towels with the teddy bears on them? Alexandra and the Molinas sent them for Max.

Richard: It was so kind of them. Now Max has come into every one's life.

Marilyn: The house is so alive with him here. The welcome sign over the door. The boxes of presents. The M-A-X over his bassinet. Robbie put that there. Susan's teddy bear. So cuddly. The beautiful crib from Mom and Dad.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's almost ten o'clock. I've got to go.

差不多 10 点钟了, 我得走了。

在英美国, 当客人或来访者要走时, 一般提一下当时的时间, 再说该走了。这时主人不宜强行挽留, 客人也不要说“打扰了, 耽误你的时间了”之类的话。致谢、道别即可。

It's almost ten o'clock.: 快十点了。almost 常用于表示时间迟、长度或重量大等意思, 有“虽不至、亦不远矣”的含义, 与 nearly 同义。如果不强调这一点时, 常用 about, a little less than, a few minutes to 等中性的表达方法。句中的 It 表示时间。

2. Tomorrow is Monday, and work begins at eight in the morning for me.

work begins at eight in the morning for me: 早 8 点我就得开始工作。这里用一般现在时表示将来计划好的、肯定要发生的事情。

3. You can catch the ten-twenty train to Grand Central Station.

你可以赶上 10 点 20 分开往大中央车站的那趟列车。

catch: 在这里的意思是赶上(车、船等)。

ten-twenty train: 10 点 20 分的那趟车。

Grand Central Station: 大中央车站(在纽约曼哈顿)。

4. Then Grandpa, Robbie, and I can finish wrapping all these gifts.

finish wrapping all these gifts: 把这些礼物包装完。finish 这个动词后只能接名词或动名词(即-ing 形式), 不能接不定式。

5. TLC -- tender loving care. That's our motto

TLC——温柔，慈爱，关心。这是我们的家训。

motto: 格言，座右铭。

6. Did you see the washcloth and the towels with the teddy bears on them?

你看见了上面印着泰迪熊的洗脸手巾和浴巾了吗？

washcloth: 洗脸手巾，面巾。

towels: 浴巾，毛巾。

teddy bears: 泰迪熊。Teddy bear 是一种直立的小玩具熊。它的命名，来自美国老罗斯福总统 Theodore Roosevelt（昵称为 Ted 或 Teddy）。罗斯福总统酷爱猎熊。有一天和一群朋友到林中打猎，突然看到一只小熊，直挺挺的站在他面前，模样可爱极了。罗斯福一时起了恻隐之心，缓缓放下手中猎枪，放走这只小熊，这事经过报纸报导，立刻传遍全国，美国的爱护动物者趁机大事褒扬罗斯福总统的一念之善。这时一位面包店的老板一时兴起，便根据那只可爱小熊的造型，制成一批玩具，命名为 Teddy bear，不料深受小朋友喜爱，立刻销售一空，终于使那位面包店老板改行，大量制造 Teddy bear 出售，造成全国风行，至今不衰。

7. It was so kind of them.

他们真好心。

It+be+形容词+sb. (+to do sth.) 的句型，常用于表示对某人（做某事）所表现的性格或品质的描述：其中常用的形容词有 good, nice, kind, brave, careless, clever, foolish, generous, right, wrong, rude, unkind, selfish, cruel, thoughtful, annoying 等。句中的 It 是形式主语，代表上文中所讲的某件事或后面动词不定式所表达的那件事。

ACT 2-2 “它总是给他带来好运气。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 看到了 Grandpa 挂在墙上的棒球手套。他给 Marilyn 讲了 Grandpa 坚信这只手套能给 Steward 家的孩子带来好运的“迷信”。这时，Max 开始哭了。

Richard: Oh, and Grandpa's baseball glove. You know, it hung over my crib, too. And it hung over Robbie's crib.

Marilyn: Part of Grandpa's magic?

Richard: Oh, that's not all. It hung over Susan's crib.

Marilyn: The same baseball glove?

Richard: That's right. Grandpa hangs it there for good luck. He says it always brought him good luck on the baseball team. He believes it'll bring good luck to all the Stewart babies.

Marilyn: And then he takes it back when Max is ready to use it?

Richard: Yes, and replaces in with a new glove so the old one will be ready for a new member of the Stewart family.

Marilyn: Grandpa really loves his family, doesn't he? So do I.

Richard: And so do I.

[The baby begins to cry.]

Richard: And so does Max.

Marilyn: After he eats!

【语言点精讲】

1. Oh, and Grandpa's baseball glove. You know, it hung over my crib, too.

噢，还有爷爷的棒球手套。你知道，它也在我的婴儿床上方挂过。

baseball glove: 棒球手套。

hang over: 挂在……上。

2. He says it always brought him good luck on the baseball team. He believes it'll bring good luck to all the Stewart babies.

他说在棒球队打球时，它总是给他带来好运气。他相信这手套也能把好运气带给所有的 Stewart 家的婴儿。

bring sb. good luck/bring good luck to sb.: 给某人带来好运气。把好运气带给某人。

3. And then he takes it back when Max is ready to use it?

然后等到 Max 大了能用它了，爷爷就把手套收回去吗？

takes it back: 把它收回去。take back 是“收回，拿回，取消”的意思。

4. Yes, and replaces in with a new glove so the old one will be ready for a new member of the Stewart family.

是的，他就用一只新手套给换回去，好让旧的那只能准备好在 Stewart 家再添丁时使用。

replace in with sth.: 用某物替换。

be ready for...: 为.....做准备，为.....做好准备。

5. So do I.

我也如此。

这里的 So 用来表示与前面说的内容相同的事情或状态，以避免重复使用动词。一般要加上助动词或情态动词。

ACT 3-1 “你想得真周到。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 和 Michelle 来 Stewart 家看望 Max。Marilyn 很喜欢 Michelle 为 Max 选的婴儿服。

Marilyn: Thanks, Michelle.

Michelle: I hope you like it.

Marilyn: Isn't this baby outfit adorable? With his name on it--"Max. "Thanks so much, Harry and Michelle.

Richard: We really appreciate it.

Harry: I'm glad you like it. Michelle picked it out.

Michelle: Yes. I told Daddy to pick blue ones. Blue is for boys, and pink is for girls.

Grandpa: And Max is some boy.

Richard: He's a real Stewart.

Grandpa: Right!

Ellen: That was so thoughtful of you, Michelle. Especially to pick it out in blue.

Susan: Would you like to see baby Max, Michelle?

Harry: Could she? Could we?

Michelle: Could I?

Marilyn: Take them upstairs, Susan. Harry and Michelle can watch Max sleeping.

Susan: Let's go.

Harry: Come on, Michelle. Before Max wakes up.

Marilyn: Will you please take this upstairs, Susan?

Susan: Uh-huh.

Marilyn: Thank you.

【语言点精讲】

1. I hope you like it.

希望你喜欢。送别人礼物时，英文一般说“I hope you like it.” 如果对方表示喜欢，我们可以说“I'm glad you like it.”

2. Isn't this baby outfit adorable? With his name on it--"Max. "Thanks so much.

这套婴儿装可真叫人喜欢，不是吗？上面还有他的名字 Max。非常感谢你们。

接受别人的礼物时，一般要表示喜欢并致谢。

baby outfit: 婴儿装。

3. We really appreciate it.

我们真的很感谢。致谢的常用表达。

4. Blue is for boys, and pink is for girls.

在美国，给新生的婴儿送礼物时，特别是礼物为婴儿用品时，如果知道婴儿是男孩，习惯上会选蓝色的物品，婴儿是女孩则选粉色。不知道婴儿的性别是通常会选黄色。

5. And Max is some boy.

Max 可是个不寻常的男孩子。some 指了不起的，出色的。从这句很自豪的话可以看出 Grandpa 对这个曾孙的喜爱。

6. That was so thoughtful of you.

你想得真周到。

It /That + be+形容词+ of + sb.: 表示某人具有何种品质，经常用在这个结构中的形容词有 kind, thoughtful, helpful, clever 等。

7. Would you like to see baby Max?

你想看看小 Max 吗？

Would you like to...? : 你想.....吗？表示一种建议或邀请，与“Do you like to...?”不同，后者询问对方的爱好。

8. Harry and Michelle can watch Max sleeping.

watch Max sleeping: 看 Max 睡觉。watch 除了接不带 to 的动词不定式之外，也可接现在分词表示观看的动作正在进行。

ACT 3-2 “在这儿谁能插进一句嘴？”

【故事梗概】

趁 Susan, Harry 和 Michelle 上楼去看 Max 的空，Stewart 一家人评论了一下 Susan 和 Harry 的关系。

[Susan, Harry, and Michelle go upstairs.]

Philip: Michelle is very grown up for a ten-year old, huh?

Ellen: She's smart and sensitive for her age.

Grandpa: Growing up without a mother is difficult. You mature quickly.

Ellen: Susan's like a mother to Michelle. They have a good relationship. Do you think Susan and Harry will get married?

Robbie: Yeah. You can count on it.

Philip: I think so. Yes. They get along so well.

Grandpa: I like him. He's good for Susan.

Ellen: He's a little quiet.

Richard: It's hard to do anything but listen in this family.

Ellen: How can anybody get a word in around here?

Marilyn: You're right, Ellen.

Philip: Oh, really?

Richard: It's the way it should be. The Stewarts are the Stewarts!

Grandpa: They always were, and they always will be.

Richard: Right!

Grandpa: They've always got an opinion. Always got something to say.

Marilyn: And now there's Max Stewart, and if he talks as loudly as he cries, we're all in for trouble.

Robbie: He's quiet now.

Marilyn: Mmm-hmm. That's because he's sleeping.

【语言点精讲】

1. Michelle is very grown up for a ten-year old, huh?

米歇尔作为一个十岁的小姑娘显得很成熟，是吧？

grown up 本意是“长大，长成人”，这里指 Michelle 虽然小但很成熟。

for: 在这里是表示“相对于.....来说，如此.....是不一般的”。下面 Philip 说的“She's smart and sensitive for her age.”中的 for 也是这个用法。除谈到年纪以外，还可以有别的所指，例如 You are heavy for your height. (相对于你的身高来说你有点重。)It's unusually

warm for November. (对于 11 月来说这么热很不寻常。)

a ten-year-old: 这里指的是“一个 10 岁的孩子”。

2. You can count on it.

你尽管相信好了。相当于 You can be sure about that.

count on: 指望, 依赖, 相信。

3. They get along so well.

他们相处得很好。同义的表达有: They have a good relationship.

get along so well: 相处得很好。也可在这个短语后加 with sb. , 表示“与.....相处得好”。

4. It's hard to do anything but listen in this family.

在我们家里, 外人除了听, 还能怎么样。

anything but: 根本不; 绝对不; 除...以外任何事; 一点也不。but 后面带没有 to 的不定式

5. How can anybody get a word in around here?

在这儿谁能插进一句嘴?

get a word in: 插话, 插嘴。

6. It's the way it should be.

事情本该如此。

7. They always were, and they always will be.

他们过去一直是这样, 他们将来也一直是这样。

8. And now there's Max Stewart, and if he talks as loudly as he cries, we're all in for trouble.

现在又添了 Max Stewart. 要是他说话的声音像他哭声一样大, 我们大家伙就要有麻烦了。

as loudly as: 像.....一样响。as...as 结构, 用于表示同级之间的比较。

be in for trouble: 会有麻烦, 会吃不消。be in for 常表示无可避免地将要遭到某种不愉快或意外的事。如口语中常用的“be in for it”指的是要遭到麻烦或惩罚, 这里的 it 泛指某种倒霉的事。

ACT 3-3 “没有必要小声说话。”

【故事梗概】

在 Marilyn 和 Richard 的房间里。Susan, Harry 和 Michelle 在看 Max 睡觉的样子。这时 Max 突然哭起来了, 这让 Susan 不知该如何才好。

Harry: He's really cute.

Susan: It's not necessary to **whisper**, Harry. A baby gets used to voices.

Harry: I remember now. We always whispered when Michelle was born.

Michelle: And I didn't sleep well. Daddy told me. I never slept. And when I did, I woke up when I heard someone speak.

Susan: I bet you were cute.

Harry: She sure was.

Michelle: Not as cute as Max. He's like a little doll.

Michelle: Oh, good. Now I can help **diaper** him.

Susan: Let's get Marilyn. What do you do when he cries like that?

Harry: You pick him up.

Susan: He's so little...so new. Let's call Marilyn.

Marilyn: Time for a feeding and time for a diapering. You're a real Stewart.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's not necessary to whisper, Harry. A baby gets used to voices.

没有必要小声说话, Harry。婴儿会习惯于听见人声的。

be necessary to do sth.: 有必要做某事。

gets used to: 习惯于。get used to 后接名词或动名词。get 表示逐渐变化而达到某一状况的过程, 也可以用 be 来替换。

2. And when I did, I woke up when I heard someone speak.

即使睡着的话, 一听见人说话我就醒来了。

did: 睡了。此处的 did 代替动词 slept。助动词经常可以代替动词, 使话语更简练。当助动词代替动词时要重读。

3. She sure was.

她确实是(很逗人喜欢)。这是非正式用法, 正式用法是: She certainly was.

4. Not as cute as Max.

不如 Max 这么逗人喜欢。

not as...as...: 不如……。这个结构中的第一个 as 可以用 so 替换。

5. Time for a feeding and time for a diapering.

该喂奶了, 也该换尿布了。

time for sth.: 是该做某事的时候了。time for 是 It's time for 的省略。英文里表达“该做什么事”的时候, 除 It's time to do sth. 以外, 也可以说 It's time for doing sth. 或 It's time for sth.

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 14 课: 做游戏

ACT 1-1 “住在郊区有很多好处。”

【故事梗概】

曼哈顿岛索霍区, Susan 的公寓住所里, Susan 和 Harry 正在为 Michelle 和她的朋友们准备午饭。Susan 喜欢住在大城市。Harry 也觉得住在大城市文化生活丰富, 对于孩子也蛮有好处。

Harry: You like living in New York, don't you?

Susan: Oh, I love it, it's so convenient. I can take the bus to work... or the subway... or a taxi. And there's so much to do. Lots of movie houses, and the theater.

Harry: I know what you mean. I'd like to live in the city, but living in New Jersey and the suburbs is better for Michelle. Trees, grass.

Susan: There's a lot of good things about suburban living. I grew up in Riverdale, remember? So I know. But, as a working woman, I think New York has all the conveniences-including the best tomatoes. [She gives a slice of tomato to Harry to taste.]

Harry: The truth is, I'd like to live in the city. Michelle's the right age. There are lots of things for her here.

Susan: You're right, Harry. Today is the perfect example. Michelle and her friends are at the aquarium in Brooklyn. They come back here for lunch, then go uptown to the Museum of Natural History. There's so much for young people to see and do. It's just incredible!

【语言点精讲】

1. I'd like to live in the city, but living in New Jersey and the suburbs is better for Michelle.

我也愿意住在市里, 但对 Michelle 来说住在新泽西的郊区要更好一些。

suburb: 郊区。它的英文解释是“A suburb is an area of a town or city which is not close to the town or city and where people who work in the town or city often live.”严格地说, 这样的“郊区”在我国还很少见。在美国, 一般说来, 中产阶级或更高收入的人常住郊区, 而都市闹市区居民常是低收入者和流浪汉, 不过也不能就此一概而论, 例如纽约市的曼哈顿区, 也有一小部分极其昂贵而高级的公寓, 是世界首富们的住所。

2. There's a lot of good things about suburban living.

住在郊区有很多好处。

There's a lot of good things.: 这有很多好处。这句话的正确说法是 There are a lot of good things. there be 句型中的 be 的单

复数取决于 be 后面的真正主语是单数还是复数。口语中将 there are 说成 there is 是常见的。

suburban living: 郊区生活。

3. But, as a working woman, I think New York has all the conveniences -- including the best tomatoes.

可是，作为一个职业女性，我认为纽约有一切的便利——包括最好的西红柿。

working woman: 职业女性。

convenience: 便利条件；便利设施。

4. Michelle's the right age.

Michelle 的年龄也合适了。此处指 Michelle 到了学知识长见识的年龄。

5. Michelle and her friends are at the aquarium in Brooklyn. They come back here for lunch, then go uptown to the Museum of Natural History.

Michelle 和她的朋友们去参观布鲁克林的水族馆。她们将回到这儿来吃午饭，然后到市的北部参观自然历史博物馆。

aquarium: 水族馆。

uptown: 指离开商业区或远离市中心的地方，反之为 downtown，在纽约则分指曼哈顿岛的北南两端。除此之外，在美国国内向南走为 down，反之为 up，和我们所说的“南下”，“北上”是一致的。

Museum of Natural History: 自然历史博物馆。这是纽约市的一个著名博物馆，该馆以它所收藏的恐龙骨骼和关于全世界不同文化人种的展览而闻名。

6. It's just incredible!

简直令人难以置信。

ACT 1-2 “看起来很吸引人。”

【故事梗概】

谈到了住在城里的好处，Susan 回忆起了自己小时候，爸妈挤出时间陪她和她的兄弟到市里玩儿的事。

Harry: Not just for young people. What about me? I've never been to the aquarium or the Museum of Natural History. Have you?

Susan: Oh yes, Harry. My mother and father often took us somewhere in the city on the weekends. Dad was a busy doctor, but he usually managed to squeeze a Sunday in with Richard, Robbie, and me. I used to love to go to the Metropolitan Museum of Art.

Harry: I've been there several times. Twice with Michelle.

Susan: You ought to think about spending more time with Michelle at all the great places in the city.

Harry: Well, perhaps, you'll help me select some of the great places. And perhaps, you'll join us?

Susan: Perhaps I will.

[Later. Susan and Harry have just set the table for lunch.]

Susan: Well, there we are. All set for lunch, Harry.

Harry: It looks inviting. I wish Michelle and her friends would get here. I'm starving, aren't you?

Susan: I can't wait to take a bite of the pumpernickel. It smells so delicious.

【语言点精讲】

1. Dad was a busy doctor, but he usually managed to squeeze a Sunday in with Richard, Robbie, and me.

爸爸当医生很忙，但他时常能腾出一个星期日和 Richard、Robbie 还有我在一起。

manage to do sth.: 设法、努力（完成某事）。一般指成功地完成某事，特别是指有一定难度的事。不用否定式。表示不需要别人帮助时，常说 I can manage.

squeeze a Sunday in: 腾出一个星期日。

2. I used to love to go to the Metropolitan Museum of Art.

我那时常喜欢去参观大都会美术馆。

used to do: 过去常常做某事。暗含有“现在不再那样了”的意思。

Metropolitan Museum of Art: 大都会美术馆。这是纽约市的一所著名艺术博物馆，它珍藏着许多世界上最著名的绘画。

3. You ought to think about spending more time with Michelle at all the great places in the city.

你应当考虑多花点儿时间带 Michelle 逛一逛市内所有的好地方。

ought to: 表示“义务”，应该如何。ought to 比 must 的口气稍轻一些，可以用 should 代替，但 should 更多地表示说话人自己主观的判断或意见，而 ought to 更多地反映客观的情况或要求。

think about spending more time: 考虑多花点时间。动词短语 think about 之后要用动名词作介词宾语。

4. All set for lunch.

午餐的一切都准备好了。这里是省略用法，完整形式是: All are set for lunch.

5. It looks inviting.

看起来很吸引人。

inviting: 吸引人的，诱人的。

6. I'm starving, aren't you?

我饿极了，你呢？这是反意疑问句的特殊结构。一般情况下，反意疑问句中陈述部分和疑问部分的主语是一致的，例如: You're hungry, aren't you?

7. I can't wait to take a bite of the pumpernickel.

我真想马上就吃一口那裸麦粗面包。

can't wait to do sth.: 迫不及待想要做某事。

take a bite: 咬一口，尝一口。

pumpernickel: 裸麦粗面包。

ACT 1-3 “我这样做也是为了你。”

【故事梗概】

Michelle 和她的朋友们来吃午饭了。Harry 对 Susan 为他们父女所作的一切感激不尽。

Susan: Coming! Coming! [She speaks into the [intercom](#).] Who is it?

Michelle: Michelle. It's us, Susan.

Susan: Come in, Michelle, and bring your friends along. We're on the fifth floor. Oh, you've been here before.

Harry: Susan, I really [appreciate](#) your doing this for Michelle and her friends.

Susan: Oh, please, Harry. It's nothing. I'm not just doing it for Michelle. I'm doing it for you.

Harry: Thank you.

Susan: I'm doing it for us, Harry.

Harry: Well, it's... it's important for Michelle to see us together more often. That's true.

Susan: It's important for Michelle and me to get to know each other better. That's important for us.

Harry: That makes me feel good.

Susan: What, Harry? What makes you feel good?

Harry: Well, that you care about Michelle, that you care about me, and that you care about us.

Susan: Well Harry, that's because I do. I do care.

Harry: They'll be here any minute. Susan, I'd like to continue this conversation later.

Susan: Of course, Harry. We'll finish the conversation when they go to the museum.

Harry: I'd like that.

Susan: So would I.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's us.

是我们。正式用法应该是 It's we.

2. I really appreciate your doing this for Michelle and her friends.

我真的很感谢你为米歇尔和她的朋友们做这么多事。appreciate 之后接名词或动名词。

3. Oh, please, Harry. It's nothing.

噢，别这么说，Harry，这算不了什么。

please: 这里的意思是“请不要这么说，别客气”。

4. I'm not just doing it for Michelle. I'm doing it for you.

我不光是为了 Michelle，我这样做也是为了你。

这里现在进行时表示现在正在做的事的目的或理由，有较强的感情色彩。

5. That's true.

确实这样。

That's true./That makes me feel good./That's important for us. 本情景中先后出现的这三个 that 很充分地说明了一点，即人们常用 that 指前面刚发生过或说过的事和话。要想指即将说或发生的话或事则要用 this，如：Now listen to this. I'll never allow him to come here.

6. It's important for Michelle and me to get to know each other better.

重要的是让 Michelle 和我互相更了解。

It's important for sb. to do sth.: 是个固定结构，意思是“某人做某事是重要的”。

get to know each other: 增进（彼此之间的）了解。get to know 是表示转变的过程，由相互不太熟识理解到更好地熟识理解。

7. Well, that you care about Michelle, that you care about me, and that you care about us.

care about: 关心。

8. They'll be here any minute.

她们马上就上来了。

any minute: 意思是“随时都可能”，也就是 soon 或 immediately。注意 any minute 前面是不用介词 at 的。

ACT 2-1 “我以前从没有去过那儿。”

【故事梗概】

Michelle 和她的朋友们到了 Susan 的公寓，她把她们介绍给 Susan。

Michelle: Oh, Daddy! We had such a good time at the aquarium. I saw a real shark. I could almost touch it.

Harry: I'm so glad. Hi Michelle, why don't you introduce everybody to Susan?

Michelle: Hi, Susan.

Susan: Hi.

Michelle: I'd like you to meet Audrey and her mother, Mrs. Cooper.

Susan: Hello, Audrey. Nice to meet you, Mrs. Cooper. I'm Susan Stewart.

Michelle: And this is Shirley and Nicole.

Susan: Hi, girls.

Harry: Come on in. Come on in, Mrs. Cooper. Come on in, everybody.

Mother: The aquarium was so exciting. I had never been there before. The girls learned a great deal. Frankly, so did I.

Susan: well, please sit down and tell us all about it during lunch.

Harry: We prepared some tuna fish and cheese sandwiches for lunch.

Michelle: I love tuna fish. Don't you, Audrey?

Susan: I remember when I used to be a Girl Scout. My mother would take us everywhere, too.

【语言点精讲】

1. Why don't you introduce everybody to Susan?

为什么把大家介绍给 Susan 呢？

这是用 **why don't** 句式提出建议的又一例。进行社交介绍时，一般是把客人、年纪较轻及地位较低的人介绍给主人、年长者和地位较高的人。

2. I'd like you to meet Audrey and her mother, Mrs. Cooper.

我来给你介绍 Audrey 和她的母亲 Cooper 夫人。

I'd like you to meet...: 我来向你介绍.....。这是介绍时常用的表达法。

3. Come on in.

进来吧！意思与“Come in.”相同。这是比 Come in 更随和、友好的说法。

4. I had never been there before.

我以前从没有去过那儿。这句话用的过去完成时态，表达的意思为“到我今天上午带孩子们去以前为止，我从未去过”。过去完成时用 **had** + 过去分词构成，表示过去某一时间以前完成的动作或状态。

5. We prepared some tuna fish and cheese sandwiches for lunch.

tuna fish: 金枪鱼，也称“鲔鱼”，常用来做三明治。

tuna fish and cheese sandwiches 是以金枪鱼为主，又加上一片干酪的三明治。金枪鱼常是罐头里开出来即用的，而干酪也常是制成薄薄的方片，每片分别包在塑料纸中，专供制三明治用的。

6. I remember when I used to be a Girl Scout. My mother would take us everywhere, too.

我记得我还是一名女童子军的时候，我母亲也常带我们到处去逛。

I remember when I used to be a Girl Scout. : 我记得我还是一名女童子军的时候。这里的 **when** 引导的不是状语从句。这句话更完整的形式是 I remember the time when I used to be a Girl Scout, 所以 **when** 引导的是定语从句。

a Girl Scout: 美国有两个童子军组织，即男童子军（Boy Scouts）和女童子军（Girl Scouts）。男童子军创始于 1910 年，女童子军创始于 1912 年。组织童子军的目的是为了帮助男孩和女孩成为好公民，并且在心理和身体两方面得到健康发展。

would: 经常。用 would 描述过去的事情时，表示过去经常发生的事情。

ACT 2-2 “我碰巧有一种新游戏在这儿。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 手头有一套正在研发阶段的新游戏器具。在 Michelle 的建议下，她想让 Michelle 和她的朋友们帮忙测试一下这套游戏的效果。

Mother: Susan, I understand you're in the toy business.

Susan: Yes, I am. My company manufactures toys and games for children.

Harry: Susan's vice-president in charge of new toys and games.

Susan: And the marketing of new toys and games.

Michelle: Can we test a new game for you, Susan?

Susan: That's an excellent idea, Michelle. I happened to have a game which I brought home to study.

Michelle: Let us try it! Don't you want to play? Nicole? Shirley? Audrey?

Susan: [She takes out a game.] We tested it last week on twelve-to fifteen-year-olds, and they found it to be too easy-in other words ... boring. We think it might be just right for ten-to twelve-year-olds.

Michelle: That's us, Susan.

【语言点精讲】

1. I understand you're in the toy business.

我听说你是从事玩具业工作的。

understand: 在这里的意思是“获悉，得知，听说”。

in the toy business: 从事玩具业工作。

2. Susan's vice-president in charge of new toys and games.

苏珊是主管新玩具和游戏器具的副总裁。

in charge of: 主管，负责。

3. I happened to have a game which I brought home to study.

我碰巧有一种新游戏在这儿，我把它拿回家来研究的。

I happen to: 我碰巧.....。这里 happen 不是“发生”，而是“碰巧”的意思。

4. We tested it last week on twelve-to fifteen-year-olds, and they found it to be too easy-in other words ... boring.

上周我们在 12 岁至 15 岁的孩子中试验过这套游戏，他们觉得这太容易了——换句话说，是太无聊了。

We tested it on...: 在这里的意思相当于 We tried it with ...

twelve-to fifteen-year-olds : 12 岁至 15 岁的孩子。

they found it to be: 他们觉得，他们发现。

in other words: 换句话说，也就是说。

ACT 2-3 “你们不分胜负。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 为大家解释了游戏规则。大家试着玩了一轮。但是 Michelle 觉得这个游戏太简单了。

Susan: First, you shuffle the deck and lay them face down. Then you select the leader. I'll be the leader. The leader takes the first ten cards and lays them face up on this stand. [She places the letters h-t-e-r-c-z-e-p-e-s on the stand.]

Everyone gets a turn, going counterclockwise, left to right. You have thirty seconds to make a word, using as many letters as possible. You get one point for each letter, plus the person with the longest word gets ten extra points. The first one to get one hundred points wins.

Michelle: That's easy.

Susan: Ok, let's go around the table. You first, Audrey.

Audrey: Chest-c-h-e-s-t.

Susan: Good. That's five points Next, Nicole.

Nicole: Three--t-h-r-e-e.

Susan: Ok. That's five points also. It's your turn, Shirley.

Shirley: Creep-c-r-e-e-p.

Susan: Creep. That's another five-letter word. Five points. So far, you're all tied.

Harry: Sheet--s-h-e-e-t--sheet.

Susan: Sheet is a five-letter word. Michelle, your turn.

Michelle: Cheese--c-h-e-e-s-e.

Susan: Terrific! Michelle wins with a six-letter word, plus she gets an additional ten points for a total of sixteen points.

How are you enjoying the game so far?

Michelle: I think it's too easy.

Susan: Too easy?

Harry: Michelle!

Susan: It's Ok, Harry. Michelle is quite right. She just said it's too easy.

Harry: Uh, I like the game.

【语言点精讲】

1. First, you shuffle the deck and lay them face down.

首先你们得洗牌，洗好的牌面朝下放在桌上。

shuffle the deck: 洗牌。

lay: 放置。过去式和过去分词都是 laid。注意 lie (躺) 的过去式也是 lay。

face down: 正面朝下。

2. The leader takes the first ten cards and lays them face up on this stand.

领头人拿起头 10 张牌，把它们翻开面朝上放在这个架子上。

face up: 正面朝上。

stand: 在这里用作名词，意思是“架子，台子”。

3. Everyone gets a turn, going counterclockwise, left to right.

每个人都可以轮到一次，反时针方向轮流来，从左到右。

get a turn: 得到一次机会，轮到一次。

counterclockwise: 逆时针方向。此处指如以桌子比作钟面（从上方向下看），依次由左向右的方向。反之则为 clockwise（顺时针方向）。

4. You have thirty seconds to make a word, using as many letters as possible.

你可以有 30 秒钟时间拼出一个单词，用的字母越多越好。

using as many letters as possible: 用的字母越多越好。as ... as possible 意思是“尽可能……”。

5. Ok, let's go around the table.

好吧，我们顺着桌子来（做这游戏）吧。这里的 go 意思是“进行”。

6. It's your turn.

该轮到你了。

7. So far, you're all tied.

至今为止你们的得分都一样，不分胜负。

so far: 到现在为止。

you're all tied: 你们的得分一样，你们不分胜负。tie 在这里的意思是“与……打成平局”。

8. Michelle!

这里表示 Harry 责备 Michelle.

Michelle 说 Susan 给她们玩的游戏太简单了，Harry 认为她这样说不礼貌，所以叫她的名字，以示责备。

ACT 2-4 “我们不是有话没说完吗？”

【故事梗概】

孩子们下午还有活动，她们起身告辞了。刚刚被父亲责备的 Michelle 在试着向 Susan 道歉，Susan 却夸她为公司避免了错误的决策。

Mother: I enjoyed lunch, Susan. Thank you so much, but we have to get going to meet the rest of the troop at two o'clock at the museum.

Susan: Oh, it was nice meeting all of you. I hope you have a wonderful time at the Museum of Natural History.

Harry: Good-bye, everybody. Have a good time.

Girls: Bye.

Harry: See you in front of the museum at five o'clock.

Mother: Oh, Ok. Thanks, Mr. Bennett. That'll be fine. And thanks again for the lunch and for the game.

Michelle: Good-bye, Susan. It's not a bad game. It's just... slow.

Susan: Just slow. You helped save our company a lot of money Bye-bye.

[Michelle and her friends leave with Mrs. Cooper.]

Harry: You are wonderful with kids.

Susan: I am.

Harry: Isn't there a conversation that we have to finish?

【语言点精讲】

1. I enjoyed lunch, Susan.

这顿午饭真好，Susan。在别人请吃饭后，一般要表示吃得好，以示感谢。

2. Thank you so much, but we have to get going to meet the rest of the troop at two o'clock at the museum.

很感谢你，可是我们得开始上路了，下午两点钟还要在博物馆和女童子军的别的队员会合呢。

get going: 开始上路，相当于“to start to leave”。get 在这里表示转变的过程。

troop: 指的是由成年人领队带领的童子军队伍。

3. It was nice meeting all of you.

很高兴见到你们各位。这句话相当于 It was nice to meet all of you.

4. See you in front of the museum at five o'clock.

五点钟在博物馆门前再见。

in front of 意思是在.....前面。注意把这个词组与 in the front of 区别开来。 in the front of 意思是“在..... 的前部分”。例如:

The teacher is in the front of the classroom. 老师在教室的前面（在教室里）。

The teacher is in front of the classroom.老师在教室前面（在教室外面）。

5. It's not a bad game. It's just... slow.

那游戏不坏，只是.....不太有趣。

just: 只是，仅仅。在否定的时候，可以使用 just 或者 only 之类的词来缓和语气。

6. You are so wonderful with kids.

你对小孩真有一套。你真会哄小孩儿。

7. Isn't there a conversation that we have to finish ?

我们不是有话没说完吗？

ACT 3-1 “你到底想说什么？”

【故事梗概】

Michelle 和她的朋友走后， Susan 和 Harry 才有了独处的时间。Harry 耍了点并不高明的小聪明，借助于拼词游戏试着向 Susan 求婚。

Harry: There's a conversation we have to finish.

Susan: What was it about?

Harry: It was about caring.

Susan: Oh?

Harry: Yes, caring. I said that it makes me feel good that you care about Michelle.

Susan: Well, I do care about Michelle.

Harry: And it makes me feel good that you care about me.

Susan: You know I do. You're a ... wonderful friend.

Harry: And it makes me feel good that you care about us.

Susan: Well... well, I do, Harry, it's only natural that if I care about Michelle and I care about you, then I care about us.

Harry: It's Ok, Susan we had this part of the conversation before Michelle and her friends arrived. Now comes the good part.

Susan: Like what?

Harry: Well, assume that if you care about Michelle and you care about me and you care about us, then we can talk about us. I mean -- you and me. Isn't that right?

Susan: What are you trying to say, Harry?

Harry: What I'm trying to say since this is so easy [He goes to the game stand and puts up some letters.] Here are ten letters that express my feelings ... for you.

Susan: Don't be silly, Harry.

Harry: You want a hint? It's two words.

Susan: You're making the game harder.

Harry: Can't you figure it out? Seven letters ... two words ... that express the feelings that I feel for you in my heart.

Susan: Harry. I get it! [She **rearranges** the letters to spell "marry me."]

【语言点精讲】

1. I said that it makes me feel good that you care about Michelle.

我说你关心 Michelle，我感到很高兴。

这句话主句与从句的时态不一致。**that** 从句中使用一般现在时，同主句 **I said** 的过去时不一致，是强调所说的内容属于现在的状态，仍然继续存在。

it: 这里的 **it** 是形式主语，真正的主语是 **good** 后面的 **that** 句。下文中 **And it makes me feel good that you care about us.** 以及 **It's only natural that if I care about Michelle and I care about you** 都属这一用法。

care about sb.: 关心某人，在乎某人。

2. It's Ok, Susan we had this part of the conversation before Michelle and her friends arrived. Now comes the good part.

we had this part of the conversation: 这一部分我们已经谈过了。

Now comes the good part.: 现在到了最精彩的部分。Harry 的意思是他将开始谈话的最精彩的部分。当谓语动词为 **come** 时，**now/then/here** 等词可放在动词前面，而主语则放在动词后面。又如: **Here comes the bus.**

3. Like what?

像什么样的（精采部分）？这是很口语化的用法，意思相当于 **Such as...**?

4. Well, assume that if you care about Michelle and you care about me and you care about us, then we can talk about us.

好，首先假设一下，如果你关心米歇尔，你关心我，你关心咱们两个人，那么我们就可以谈一谈咱们的事。

这个句子是个不带主语的祈使句。**assume**: 假设，假定。

5. What are you trying to say, Harry ?

你到底想说什么，Harry?

6. Don't be silly, Harry.

别闹了，Harry。Don't be silly 在口语中表示“不要乱来，别开玩笑”。

7. Can't you figure it out?

你难道想不出答案来？

figure it out: 找到答案，想出来，弄明白。

8. I get it!

我想出来了。我知道答案了。

ACT 3-2 “你愿意嫁给我吗？”

【故事梗概】

Harry 鼓足了勇气，说出了求婚的话。Susan 同意接受他的求婚，但却提出了三个先决条件。

Harry: Well? Does that mean you'll marry me?

Susan: Is that a **proposal**, or are we just playing a game?

Harry: Sit down, Susan. There's something I have to ask you. [He takes a flower from the table and gets down on one **knee**.] Susan, will you marry me?

Susan: It's such an important decision. There's so many things to talk about. There are three things that have to be done first, Harry.

Harry: Three things?

Susan: First, we have to decide where to live.

Harry: Well, that's easy. We talked about that earlier. We'll live in New York.

Susan: All right. Second, we have to talk to Michelle together about being married.

Harry: We'll do that **immediately**. What's the third thing?

Susan: You have to ask for my father's **permission**.

Harry: **Absolutely!** But first things first. We have to go to **pick up** Michelle.

Susan: Oh, I'm so happy, Harry!

Harry: Not as happy as I am.

【语言点精讲】

1. Susan, will you marry me?

Susan, 你愿意嫁给我吗? 句中的 **will** 是情态动词, 表示“意愿, 意志”。

2. It's such an important decision. There's so many things to talk about. There are three things that have to be done first, Harry.

这是一个非常重要的决定, 有许多事情要谈谈。首先有三件事要做, Harry。

There's so many things ...There are three things...: 口语里, 在 **There + be** 的句式中, 当在它后面并不马上出现复数名词时, 习惯上 **be** 动词用单数。如这里的 **there's so many things** 和 **there are three things** 即可说明。

3. We have to decide where to live.

我们得决定住在哪里。

这句话中 **decide** 的宾语由 **where** 加不定式 **to live** 构成。动词不定式前面加疑问副词后作宾语, 其功能相当于宾语从句。

4. Second, we have to talk to Michelle together about being married.

第二件, 我们得一起同 Michelle 谈一下我们要结婚的事。

being married: 我们结婚的事。这个短语表示状态, 更准确的说法应该是表示动作, 即 **getting married**。

5. You have to ask for my father's permission.

你应当征得我父亲的同意。

在美国, 女孩子要嫁人需征求父亲的意见是一个传统习惯。然而现在, 结婚时, 男方要征得女方父亲的同意的情况已不多见。这一句说明苏珊还是比较旧派的女子。

ask for sb's permission: 征求某人的同意, 征得某人的许可。也可以说 **ask sb. for permission**

6. But first things first. We have to go to pick up Michelle.

first things first: 事有先后。

to pick up Michelle: 去接 Michelle。

7. Not as happy as I am.

没有我那么幸福。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 15 课: 二度蜜月

ACT 1-1 “没有特别的理由。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 整日在外奔波忙碌, Marilyn 在家照顾婴儿, 生活缺少浪漫气息。在他们结婚五周年纪念日的前几天, Richard 建议两个人把孩子托给母亲照料, 到新婚时度蜜月的地方去重拾最初的欢乐。

[Richard hands Marilyn a **bouquet** of roses.]

Marilyn: What's this for?

Richard: Just because. How's the baby?

Marilyn: Fast asleep.

Richard: I'm sorry I missed him. I had to work late.

Marilyn: What are the flowers for, Richard?

Richard: Five years of happiness. Happy **anniversary**.

Marilyn: But our anniversary isn't until Saturday.

Richard: I couldn't wait. Besides, we are not going to be here Saturday.

Marilyn: We're not?

Richard: Uh-uh.

Marilyn: Where are we going to be?

Richard: If you had your choice of all the places in the world, where would you choose to spend our anniversary?

Marilyn: The Watermill Inn. I loved that place when we went on our honeymoon.

Richard: Perfect! You picked the right place.

Marilyn: I don't understand.

Richard: You and I, Mrs. Stewart, are going to spend a second honeymoon at the Watermill Inn.

【语言点精讲】

1. What's this for?

这是为什么？这是干什么？

2. Just because.

没有特别的理由。这是回避回答问题的一种说法，通常带有幽默的口吻。

3. Fast asleep.

睡熟了。也可以说 sound asleep（睡得很香）。

fast 是副词，意思为“紧，牢固”。形容词 asleep 只能作表语，不能作定语。

4. I'm sorry I missed him.

很抱歉我错过了他（醒着的时候）。miss 在这里的意思是“错过”。

5. But our anniversary isn't until Saturday.

但是要到星期六才是我们的结婚纪念日。

not(...)until...: 意思是“直到.....才.....”。

6. If you had your choice of all the places in the world, where would you choose to spend our anniversary?

假如让你挑选世界上任何地方，你会选择哪里去度我们的结婚纪念日？

这是一个虚拟条件句，表示与现在事实相反的内容，其中主句用过去将来时（would 加动词原形），从句用过去时。这种句型多用于描述发生的可能性并不太大的事。

这里 Richard 之所以用虚拟条件句，是强调只是问一问而已，以便后来给 Marilyn 一个惊喜。如果他用了真实条件句（If you have your choice...where will you choose...），意思就变成“我已安排好，只等你选择地方了”。

7. You and I, Mrs. Stewart, are going to spend a second honeymoon at the Watermill Inn.

Inn: 小旅馆。通常指乡村或主要道路旁的旅馆。

second honeymoon: 第二次蜜月。

ACT 1-2 “我们早该这么做了。”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 很想结婚纪念日的时候去度假，但是她又放心不下 Max。Richard 告诉她 Ellen 同意在周末照顾 Max。在他的极力劝说下，

Marilyn 逐渐放下顾虑，高高兴兴地同意了去度二次蜜月。

Marilyn: Oh, Richard! That's wonderful, but...

Richard: No buts.

Marilyn: What about the baby? Aren't we taking the baby on our honeymoon?

Richard: Absolutely not. The world's greatest grandmother, Mrs. Ellen Stewart, has agreed to take care of him for the weekend.

Marilyn: Richard, isn't that too much to ask of your mother?

Richard: Too much? She loves taking care of Max.

Marilyn: But...I'll miss him.

Richard: Well, we'll phone every hour, and you can listen to him over the phone. Come on, Mar. It's time you and I had a romantic weekend alone together. We've earned it. What do you say?

Marilyn: It does sound tempting. You're right. We've earned it.

Richard: Great! I'll make a reservation right now. Remember that wonderful little balcony where we had our meals...with a view of the Hudson River?

Marilyn: How could I forget?

【语言点精讲】

1. No buts.

不要说但是。当希望对方不要为否定自己提出的建议而找借口的时候，可以使用这个表达。这里 but 当作名词使用。

2. What about the baby?

小宝宝怎么办？

What about...: 这里的意思是“如何处理……，如何对待……”。

3. Isn't that too much to ask of your mother?

那是不是太麻烦你母亲啦？

Isn't that...: 这是一个 反问句，表示“那岂不是……？”

to ask sth. of sb.: 与 to ask sb. for sth.不同，后者常表示索取某种具体的东西，而前者常表示要求做某种动作或采取某种立场、持某种态度等。

4. Come on, Mar. It's time you and I had a romantic weekend alone together.

好了，Mar，我们该在一起度过一个浪漫的周末了。

Mar: 这是 Marilyn 的昵称。

当 It's time 后接从句表示该做什么事时，从句一般用过去时表示将来意义。这句话也可改写为 It's time for you and me to have a romantic weekend alone together.

5. We've earned it.

我们有这样做的权利；我们早该这么做了。

earn: 这里的意思是“应得，值得”。

7. What do you say?

你说呢？你的意见呢？

8. It does sound tempting.

听起来确实很诱人的。

tempting: 诱人的。

9. I'll make a reservation right now. Remember that wonderful little balcony where we had our meals...with a view of the Hudson River?

make a reservation: 这里指在饭店或旅馆预订房间。实际上，在预订机票、戏票、餐厅席位时也可用短语 make a reservation。

balcony: 阳台。

Hudson River: 哈德逊河。该河在纽约州东部，约三百一十五英里长。

ACT 1-3 “一切办妥了。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 给他们度蜜月时住过的磨坊旅馆打电话预定房间，遗憾的是原来给他们留下甜蜜回忆的磨坊旅馆没有空房，未免是美中不足。

但热心的接待员另外给他们介绍了附近一家旅店。

Richard: Hello. Is Mrs. Montefiore there? Ah. [to Marilyn] She's out.

Yes. This is Richard Stewart. My wife and I spent our honeymoon at the inn. No, we didn't leave anything in the room.

It was five years ago. We'd like to make a reservation for this week end. Yes, a double room, please. What? Are you sure?

But...Ok. [to Marilyn] Nothing available. Wait! Don't hang up! Can you **recommend** someplace nice -- someplace **nearby**?
Uh -- hold it. Old Country Inn? Right. And the phone number? 555-2420. Thank you. He says there's another inn just half a mile down the road from the Watermill. It won't be the same, but what do you say?

Marilyn: Well...

Richard: My mom is available to baby-sit this week end.

Marilyn: Well, Ok. See if they have a room.

Richard: Right! Hello. Is this the Old Country Inn? Yes. This is Richard Stewart. The desk clerk at the Watermill suggested your inn. Would you happen to have a room for two available this weekend? Something really nice. My wife and I are **celebrating** our fifth anniversary. Yes. I'll hold. He's checking. You do? Great! What is the daily rate? That's fine. Thank you. Yes, we'll be arriving by car about ten o'clock Friday night. Stewart. S-t-e-w-a-r-t. Thank you. Done! You and I, Mrs. Stewart, are going to have a wonderful, **romantic** weekend!

Marilyn: Richard, that's the baby.

【语言点精讲】

1. No, we didn't leave anything in the room. It was five years ago.

不是，我们没有在客房里落下什么，那是五年前的事了。

从这句话可以推测出，对方在听到 **My wife and I had our honeymoon at the inn.** 之后很敏感地作出了反应，以为打电话的人是在查问遗留在客房内的某种东西。因此 Richard 才说那是五年前的事。

2. Yes, a double room, please.

a double room: 一个双人房间。一个单人房间是“a single room”。

3. Don't hang up!

别挂断电话。请对方不挂断电话也可说“Please hang on!”

4. Can you recommend someplace nice -- someplace nearby? Uh -- hold it.

你能推荐一家好点的旅馆吗——在你们附近的？哦——请等一等。

recommend sth.: 推荐，建议，介绍。

hold it: 等一等。

5. He says there's another inn just half a mile down the road from the Watermill.

他说在那条路上离磨坊旅馆半英里就有另一家旅店。

just half a mile down the road: 这里 down 是介词，表示沿某一条路线或河流再走下去或向下游去。

6. See if they have a room.

看看他们是否有空房。

see if: 相当于“find out if...”，看看是否.....

7. Would you happen to have a room for two available this weekend?

这个周末你们是否（碰巧）有间双人房间空着？

8. What is the daily rate?

daily rate: 每日租金。这里值的是住一天的房价。

9. Done!

一切办妥了。表示事情解决了，办妥了或敲定了，可以说“Done”，“All set!”或者“Settled”。

ACT 2-1 “这不是我所盼望的。”

【故事梗概】

星期五夜间，Marilyn 和 Richard 到达了古老乡村旅店。情况并不像 Richard 设想的那么浪漫：天在下雨，他们几乎都湿透了；房间很小，也不是很干净；推窗不见美景而只见停车场。

Clerk: Right this way, Mr. and Mrs. Stewart. Well, it's small, but clean.

Richard: Clean? You call this clean?

Clerk: Have a nice stay.

Richard: Thank you. I don't believe this. Well, it isn't the Watermill Inn, but let's get a look at the view.

[He opens the shutters.]

Marilyn: How is the view?

Richard: Great, if you enjoy looking at a parking lot.

Marilyn: Well, maybe we'll see the view in the morning. Right now, we should clean up this room.

Richard: Sorry, Marilyn.

Marilyn: Why should you be sorry?

Richard: Well, the rain, the room, the view of the parking lot. It isn't the way I hoped it would be.

Marilyn: Stop blaming yourself. After all, we're here, we're alone, we're together. And I love you. Isn't that enough?

Richard: It is for me, but I wanted this weekend to be special for you.

Marilyn: It is special. Happy anniversary.

【语言点精讲】

1. You call this clean?

这样子你还说干净?

You call...?: 你管这个叫...?这是一个质问某人的句型。

call something +n./adj.: 是口语中的常用的句式,意思是“把某物叫做...,把某物称为...”。

2. Have a nice stay.

希望你们住得愉快。这里的 stay 意思是“短时间的停留、居住”。

3. Well, it isn't the Watermill Inn, but let's get a look at the view. [He opens the shutters.]

嗯,这不是磨坊旅馆,可是先让我们瞧一下窗外的风景吧。[他打开百叶窗。]

get a look at:瞧一下。类似的短语还有 take a look at, have a look at 等。

view: 景色。

shutters: 百叶窗,护窗板。

4. Great, if you enjoy looking at a parking lot.

好得很,如果你喜欢看一个停车场的话。这是一句反话,真正的意思是“景色很差,只有一个停车场”。

enjoy: 只能用动名词作宾语,例如: Do you enjoy staying in the hotel?

a parking lot: 停车场,也称为 car park。

5. Right now, we should clean up this room.

现在我们该马上把房间收拾干净。

right now: 立刻,马上。

clean up this room: 收拾、整理房间。

6. It isn't the way I hoped it would be.

这不是我所盼望的。

在表示方式方法的名词 way 后面的定语从句常不用关系代词作为引导。又如:

The way he did it was wrong.

I liked the way Marilyn tried to keep calm.

7. Stop blaming yourself.

别责备自己了。

“Stop blaming yourself.”与前面出现的“Why should you be sorry?”都是用于劝别人不必抱歉,不必自责的句子。

8. After all, we're here, we're alone, we're together.

After all: 毕竟,无论如何。这个状语短语用来修饰全句,表示一个同前面句子有关的理由或意见,或表示尽管有前面所说的话或所做

的事,这里所说的话还可能

9. It is for me, but I wanted this weekend to be special for you.

对我来说是足够了，可是我本想让这个周末成为你的特殊的周末的。

It is for me.: 在这里的意思相当于 It is enough for me. (对我来说是足够了。) 不要理解为“这是为了我”。

ACT 2-2 “我们应该面对现实。”

【故事梗概】

次日清晨，天气仍然不好，而且他们发现古老乡村旅店不仅没有客房服务，甚至连可以随便吃点东西的咖啡厅也没有。恼怒之余，Richard 建议他们提前结束旅行，回家去。

Richard: It's still raining. I want to play tennis.

Marilyn: I want some breakfast. Let's call room service and order nice breakfast, and then we'll figure out what to do today.

Richard: Right. [He goes to the telephone.] Would you give me room service, please? I beg your pardon? Oh, I see. They don't have room service at Old Country Inn.

Marilyn: Well, let's go down to the coffee shop.

Richard: They don't have a coffee shop. We can get our meals at Mrs. Montefiore's down the road.

Marilyn: That's OK, honey. I love walking in the rain.

Richard: Oh, you're being a really good sport about this, Marilyn, but I think we should face the truth.

Marilyn: What's that?

Richard: This is not the way to spend our fifth anniversary.

Marilyn: Well, what do you want to do?

Richard: Why don't we get in the car and drive home?

Marilyn: Oh, Richard, it really isn't that bad.

Richard: [He hugs her.] Do you want to stick it out for the whole weekend?

Marilyn: Well, I'll admit the room is uncomfortable.

Richard: Uh-hum.

Marilyn: And I do feel bad about your mother having to take care of the baby all weekend.

Richard: Why don't we just check out?

Marilyn: OK.

【语言点精讲】

1. Let's call room service and order nice breakfast, and then we'll figure out what to do today.

room service: 既是客房服务业务，指送餐饮到客房，也指客房服务部门。在本文中，共出现三次 room service，其中前两次是指客房服务部门，第三次是指客房服务业务。

Let's call room service and order nice breakfast. (咱们给客房服务部打电话，要一顿好吃的早饭吧)

Would you give me room service, please? (请给我接客房服务部。)

They don't have room service at Old Country Inn. (古老乡村旅店没有客房服务。)

2. I beg your pardon?

这是正式场合用语，此处意思是“你说什么？”

3. Well, let's go down to the coffee shop.

那么我们下去到咖啡厅。

the coffee shop: 咖啡厅。一般旅馆都应当有咖啡厅，供应早餐和点心等。

4. I love walking in the rain.

love walking: 喜欢散步。在动词 love 的后面，可接动名词，也可以接不定式。但接不定式往往表示一次性动作，而接动名词则表示习惯性动作。

5. Oh, you're being a really good sport about this, Marilyn, but I think we should face the truth.

噢，你对这些事真是看得开，Marilyn，可是我想我们应该面对现实。

You're being...: 你现在，你这一次。意思相当于“Right now, your actions show that you are...”。使用 am, is, are + being 表示某人暂时性的行为或现在的表现。例如，“You are being a good boy.”是指你这会儿表现不错。而 You are a good boy.”则是指你一直是个好男孩。”

a good sport: 看得开、输得起的人；有运动精神的人。

face the truth: 面对现实。

6. Do you want to stick it out for the whole weekend?

你想要坚持在这儿度过整个周末吗？

stick it out: 忍耐，坚持到底。

7. Why don't we just check out?

我们干脆结帐离开不好吗？

check out: 结账离开（旅馆）。与这个短语相对的是 check in, 即到达一家旅馆时，在前台登记。

ACT 2-3 “这真是太好了！”

【故事梗概】

当他们在收拾东西准备离开时，Marilyn 接到了磨坊旅馆的老板 Montefiore 女士打来了电话。原来磨坊旅馆有空房间了。

[The telephone rings.]

Marilyn: Hello? Yes, yes, this is she. Oh, hello! How nice of you to remember us! Yes, my husband did call. You do? Really?

It won't be any trouble? Oh, yes, I think we'd like that very much. Fifteen minutes! Thank you. Good bye. [She hangs up, turns to Richard, and smiles.] You will never guess.

Richard: Uh... I give up.

Marilyn: Mrs. Montefiore from the Watermill Inn.

Richard: What is she calling about?

Marilyn: They have an opening. Someone just checked out, and Mrs. Montefiore has reserved the honeymoon suite for us.

Richard: You're kidding!

Marilyn: No. Isn't it wonderful?

Richard: It's fantastic! Oh, now all it has to do is stop raining. Let's go.

[They kiss, gather their bags, and leave.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Yes, Yes, this is she.

是的，是的，我就是。

这里用主格 she，是严谨的合乎语法的用法，因为它在句中是表语而不是宾语。

2. You will never guess.

你永远猜不到。这个句子表示有令人吃惊的消息。

3. Uh... I give up.

give up: 放弃。此处 Richard 的意思是他承认猜不到。

4. They have an opening. Someone just checked out, and Mrs. Montefiore has reserved the honeymoon suite for us.

他们有空房间了。有人刚结了帐走了，Montefiore 夫人把蜜月套房留给我们了。

opening: 这里指的是空房间，相当于“an available room”。

suite: 套房，特别指旅馆中的套房。

5. It's fantastic! Oh, now all it has to do is stop raining.

这真是太好了！现在只要不下雨就完美了。

修饰 all 的定语从句中，关系代词一般用 that 而不用 which，且凡可省略时（在从句中为动词宾语或介词宾语），都省略。另外在 stop 前面本应有 to，但在说明 do 的内容确指何事的句式中，动词不定式的 to 常省略。

stop raining: 雨停止。stop doing sth. 表示“停止做某事”，stop to do sth. 表示“停下（手中正在做的别的事）来去干某事”。

ACT 3-1 “也十分相爱。”

【故事梗概】

在磨坊旅馆，旅馆老板 Montefiore 女士把 Marilyn 和 Richard 带到蜜月套房里。他们回忆了新婚时住在这里的往事。Marilyn 告诉 Montefiore 女士他们已经有了一个儿子。

Innkeeper: Welcome to the Watermill Inn.

Marilyn: Oh, Richard, it's exactly as it was when we were married!

Innkeeper: And when I got married.

Marilyn: Even the old patchwork quilt is the same!

Innkeeper: My great-grandmother made that quilt when Teddy Roosevelt was President. In those days, when they made quilts, they cut patches from the old clothing of every member in the family so that each one would be a part of it.

Marilyn: What a lovely tradition!

Richard: Thank you for calling us.

Innkeeper: I remember you and your wife from the first time you stayed with us.

Richard: We were very young.

Innkeeper: And very much in love.

Marilyn: We have a baby now.

Innkeeper: How wonderful! A boy or a girl?

Marilyn: A boy -- Max.

Innkeeper: Do you have a picture?

Richard: Would a professional photographer be without a picture?

[He takes out his wallet of photographs and shows her pictures of the baby.]

Innkeeper: Oh, he's adorable!

Richard: And very bright.

Marilyn: Like his father. A real Stewart.

Richard: And very good-looking, like his mother.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's exactly as it was when we were married!

这房间跟我们结婚的时候一模一样。

这里的 when 从句是状语从句，修饰 it was，而 we were married 意指 we just got married，即第一次来此度蜜月的时候。

2. Even the old patchwork quilt is the same!

连这老式拼花被罩都是原来那一条。

patchwork quilt: 百袖被罩，拼花被罩，即用小布块缝缀的被罩。这曾是美国一种相当普遍的民间艺术。

3. My great-grandmother made that quilt when Teddy Roosevelt was President.

Teddy Roosevelt: 指的是美国第 26 任总统 Theodore Roosevelt。任期从 1901 年到 1909 年。Teddy 是 Theodore 的昵称。

4. In those days, when they made quilts, they cut patches from the old clothing of every member in the family so that each one would be a part of it.

在那个年头人们做拼花被罩时要从家里每个人的旧衣服上剪下块布来，以便让每个人都有一份。

so that: 意思是“以便; 所以”。口语中 that 也可以省略。so that 是引导目的状语从句的连词, 等于 in order that, 从句中动词多用 may/can/will 以及 might/could/would/should, 以表示一种只是主观企求达到的目的, 而还不是真正已达到的结果。

5. I remember you and your wife from the first time you stayed with us.

我记得你和你妻子第一次住在我们这儿的时候。

the first time you stayed with us: 在 time 后面的定语从句常省去关系词 that (或 when)。

6. And very much in love.

也十分相爱。in love: 相爱。

7. Would a professional photographer be without a picture?

一位专业摄影师会有照片吗? 这句话是个虚拟语气的反问句, Richard 的意思是“作为一名专业摄影师, 我当然有照片”。

Would ...?: 这是常用的表示“诘难, 抗议”等感情的句式。又如, Would you hit such a small boy? (难道你会打这么小的孩子吗?)

8. And very good-looking, like his mother.

而且很漂亮, 像他的母亲。

good-looking: 好看的; 美貌的。这是个复合形容词。

ACT 3-2 “这才是我所说的享受。”

【故事梗概】

在磨坊旅馆的老板 Montefiore 女士欢迎 Marilyn 和 Richard 再次光临, 并“自作主张”, 为他们准备了非常丰盛的早餐。

Innkeeper: Well, it's nice to have you with us again. Next time, bring the baby.

Marilyn: You see, Richard? Max is welcome here.

Richard: Not on our anniversary. This vacation is for you and me.

Innkeeper: If there's anything you need, please call me. I'll be in the front office all day.

[There is a knock at the door.]

Innkeeper: Oh, I took the liberty of ordering some breakfast for you.

[The bellhop enters.]

Innkeeper: Just put it over there, Charles.

[The bellhop puts their breakfast on the table.]

Innkeeper: Thank you. Charles. Compliments of the Watermill Inn.

Richard: Thank you.

Marilyn: Thank you so much.

Richard: Now, this is my idea of a good time. Let's see...hotcakes and maple syrup, with scrambled eggs.

Marilyn: Umm...smell that coffee...cinnamon and cloves.

Richard: Homemade buttermilk biscuits.

Marilyn: Slices of orange with burnt honey.

【语言点精讲】

1. This vacation is for you and me.

这次休假是专为你我二人的。

vacation: 假期, 休假。

2. I'll be in the front office all day.

我整天都在总办公室里。

front office: 旅馆的总办公室。

3. Oh, I took the liberty of ordering some breakfast for you.

噢, 我自己作主给你们定了早点。

take the liberty of (doing something): 冒昧地或未征得允许地 (做某事)。

4. The bellhop enters.

bellhop: 旅馆服务员。也可以称他们为 bellboy 或者 bellman。

5. Compliments of the Watermill Inn.

请接受我们磨坊旅馆的一点敬意。磨坊旅馆赠送。

有的旅馆或饭店会给特殊的顾客一次免费用餐，以示欢迎。

compliments of: 这是 with the compliments of...的省略语，是在免费赠送某物给顾客时常用的套语，也可以说（With the）

compliments of the management 或 With our compliments. compliments 原来是“赞美的话，致意，问候”的意思。在这里指的是“免费赠送，赠品”。

6. This is my idea of a good time.

这才是我所说的享受。

this is my idea of...: 在这里等同于 this is what I think...should be like.

让我们来一起看一下让 Richard 有如此感慨的免费早餐是什么样的吧。

hotcakes: 烤饼。

maple syrup: 槭树汁，枫糖汁。

scrambled eggs: 炒鸡蛋。

coffee...cinnamon and cloves : 咖啡.....有桂皮和丁香的香味。

homemade buttermilk biscuits: 自制的乳酪脆饼干。

Slices of orange with burnt honey: 橙子片加焦蜜。

ACT 3-3 “你看看窗外。”

【故事梗概】

面对美食，Richard 建议马上开吃，但是 Marilyn 坚持要先给家里打个电话，问问儿子的情况。早饭后，天气放晴了。雨过天晴，云破日出，真是完美的二度蜜月。

Richard: Let's eat!

Marilyn: First I want to call home and check on your mother and the baby.

Richard: Honey, if there were any problems, she would call us.

Marilyn: She doesn't know we've changed hotels.

Richard: You're right. Of course.

Marilyn: [She goes to the telephone.] Hello, [operator](#), I'd like to call Riverdale, New York.

[A little later.]

Richard: This food is heavenly, isn't it?

Marilyn: This whole place is [heavenly](#). Do you remember that old desk? Mrs. Montefiore told me that George Washington sat at that desk and wrote to his wife Martha.

Richard: What do you want to do after breakfast?

Marilyn: Why don't we take a walk down to the river?

Richard: In the rain?

Marilyn: No. Look out the window. The sun is shining!

Richard: Now this is my idea of a good time!

[They hold hands across the table.]

【语言点精讲】

1. First I want to call home and check on your mother and the baby.

我先得给家里打电话，看看你母亲和小宝宝怎样了。

check on: 查核，查询。

2. Honey, if there were any problems, she would call us.

亲爱的，要是有事的话，她会打电话告诉我们的。

这句话是个虚拟的条件句。条件句中用 **were** 表示现在（或将来），主句中用 **would** 表示将来，意思是说这种情况发生的可能性很小

3. Hello, operator, I'd like to call Riverdale, New York.

你好，接线员，我要打电话到纽约的里弗代尔。

operator: （电话）接线员。

4. This food is heavenly, isn't it?

这饭食真是太丰盛了，不是吗？

heavenly: 经过上帝之手，无比、极其美好的。

5. Mrs. Montefiore told me that George Washington sat at that desk and wrote to his wife Martha.

Montefiore 夫人告诉过我 George Washington 曾坐在桌旁给他的夫人 Martha 写信呢。

George Washington: 乔治·华盛顿。美国第一任总统，任期自 1789 年至 1797 年。

6. Look out the window.

你看看窗外。更正规的说法应该是 Look out of the window.

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 16 课：意外的惊喜

ACT 1-1 “我当然认识他。”

【故事梗概】

星期六上午，Robbie 和 Grandpa (Malcolm Stewart) 在厨房里说话。邮递员送来了一些信。夹在一堆帐单和广告中间的是一封 Grandpa 大学时的室友 Pete Waters 写来的信。

Robbie: The mailman just dropped some mail in our box, Grandpa.

Grandpa: **Probably** a lot of **advertising** and bills. Why don't you write to me, Robbie, so I can get some interesting mail?

Robbie: You were right, Grandpa. Advertising, bills, bills, advertising.

Grandpa: It's just like I said, Robbie. Nothing interesting.

Robbie: You won't believe it, Grandpa, but there's a letter here addressed to you, Mr. Malcolm Stewart, and it looks like a **personal** letter.

Grandpa: Oh, it must be a bill.

Robbie: I don't think so. The return name and address is Pete Waters, RFD Number 1, Chesterton.

Grandpa: You're joking. Pete Waters?

Robbie: Pete Waters, RFD Number 1, Chesterton. You know him?

Grandpa: Do I know Pete Waters? You bet I do! He was my **roommate** in college. He visited with Grandma and me in Florida about five years ago.

[He opens the letter.]

【语言点精讲】

1. The mailman just dropped some mail in our box, Grandpa.

爷爷，邮递员刚在我们信箱里投放了一些信件。

mailman: 邮递员。近年来由于女权运动者反对含有性别区分的词汇，因此常改称 mail carrier。

2. Probably a lot of advertising and bills.

可能是许多广告宣传品和帐单。

advertising: 广告；促销宣传品。

bills: 这里指的是账单。

3. Why don't you write to me, Robbie, so I can get some interesting mail?

你为什么不能给我写几封信，Robbie，好让我也能收到有趣的邮件？

so I can get some interesting mail: 这里 so 是 so that 的省略，引导目的状语从句。

4. You won't believe it, Grandpa, but there's a letter here addressed to you, Mr. Malcolm Stewart, and it looks like a personal letter.

你不会相信的，爷爷，真有一封信是寄给你的。Malcolm Stewart 先生收，还像是一封私人信件呢。

a letter here addressed to you: 一封寄给你的信。

a personal letter: 一封私人信件。这是同广告或商业函件相对而言的。

5. The return name and address is Pete Waters, RFD Number 1, Chesterton.

寄信人的姓名地址是 Pete Waters，乡村免费递送，切斯特顿 1 号。

return name and address: 回信用的姓名和地址。通常就是寄信人的姓名、地址。

RFD: rural free delivery 的缩写，指的是（邮件的）乡村地区免费递送。这是一种为偏远乡村地区免费投递信件、报纸的邮政服务系统。由邮递员开汽车递送邮件，每个邮递员负责一条线路。在美国，这种服务开始于 1896 年。

6. Do I know Pete Waters?

反问句，意思是“那还用问，我当然认得他了”。其形式是把对方的问句原句重复一次，稍加重读，有时改用降调。

7. You bet I do!

这是美国口语的用法，表示“当然”，“毫无疑问”的意思。在这里 Grandpa 想要表达的意思是“我当然认识他”。意思相近的表达还有“Of course I do!”以及“I certainly do!”

ACT 1-2 “他为什么一直未婚呢？”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 读了老朋友 Pete Waters 寄给他的信。Pete 邀 Grandpa 到自己的乡间农场小住，与几位老同学聚会。

Robbie: What does he say? Is he OK?

Grandpa: Yeah, he's fine. Just fine. He's writing to invite me to spend a weekend with him at his farm. He's planning a [get-together](#) with two or three other college friends. Kind of a fifty-year [anniversary reunion](#).

Robbie: Sounds like fun. Fifty years? Wow!

Grandpa: It sounds like fun to me, too, Robbie.

Robbie: What kind of farm does he have?

Grandpa: I've never been there, Robbie, but he has chickens and [cows](#) and all. That means fresh eggs and fresh milk.

Robbie: Does he have a family?

Grandpa: No, he doesn't, Robbie. He never married. He's not as lucky as I am to have a family and grandchildren. I'm a lucky man.

Robbie: How come he never got married?

Grandpa: That's a good question, Robbie. A very good question. He never married because the girl he was in love with in college married someone else. As simple as that. He never got over it.

【语言点精讲】

1. He's writing to invite me to spend a weekend with him at his farm.

他写信请我到他的农场上去度周末。

invite sb. to do sth.: 邀请某人去做某事。

spend a weekend with sb.: 与某人共度周末。

2. He's planning a get-together with two or three other college friends. Kind of a fifty-year anniversary reunion.

他正计划着要同两三位别的大学时期的朋友聚会一下，就算是个毕业 50 周年纪念重聚会。

get-together: 联欢会，聚会。

kind of: 在非正式英语中表示“某种，类似，如同”，可用于单数名词、形容词、动词等的前面。也常说成 “sort of”。

reunion: 重聚，同班同学高校毕业后的重聚联欢会。高中和大学时的同班同学在毕业多年后常安排重聚或重聚联欢会。

3. How come he never got married?

他为什么一直未结婚呢？

How come: 用于一个完整的陈述句前，构成问句，是用来问“Why”的非正式说法。意思是“事情是怎么发生的？”，“为什么会有这种情况？”“How come，等。这个 come 无时态或人称变化。又如，

How come she doesn't know about it? （为什么她不知道？）

You're back early. How come? （你为什么会回来得这么早？）

4. That's a good question, Robbie. A very good question.

这问题问得很好，Robbie。问得很好。

That's a good question. : 说这句话，并不一定是指对方的问题提得好，更经常的情况只是为了给自己争取一点时间来思考一下，或者引出自己的回答。

5. He never got over it.

他始终未能释然于怀。

get over: 指的是从某种精神状态恢复过来。在这里指从（失恋中）恢复过来，忘却。

ACT 1-3 “这是无法预料的。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 对 Pete 提到的将有意外的惊喜之事相报感到很好奇，也对和老朋友们的聚会非常的期待。他决定立刻给 Pete 回电话，告知 Pete 他会去参加这个聚会。

Robbie: He must have loved her very much.

Grandpa: Yes. Very much. Lillian Winters. She was in our class.

Robbie: And what happened?

Grandpa: She was in love with Donald McGrath, the [quarterback](#) on our football team.

Robbie: Football players are always popular with the ladies.

Grandpa: She liked Pete, and they went to dances together. But her heart was with Donald.

Robbie: Did he ever get over it?

Grandpa: No, he never did.

Robbie: Where is she today?

Grandpa: I don't know. Maybe Lillian will be at the [reunion](#).

Robbie: You think so?

Grandpa: Pete's full of surprises.

Robbie: I wish I could go there with you, Grandpa. What do you think the surprise will be?

Grandpa: With Pete, you never know, Robbie.

Robbie: Won't it be exciting to see all your college friends there again?

Grandpa: It is already. I'm kind of excited about going now. [He thinks aloud.] Next weekend... sleep over Friday and Saturday night and come back Sunday. I can't wait!

Robbie: Don't you think you ought to call Pete and tell him you're coming?

Grandpa: You're reading my mind, Robbie.

【语言点精讲】

1. He must have loved her very much.

他（那时）一定是非常爱她。

must have loved: 表示说话人主观的推测，因为所指的事发生于过去，所以 must 后面用 have+过去分词的形式。

2. She was in love with Donald McGrath, the quarterback on our football team.

她爱上了 Donald McGrath，我们橄榄球队的四分卫。

be in love with sb.: 与某人相爱。

quarterback: (橄榄球赛中指挥反攻的) 四分卫。

3. Football players are always popular with the ladies.

橄榄球运动员在女士们面前总是很吃香的。

be popular with sb.: 受某人欢迎，受某人的青睐。

the ladies: 因为 woman 有时显得不够尊重，故美国人更喜欢用 lady。比如说“那位老太太”，通常不用 that old woman，而是说 that old lady。

4. I wish I could go there with you.

我要是能去就好了。

动词 wish 后接表示虚拟语气的从句时，意思是“但愿，要是……就好了”。从句中的动词用过去时。又如：

I wish I were young again. (我要是能返老还童就好了。)

We wish he could come. (他要能来就好了。)

5. With Pete, you never know, Robbie.

you never know: 这是无法预料的。

6. Next weekend... sleep over Friday and Saturday night and come back Sunday.

下一个周末……星期五、星期六晚上住在那儿，星期日回来。

sleep over: 借宿，在别人家里过夜。

7. You're reading my mind.

read my mind: 知道我在想什么，看出我在想什么。这里的 read 表示能猜出或以某种超人的能力知道别人心里在想什么。有这种能力的人称为 mind reader。

ACT 2-1 “你往哪里去？”

【故事梗概】

在驾车去 Pete Waters 的农场的路上，Grandpa 在靠近切斯特顿的一个汽车加油站停下来加油，并意外的从加油站的工作人员那里知道了一条去农场的近路。

Attendant: Hello. What can I do for you?

Grandpa: Hi. Fill 'er up. I need a full tank.

Attendant: Check the hood?

Grandpa: No, thanks.

Attendant: Whereabouts are you headed?

Grandpa: Pete Waters' farm, near Chesterton.

Attendant: I know it well. Pete Waters's lived around here almost as long as I have.

Grandpa: How long is it going to take for me to get here?

Attendant: About fifteen minutes. There's a short cut -- if you know it.

Grandpa: No, I don't. Could you tell me how to use the short cut?

Attendant: Sure. You take the next left turn. You'll see a stop sign. Make a right at the stop sign. Stay on that road, and you'll cross a blue bridge. Then you'll see a big old red barn. That's the back of Pete Waters' place.

Grandpa: That's quite a difference from the directions that Pete sent me.

Attendant: Now, if you take that route, it's probably a lot simpler, but it'll take you ten minutes longer.

【语言点精讲】

1. Fill 'er up. I need a full tank.

Fill'er up: 给车加满汽油。是常用的非正式说法。这是美国特有的俗语，专用于在加油站加油时；'er 是 her 的省略音。为了节约人工，

现在加油站常设顾客自己动手加油的油泵，这句话的使用频率大为降低了。

tank: 汽车上的油箱。

2. Check the hood?

要不要检查一下引擎、机油什么的？

美国是汽车王国，一般家庭都有两部以上的汽车，各地加油站密布，大部分加油站都分自助区 (self service) 和全套服务区 (full service)，前者要顾客自己加油，后者由服务员帮忙加油，并提供擦窗，检查机油等服务，价钱较贵。

3. Whereabouts are you headed?

你往哪里去？

Whereabouts: 哪里，等同于 Where。在美国有些地区习惯于用这个词。

be headed (for a place): 是“朝某处去”，其语言略俗。

4. You take the next left turn. You'll see a stop sign. Make a right at the stop sign. Stay on that road, and you'll cross a blue bridge. Then you'll see a big old red barn. That's the back of Pete Waters' place.

这是加油站的工作人员在告诉 Grandpa 去农场的近路。让我们来看看其中的一些表达。

take the next left turn. : 在下一条路口左转。

a stop sign: 停车标志。在小路与大路交叉的地方，在小路一侧常有写 STOP 的标记，示意车子到此应先停下，看清大路上没有撞车危险后再前进。

make a right : 右转。也可以说“make a right turn”或者 “turn to the right”。

Stay on that road, and you'll cross a blue bridge. : 在那条路上开，你会经过一座蓝色的桥。

barn: 是美国农场上的大牲口棚，下层栓大牲口，上层贮饲草。有时旁边还有一圆柱塔形建筑，贮藏饲料。亦指贮谷物的建筑物，谷棚。

5. Now, if you take that route, it's probably a lot simpler, but it'll take you ten minutes longer.

喏，你要是走那条路线，可能简单得多，可是要多花 10 分钟的时间。

a lot simpler: 简单得多。在比较级上添加表示程度或幅度的状语时，要加在比较级的前面，又如: a little harder (有一点难)，much bigger (大得多)，an inch longer (长出一英寸)，somewhat quicker (多少快一些)。

ACT 2-2 “该付你多少钱？”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 决定走加油站的工作人员告诉他的近路。在结过账之后，他继续向 Pete 的农场开去。

Grandpa: OK. Let me repeat it. I take the next left turn to the stop sign. Then a right across a blue bridge, and then a big red barn.

Attendant: Can't miss it.

Grandpa: How much do I owe you?

Attendant: Well, that'll be eighteen dollars and seventy cents. No charge for the cleanup. It's on the house.

[Grandpa takes a twenty-dollar bill from his pocket and hands it to the attendant.]

Grandpa: Well, here's a twenty.

Attendant: Ah. OK. That's a dollar and thirty cents change. There we go ... will make twenty. Thanks.

Grandpa: Thank you. And thanks for the directions. [He gets back into the car and drives away. He thinks aloud as he follows the attendant's directions.] This must be Pete's barn. Turn right to the house.

【语言点精讲】

1. OK. Let me repeat it. I take the next left turn to the stop sign. Then a right across a blue bridge, and then a big red barn.

好吧，让我来复述一下。在下一个路口向左拐弯，开到停车标志，然后向右拐弯，开过一座蓝色的桥，再后就是一座红色的大牲口棚。

Let me repeat it. : 让我来复述一下。问路后可以通过简单重述的方式来确认自己的理解是正确的。

2. Can't miss it.

你不会找不到的。这是口语中指路时，常用到的说法。

3. How much do I owe you?

该付你多少钱？这是付款或还钱时常用的说法。

4. Well, that'll be eighteen dollars and seventy cents.

应付 18 美元 70 美。

that'll be...: 费用是....., 应该付.....。售货员或侍者在售货或提供某项服务之后, 要告诉顾客需付的费用, 这时, 常用这个词语。

5. No charge for the cleanup. It's on the house.

洗车不要钱, 我们白送。

no charge: 无需付钱。免费。汽车加油时附带奉送擦洗车子的服务, 现在只是在乡间偶尔见之。

It's on the house. : 本店请客。本店代为支付费用。商店或饭馆有免费奉送的服务或赠送时, 常用此语。the house 指“本店”。on 指由谁承担价款。个人也可以用, 例如, The lunch is on me. (午饭我请客。)

6. That's a dollar and thirty cents change. There we go... will make twenty.

找你 1 美元 30 美分。找给你.....凑足 20 美元。

There will go... will make twenty. : 这里包含了中西文化上的一个奇特的差异。西方在找钱时, 不是在脑子里算出差额, 按差额找钱, 而是以价格为底数, 然后将找头逐步加上去直到凑足所给的大票数目为止。

ACT 2-3 “就在那边。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 向一个农场工人问路, 确认了 Pete 的房子的位置。到达后, 他在门上看到了 Pete 留下的字条。

Grandpa: [He stops the car to ask a farm worker for [directions](#) to Pete's house.]Hi.

Worker: Hi. What can I do for you?

Grandpa: Is this the Pete Waters farm?

Worker: It is.

Grandpa: I'm a friend of Pete's. I'm looking for the house.

Worker: It's just over [yonder](#). [He points.] Keep along this road till you get to the end of the fence. You'll see the chicken house. His house is on the left.

Grandpa: Well, thanks.

[A little later. Grandpa arrives at Pete's house. He reads a note that Pete has left on the front door for him.]

Grandpa: "Have gone to the rail-road station. Back soon with a surprise. Make yourself at home. Have a look around. Pete. "[He laughs.] Same old Pete Waters. Always full of surprises.

【语言点精讲】

1. What can I do for you?

这是一位农场工人在和 Grandpa 打招呼。“What can I do for you?”可以用来和人打招呼, 尤其是当这个人很明显是在找什么的时候。

2. I'm a friend of Pete's. I'm looking for the house.

我是 Pete 的朋友, 我在找他的家。

a friend of Pete's: 这里使用的是名词的双重所有格, 等同于“one of Pete's friends”。

look for: 这里的意思是“寻找”。

3. It's just over yonder.

就在那边。

over yonder: 在那边。在美国, 有些地区用这种非正式说法。

4. Keep along this road till you get to the end of the fence. You'll see the chicken house. His house is on the left.

一直顺着这条路走, 直走到栅栏尽头, 就看见鸡棚了。他的房子在左边。

keep along this road till...: 一直顺着这条路走直到.....

fence: 栅栏, 篱笆。

be on the left: 在左边, 在左手边。

5. Have gone to the rail-road station. Back soon with a surprise. Make yourself at home. Have a look around.

到火车站去了。很快回来, 会给你带来意外的惊喜。请不要客气。到处看一看。

这时 Pete 留在门上的字条的内容。写便条的时候, 通常是不加主语的。这段话的完整形式应该是“I have gone to the rail-road station.

I will be back soon with a surprise. Please make yourself at home. You can have a look around.”

Make yourself at home. : 请随便; 不要拘束; 像在自己家里一样。招待客人时常用的句子。

Have a look around. : 到处看一看。等同于“Look around.”

ACT 3-1 “我知道你是谁。”

【故事梗概】

在 Pete Waters 的农场上, Grandpa 四面看看, 等着 Pete 回来。稍后, 一辆汽车来到, 是另外的两个老朋友 Peggy 和 Arnold。他们同 Grandpa 打招呼。

Arnold: Don't tell me. Please don't tell me. I recognize you ...

Peggy: Oh, don't be silly, Arnie. Of course you recognize him. Except for the beard, he hasn't changed in fifty years. It's Malcolm Stewart!

Arnold: I know it's Malcolm Stewart. You haven't changed much in fifty years.

Grandpa: Peggy -- Peggy Pendleton! You're Peggy Pendleton!

Arnold: Who am I, You old rascal? You don't recognize me, do you?

Grandpa: I know who you are. You're Arnold Franklin! I know who you are!

Peggy: You look wonderful, Malcolm!

Grandpa: [He walks with them to an outdoor table.] Sit down. Sit down. Pete isn't home.

Arnold: Really?

Grandpa: No. He left a note on the door saying he was going to the railroad station to pick up a surprise.

Peggy: He's so funny. Always full of surprises, even fifty years later.

Grandpa: The two of you look unbelievable!

【语言点精讲】

1. Oh, don't be silly, Arnie. Of course you recognize him. Except for the beard, he hasn't changed in fifty years.

噢, Arnie, 别傻了, 你当然认识他。他除了留了胡子以外, 50 年来一点也没有变样。silly: 傻的。

recognize: 有“承认”和“认出”两义。此处用后者。

except for : 除了...外; 除去, 撇开。

he hasn't changed in fifty years: 美国人最忌讳被说老了, 也最喜欢别人夸自己年轻。所以这几个老朋友见面就夸对方“50 年来一点也没有变样”。后面出现的“The two of you look unbelievable!”也是在称赞对方看起来样子真年轻, “叫人不敢相信!”

2. Who am I, you old rascal?

我是谁啊, 你这个老家伙?

rascal: 愿意是指“无赖, 恶棍, 流氓”。这里是开玩笑的口气。

3. I know who you are.

我知道你是谁。

疑问句, 如“Who are you? / Where is it? / What can we do?”在复合句中成为从句时, 应改为陈述句形式, 例如:

I know who you are.

I don't know where it is.

Ask him what we can do.

4. He walks with them to an outdoor table.

他同他们一起走到室外一张桌子旁。

outdoor: 户外的, 露天的。outdoor 是形容词, 相应的副词是 outdoors。如“He likes outdoor life. He spends a lot of time outdoors.”与之相对的“室内”是“indoor, indoors”。

5. Pete isn't home. -- Really? -- No. He left a note on the door saying he was going to the railroad station to pick up a surprise.

Pete 不在家。-- 真的吗? -- 是的。他在门上留了张条子, 说他到火车站去给我们带一个惊喜来。

No.: 在这里的意思是“是的, 他不在家。”对于否定句的回答, 英文的习惯和汉语的不同, 要注意区别。

leave a note: 留一个便条, 留张字条。便条、信件以及通知之类的上面写了什么, 要用动词 say。

6. He's so funny.

他很有趣。

funny: 是个口语常用词, 修饰事物时, 通常指可笑的、滑稽的和古怪的。指人时, 可用于褒义, 亦可用于贬义。

ACT 3-2 “这有可能是任何东西。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 在和 Arnold 和 Peggy 聊天, 他们都对 Pete 提到的那个“惊喜”感到好奇。这时 Pete 回来了, 他带来了另一位他们的老朋友 Lillian Winters 女士。

Arnold: How's your family? Oh, I was sorry to hear about your wife having passed away.

Grandpa: Yes. About four years ago.

Peggy: And you're living with your children now? In New York? Pete wrote us and told us.

Grandpa: Yup. Retired and moved to New York to live with my son and his family.

Peggy: By the way, what do you think this big surprise is?

Arnold: It could be most anything, knowing Pete.

[Another car arrives.]

Grandpa: Hey, that must be Pete! Now we'll find out about the surprise.

[They go to meet the car.]

Pete: So good to see you all!

Peggy: Oh, Pete, Pete! Oh, it's so good to see you!

Pete: Remember Lillian?

Lillian: I remember all of you. You haven't changed a bit.

Peggy: Lillian! Oh, my gosh!

Arnold: Lillian Winters. We were together in the Thursday night drama society.

【语言点精讲】

1. Oh, I was sorry to hear about your wife having passed away.

噢, 我听说你夫人已经故去了, 感到很难过。

hear about: 听说; 得知。

pass away: 死去, 去世, 逝世。pass away 是 die 的委婉说法。类似的说法还有“pass on”以及“no longer with us”。

2. Yup.

这是 Yes 的口语表达方式。

3. By the way, what do you think this big surprise is?

我问一下, 你认为这叫人意想不到的事是什么?

by the way: 顺便说说, 顺便问一下。by the way 是常用的插入语, 在提到临时想到的事, 与当时所说的话题无关的事, 或对已说的话添加一些说明时使用。

4. It could be most anything, knowing Pete.

知道 Pete 这个人（的脾气），就知道这有可能是任何东西。意思是说，Pete 这个人点子多，他说的惊喜到底是什么，这很难猜准了。

knowing Pete: 这里的动词现在分词短语起状语作用，表示原因。

5. Oh, my gosh!

啊呀，天哪。

这句话用来表示惊奇。gosh 是为了避免直接说 God 而转的音。

6. You haven't changed a bit.

你们一点也没有变。这也是久别重逢时常用的寒暄语。

7. We were together in the Thursday night drama society.

我们当年一起参加周四晚上的戏剧社。

society: 这里指的是社团，团体。

ACT 3-3 “我无论如何都不会错过这个聚会。”

【故事梗概】

在享受老友重聚的欢乐的同时，大家都对 Pete 所说的惊喜非常好奇，并急于知道答案。

Lillian: Remember me, Malcolm?

Grandpa: Oh, beautiful as ever, Lillian. How's Donald? [He suddenly realizes that he has said the wrong thing.]

Lillian: That's OK, Malcolm. Donald passed away a couple of years ago.

Arnold: Sorry to hear that, Lillian.

Peggy: Oh, I'm so sorry.

Arnold: I would not have missed this **get-together** for the world!

Grandpa: And your little surprise, Pete? You really surprised me by having us all come together.

Pete: You don't know what the surprise is yet? Come on! We'll tell you the big surprise.

[They walk back to the table with Pete. Pete **pours** iced tea for them.]

Pete: I've invited you here for the weekend to help **celebrate**.

Peggy: Celebrate?

Grandpa: Our fiftieth **reunion**?

Arnold: No.

Lillian: No. Pete wants to tell you ...

Pete: Now, let me have the honor, Lillian.

【语言点精讲】

1. Oh, beautiful as ever, Lillian.

噢，Lillian，你还是那么美丽。

as ever: 一直，依旧。

2. I would not have missed this get-together for the world!

我无论如何都不会错过这个聚会。

I would not have missed ... for the world! : 这是个非正式的说法。当你要表达乐于参加某一活动时，可以用这种表达方式。

for the world: 是强调语，用在否定句中时表示“无论如何”，用在肯定句中时表示“每一方面都，从各方面来看都”，也可以说“for all the world”。

3. I've invited you here for the weekend to help celebrate.

我请你们大家到这儿来度周末，是想让你们帮助庆祝一下。

for the weekend: 度周末。

celebrate: 庆祝。

4. Our fiftieth reunion?

reunion: 在美国, 同班同学通常都会聚会。这种聚会一般是从高中或大学毕业后的五或十年开始, 以后每隔五年聚一次, 通常在 6 月份, 即学校举行毕业典礼的时候进行。很多人都喜欢和老同班同学聚会, 来重温友谊, 缅怀过去。不过, 也有人因久不相见怕会感到不自在而回避这种聚会。

5. Now, let me have the honor, Lillian.

let me have the honor: 请让我有做这件事的荣幸, 请允许我来做这件事。这是非常客气的话。have the honor: 荣幸地, 有幸地。

ACT 3-4 “看在上帝面上!”

【故事梗概】

Pete 向他的老朋友宣布, 他已经和 Lillian 在两周之前结婚了, 他们以后将一起生活在他的农场。大家都祝福 Lillian 和 Pete。

Grandpa: For goodness' sake, Pete, tell us! I can't wait much longer.

Pete: Well, I am pouring this iced tea so that we can toast Lillian -- and me.

Peggy: You don't mean to tell me that you and ...

Pete: Yes, I do. I have loved Lillian all these years, so I asked her to be Mrs. Pete Waters.

Lillian: And I said yes.

Grandpa: I knew it! I knew it! Congratulations!

Peggy: Oh, Lillian, I am so happy for you both.

Arnold: It's wonderful!

Pete: It's wonderful for me. Lillian will make me a happy man -- finally.

Grandpa: You are full of surprises, Pete.

Pete: We are going to spend the entire weekend having a good time together here on the farm. We are going to celebrate all weekend.

Peggy: When is the wedding?

Pete: That's another surprise. Lillian and I were married two weeks ago in Detroit. She's come here to stay.

Grandpa: Wait till I tell my family about this!

Peggy: [to Lillian] Why, that's wonderful!

[They all congratulate Lillian and Pete.]

【语言点精讲】

1. For goodness' sake, Pete, tell us! I can't wait much longer.

看在上帝面上, Pete, 快告诉我们吧! 我可迫不及待了。

For goodness' sake!: 看在上帝的份上! goodness 是为了避免使用 God 显得不敬而使用的替换词。也可以说“for heaven's sake”。

I can't wait much longer.: 我迫不及待了。我再也等不及了。也可以说“I can't wait any more.”

2. Well, I am pouring this iced tea so that we can toast Lillian -- and me.

好吧, 我在斟冰镇红茶, 是为了能为 Lillian——和我来祝酒。

pour (tea): 斟茶。

toast: 为……举杯祝酒。

3. You don't mean to tell me that you and ...

你莫不是要告诉我说你和……

4. I knew it!

我早就知道了!

5. Lillian will make me a happy man -- finally.

Lillian 终于将使 我 成为一个幸福的人了。

make me a happy man: 使我成为一个幸福的人。a happy man 是宾语补足语。这里的 make 是“使人, 令人, 任命”的意思, 在宾语后带名词或形容词补语, 或带动词原形。

6. When is the wedding?

婚礼什么时候举行呢？

is: 这里的一般现在时 is 相当于 is going to be, 表示已决定在较近的将来做的事。

wedding: 婚礼。

7. Lillian and I were married two weeks ago in Detroit.

Lillian 和我两星期前就在底特律结了婚。

Detroit: 底特律, 位于美国密歇根州 (Michigan)。Detroit 是一座重要的港口城市、世界传统汽车中心、音乐之都。

8. Wait till I tell my family about this!

等我把这件事告诉我家里人! 这里的言外之意是“我的家人都会感到非常惊讶的。”

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 17 课: 大功告成

ACT 1-1 “想让影集出版会遇到不少困难吗?”

【故事梗概】

一天晚上, Richard 坐在家里的楼梯上, 他在看一些他给各表演艺术中心拍摄的照片。Marilyn 走下楼来, 她停下脚步帮助 Richard 审查这一批照片。

Marilyn: What are you doing'?

Richard: [He looks at his photographs.] I think I've got them.

Marilyn: You think you've got what?

Richard: Performing arts - performing arts centers. I think I've got them all, but I'm not sure.

Marilyn: [She looks at the photographs.] I think you have got it, Richard. Lincoln Center, home of the [Metropolitan Opera](#), the New York City [Ballet](#), the New York [Philharmonic](#).

Richard: Shubert [Alley](#) center of the theater on [Broadway](#).

Marilyn: And Carnegie Hall. And the Kennedy Center for the Performing Arts in Washington.

Richard: And the Music Center in Los Angeles. And the others. I do have it all.

Marilyn: You have been working on this for some time, Richard. I'm glad you feel you've finally put it all together. What now?

Richard: Now for the hard part.

Marilyn: Oh, you think you're going to have a hard time getting the album published?

Richard: Well, it won't be easy.

【语言点精讲】

1. I think I've got them.

我认为该拍的我都拍到了。get 的意思较多。这里表示“抓住了事物的本质或要点, 得到了所期的收获”。

2. You think you've got what?

你认为该拍的什么你都拍到了? 这是在口语中使用的非正式的句法, 仅将对方话中的某个要提问的部分变为疑问词, 对代词作适当改动, 而不变更其语序。

3. Performing arts - performing arts centers.

performing arts: 表演艺术。包括舞蹈、歌剧、戏剧、音乐方面的表演。

performing arts centers: 表演艺术中心。表演艺术中心。是能观看多种表演艺术的地方。

4. I think you have got it, Richard. Lincoln Center, home of the Metropolitan Opera, the New York City Ballet, the New York Philharmonic.

我认为你的确拍到了, Richard, 林肯中心, 大都会歌剧团的团址, 纽约市芭蕾舞团, 纽约爱乐交响乐团。

Lincoln Center: 林肯中心。是纽约市最大的表演艺术中心。

Metropolitan Opera: 大都会歌剧院。大都会歌剧院的第一次演出是在 1883 年, 在纽约的另一个地区。歌剧院于 1966 年迁到林肯中心。

New York City Ballet: 纽约市芭蕾舞团。这个团以表演芭蕾大师 Geroge Balanchine 的作品而闻名。

New York Philharmonic: 纽约爱乐交响乐团。这是美国最老的管弦乐团。它的首次演出是在 1842 年。

5. Shubert Alley, center of the theater on Broadway.

舒伯特街, 百老汇大街剧院的中心。

Shubert Alley: 舒伯特街, 位于 Manhattan, 在 Shubert Theater 附近。从 1914 年到 1950 年, Shubert 家族控制着美国的大部分戏剧活动。

Broadway: 百老汇。许多大剧院都在百老汇大道附近。Broadway show 是指在这里的任何一家大戏院所上演的节目。

6. And Carnegie Hall. And the Kennedy Center for the Performing Arts in Washington.

还有卡耐基音乐厅, 还有华盛顿的肯尼迪表演艺术中心。

Carnegie Hall: 卡耐基音乐厅。位于 Manhattan 的这幢建筑物的大厅, 是特地为现代交响乐团演出而修建的第一座音乐大厅。

Kennedy Center for the Performing Arts: 肯尼迪表演艺术中心。肯尼迪表演艺术中心是美国政府创建的。在肯尼迪总统逝世后, 该中心为纪念他而更名。

Washington: 这里指的是 Washington, D.C. (华盛顿特区), 是美国的首都。

7. And the Music Center in Los Angeles.

Music Center in Los Angeles: 洛杉矶音乐中心。

8. You have been working on this for some time.

你为这个干了好一段时间了。

some time: 相当一段时间。

9. I'm glad you feel you've finally put it all together.

我很高兴你感到终于都安排就绪了。

put it all together: 安排就绪。

10. Oh, you think you're going to have a hard time getting the album published?

噢, 你是认为要想让影集出版会遇到不少困难吗? Marilyn 猜到了 Richard 心中在发愁的事, 可以说 "She's reading his mind."

get the album published: 使影集出版。Richard 想找人出版他的影集, 但执行"出版影集"这一动作的人并不是 Richard。用"动词 get 或者 have+名词词组+过去分词"表示使某物遭受到某种行动, 或使某事被人做到。此时句子的主语对某一行为负有责任, 但不是这一行为的执行者。

have a hard time doing something: 做某事很困难。

ACT 1-2 "它已经相当完备了。"

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 认为 Richard 的摄影作品已经准备得很充分了。在她的鼓励下, Richard 决定去见出版商。

Marilyn: So, what do you think you're going to do?

Richard: Does the name Harvey Carlson ring a bell?

Marilyn: Oh, yes! Harvey Carlson! I remember.

Richard: He said I should call him. He's the publisher of the Carlson Publishing Company. He said they need a new book of photographs, and he really liked my concept.

Marilyn: So, why don't you call him in the morning?

Richard: Do you think I have enough to show him?

Marilyn: I've been through every section with you, Richard. It's quite complete. And now that you're satisfied with the performing arts section, I think you should show it to Mr. Carlson.

Richard: You're right. My Family Album, U.S.A. feels right. I'll call in the morning and set up an appointment to see him.

Marilyn: He's going to love your work. Come on. Let's get some sleep.

【语言点精讲】

1. Does the name Harvey Carlson ring a bell?

你对 Harvey Carlson 这个名字有印象吗？

ring a bell: 这是很形象化的说法，但很常用，指一提到某人或某地的名字，脑中好像敲响了一声钟，使人想起来了。

2. He said they need a new book of photographs, and he really liked my concept.

他说过他们需要一本新的影集，还说他确实喜欢我的构思。

concept: 想法，思想，观念。

3. I've been through every section with you, Richard. It's quite complete. And now that you're satisfied with the performing arts section, I think you should show it to Mr. Carlson.

我已经和你一起审阅过每一部分了，Richard。它已经相当完备了，现在你既然对表演艺术这一部分感到满意，我认为你可以把全书拿给 Carlson 先生看了。

be through: 表示“读过，看过，经历过，检查或回顾过”等。又例如，“They've been through thick and thin together.”（他们共历了艰难困苦。）

be satisfied with something: 对某事感到满意

section: 部分。在这里相当于“part”。

now that: 连词，表示“既然”。又例如，“Now that everyone is here, we'll get down to business.”（现在既然人已经到齐了，让我们开始谈正事吧。）

4. You're right. My Family Album, U.S.A. feels right. I'll call in the morning and set up an appointment to see him.

你说得对，《走遍美国》这本书现在的样子看来已经可以了。我明天早上给他打电话安排同他会晤。

My Family Album, U.S.A. feels right. : 我觉得《走遍美国》这本书已经不错了。书是不会有感觉的，这里的 feel 表示某事物作用于人的感觉，但不用被动而用主动语态。

set up an appointment: 安排约会，会见。相当于“to arrange an appointment”。

ACT 1-3 “他很想见你。”

【故事梗概】

第二天早上，Richard 给出版商 Carlson 先生打了电话预约了一次会面。Richard 和 Marilyn 都为即将去见出版商这件事而感到兴奋。

Richard: Is it too early to call Mr. Carlson?

Marilyn: Seven after nine? No. I'm sure he's in his office.

Richard: His number is five, five, five, seven, five, three, two. [He dials.]. Five, five, five, seven, five, three, two. Hello. Mr. Carlson, please.

Receptionist: Mr. Carlson is busy at the moment. May I help you?

Richard: I'd like to make an appointment with him.

Receptionist: And your name is...

Richard: My name is Richard Stewart. He told me to call him about my project, Family Album, U. S.A.

Receptionist: One moment, please.

Marilyn: What's going on?

Richard: I guess they're trying to set up an appointment for me.

Receptionist: Mr. Stewart, I just spoke to Mr. Carlson. He would like to see you. But the only time he's available this week is tomorrow morning at ten o'clock.

Richard: Thanks. Thanks a lot. Good-bye. [He hangs up the phone and dances with Marilyn.] Well, it's done. Tomorrow morning at a publisher's office.

Marilyn: Oh, it's so exciting, isn't it, Richard?

Richard: Well, finally a publisher will see my work.

【语言点精讲】

1. Is it too early to call Mr. Carlson?

现在给 Carlson 先生打电话是不是太早了些？

too+ 形容词或副词+ to do: 表示由于过分如何而不宜做某事。

2. He told me to call him about my project, Family Album, U. S.A.

他曾经叫我打电话给他谈一谈我的一本叫作《走遍美国》的书的方案。

project: 这里指“方案，工作计划，一项工作”。

3. One moment, please.

请等一下。 也可以说“One minute please.”

4. I guess they're trying to set up an appointment for me.

我猜想他们在设法为我安排一次约见。

try to do something: 设法做某事，试图做某事。

set up an appointment for : 为...安排一次约见。

5. Mr. Stewart, I just spoke to Mr. Carlson. He would like to see you. But the only time he's available this week is tomorrow morning at ten o'clock.

Stewart 先生，我刚同 Carlson 先生说了，他很想见你。可是本周他惟一有空的时间是明天上午 10 点。

He would like to see you.: 在口语中，(he) would like 常用缩略形式 (he)'d like。这里把经常被缩略的助动词分离出来加以重读，表示强调。

ACT 2-1 “他可以见你了。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 到了出版商 Carlson 先生的办公室。Carlson 先生准备好见他了。

Receptionist: Good morning.

Richard: Good morning. My name is Richard Stewart. I'm here to see Mr. Carlson.

Receptionist: Please sit down, Mr. Stewart. Mr. Carlson will be with you **shortly**.

Richard: Thank you.

Receptionist: [She speaks into the telephone.] Excuse me, Mr. Carlson, but Richard Stewart is here for his ten o'clock **appointment** with you. OK. Thank you. [She hangs up the phone.] Like I said, he'll be with you shortly.

Richard: Thank you.

[The intercom **buzzes**.]

Receptionist: [She picks up the phone .] Yes, Mr. Carlson. Yes, sir. [She hangs up the phone.]. He's ready for you, Mr. Stewart.

Richard: Thank you. [He points to the door of Mr. Carlson's office.] In there?

Receptionist: Yes. In there. Good luck.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'm here to see Mr. Carlson.

我来见 Carlson 先生。赴约时可用这个表达。

2. Mr. Carlson will be with you shortly.

Carlson 先生一会儿就可以见你。这是请人稍等的常用说法。

3. Excuse me, Mr. Carlson, but Richard Stewart is here for his ten o'clock appointment with you.

打扰一下，Carlson 先生，Richard Stewart 来赴 10 点钟同你的约会了。

4. Like I said, he'll be with you shortly.

正如我所说的，他一会儿就可以见你。

Like I said: 正如我所说。正确的说法是 As I said，在口语中很多人用 like 代替 as。

5. He's ready for you, Mr. Stewart.

他可以见你了，Stewart 先生。

ACT 2-2 “还缺少点儿东西。”

【故事梗概】

Carlson 先生在办公室会见了 Richard，他翻阅了 Richard 的相片集。Carlson 先生很喜欢 Richard 的作品，但是他指出这本相片集还少了一些东西。

Carlson: Come in, come in. This is a crazy morning. Hello, Richard.

Richard: Hello, Mr. Carlson.

Carlson: Sit down, sit down.

Richard: Thank you for seeing me on such short notice.

Carlson: I hope you've brought your pictures along. [He sees Richard's album.] I see that you have. Let's get right to it. We need a new coffee-table book, and a book of photos about the United States still feels right. OK, let's take a look. [Richard gives him the album, and Mr. Carlson looks at the photographs.] Good. Very good. Family Album, U. S. A. It's an excellent title. If you had to describe the book in one sentence, how would you do it?

Richard: Well, I'd describe it as a book which is a ... a portrait of the United States -- the places, the people -- mostly the people. The things they do, the ways they live, the places they visit, and the landmarks. A photographic journey.

Carlson: These are wonderful -- these photos in your performing arts section. Carnegie Hall, Lincoln Center.

Richard: I'm glad you like them.

Carlson: I do. but ...

Richard: But?

Carlson: There's something missing.

【语言点精讲】

1. This is a crazy morning.

今天上午可把人忙得头昏脑胀。

a crazy morning: 忙得令人头昏的上午。这里意思相当于“a very busy morning”。这是说自己很忙的常用表达。也可以说 a wild morning.

2. Thank you for seeing me on such short notice.

谢谢你这么快就安排见我。

on such short notice: 这里的意思是指通知对方后在很短的时间内。on notice 意谓预先告知。

3. I hope you've brought your pictures along.

我希望你把照片都带来了。

bring sth. along: 随身带来某物。

4. We need a new coffee-table book, and a book of photos about the United States still feels right.

我们需要一本新的茶几图书，而现在出一本美国情况的影集仍是令人感到合适的。

coffee-table book: 摆在客厅茶几上的图书。这种书通常图文并茂，印刷精美，因此常常放在客厅里沙发前的矮几上，供客人翻阅。

still: 在这里表示“尽管有……的情况，还是……的。”言外之意是这类画册已经不稀罕了。

5. If you had to describe the book in one sentence, how would you do it?

如果请你必须只用一句话描写这本书，你会怎么说？

这句话用的是虚拟语气。

6. Well, I'd describe it as a book which is a ... a portrait of the United States -- the places, the people -- mostly the people. The things they do, the ways they live, the places they visit, and the landmarks. A photographic journey.

嗯，我会把它描述为一幅……一幅美国的肖像——各个地方，人——主要是人。他们做的事，他们生活的方式，他们参观的地方，还有各

处的地标风景。一次通过照片作的旅游。

portrait: 原意为人的肖像, 这里是很巧妙的借喻, 指对美国生活的生动的描写。

landmarks: 标志, 陆标, 地标。例如, 自由女神像就是著名的纽约市标志。

journey: 旅行。通常是指长途旅行。

7. There's something missing.

还缺少点儿东西。

There's + 名词 + 形容词是常用句型, 又如:

There's something wrong in what he said. (他的话里有些错误。)

Is there anything interesting in today's paper? (今天的报纸里有什么有趣的报道吗?)

ACT 2-3 “我不会让你失望的。”

【故事梗概】

Carlson 指出, Richard 的作品中还缺少街头表演这一块内容, 并给了他两个星期去补这一块。Carlson 曾诺会出版 Richard 的作品, 如果新拍的照片也同样精彩的话。

Carlson: You've got a good eye, Richard. You're a terrific photographer. But before I can publish your work, I need to meet with my marketing department. And you've got to do one more thing.

Richard: What's that, Mr. Carlson?

Carlson: In the section on culture, you've included performing arts centers, but you've left out street performance. The mimes. The musicians. The dancers -- in the parks and on the streets. Richard, if you go out and photograph street performances in the city, you'll have it.

Richard: That is a great idea. The performing arts centers and the street performances. I'll do it.

Carlson: If you do it. I'll publish your work.

Richard: Are you serious?

Carlson: I've never been more serious. When do you think you can return with street performances?

Richard: A couple of weeks.

Carlson: If they're as good as the rest of these pictures, it's a deal.

Richard: You won't be disappointed, Mr. Carlson. Thanks.

Carlson: Good-bye, Richard, and good luck. See you in two weeks.

Richard: Good-bye, Mr. Carlson. Thanks. So if you like the street-performance photos, you'll really publish Family Album, U.S.A.?

Carlson: When I say something, I mean it. Go to work. Good-bye.

Richard: Good-bye.

【语言点精讲】

1. You've got a good eye, Richard. You're a terrific photographer.

你有敏锐的眼光, Richard, 你是一位了不起的摄影家。

have got: 等同于 have。

eye: 单数的 eye 指眼光, 以眼睛进行辨别取舍的能力等, 而不是指具体的眼睛视力。类似的用法又如,

My daughter has a good ear for music. (这里的 ear 指用耳朵、凭听力鉴赏音乐的能力。)

A detective must have a good nose for criminals. (这里的 nose 指侦察追寻的能力。)

2. In the section on culture, you've included performing arts centers, but you've left out street performance.

在文化的那部分, 你把表演艺术中心包括进去了, 可是你把街头表演给遗漏了。

leave out: 漏掉了。

street performance: 街头表演。这在美国是一种很受欢迎的艺术形式。在美国的大城小镇都可见到业余的音乐工作者、舞者、哑剧

表演者。表演者常放一顶帽子或一个打开的乐器盒，供听众或观众放钱入内。一般观众对这些表演者常会给予相当的鼓励。表演终了时，通常会报以热烈的掌声，捐钱的也不乏其人。

3. Richard, if you go out and photograph street performances in the city, you'll have it.

Richard，如果你出去给市内街头的表演都照下来，那就万物具备了。

if you go out and photograph...: 假如你去……。在由 if 引导的条件状语从句中，动词用现在时表示将来可能发生的事。

photograph 在这里用作动词，指“为……拍照”。

4. Are you serious?

你是当真的吗？serious: 这里指“当真的；不是开玩笑的”。

在这里这样问，说明 Richard 自信力较差。在正式的业务商谈中是不该这样问的。Carlson 先生回答了“I've never been more serious.”（我再也没有比这更认真的了。）

但是随后 Richard 又追问了一次。此时在 Carlson 先生的回答“When I say something, I mean it.”（我说话是算数的。）中多少有点不太高兴的味道。

5. When do you think you can return with street performances?

你什么时候能带着街头表演的照片再来见我？

When do you think you can...?: 这是商务会晤中的常用句型，用来询问某项工作何时完成。

6. If they're as good as the rest of these pictures, it's a deal.

如果照片的质量和其余的一样好，这就算讲定了。

7. You won't be disappointed.

我不会让你失望的。这是答应完成任务时或承担一项工作时常说的表示保证的话。

8. See you in two weeks.

两星期后再见。

ACT 3-1 “我确实干得不错。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 在曼哈顿的林肯中心外面拍摄街头表演者的照片。Mariyn 来找他共进午餐。Richard 觉得他的照片拍得差不多了，他决定星期一再去见出版商 Carlson 先生。Richard 利用余下的底片抢拍 Marilyn。

Richard: Two weeks. I said I could do it in two weeks, and I did it.

Marilyn: The pictures you've taken are **fabulous**, Richard. Mr. Carlson will love them.

Richard: Monday morning. I'm going to show him the photos on Monday morning. I can't wait!

Marilyn: I'm very proud of you. You really did a beautiful job. I know he will love the new photographs for your book.

Richard: Yeah. I really did do a good job, didn't I? Hey, you know? There's still some film left on this **roll**, and there's one person I haven't photographed in a long time.

Marilyn: Who?

Richard: You. [He starts to photograph her.]

Marilyn: Richard! I haven't **brushed** my hair. [She runs away from him.]

Richard: You look great! [He runs after her and continues to take pictures of her.]

Marilyn: It's not fair, Richard. I'm not even ready.

Richard: Oh, that's wonderful! That's wonderful!

【语言点精讲】

1. I said I could do it in two weeks, and I did it.

我说过我过两个星期能完成，现在做到了。

I said I could do it. : 我说过我能完成。这是一句间接引语。在间接引语中，被引用的部分应与前面的时态一致。

2. The pictures you've taken are fabulous.

你拍的照片精采极了。

fabulous: 精彩的, 极好的。

3. I'm very proud of you. You really did a beautiful job. I know he will love the new photographs for your book.

我为你感到非常自豪。你真的干了一件质量很高的工作, 我知道他会很喜欢你为影集新拍的照片的。

be proud of sb.: 为某人感到骄傲。

4. I really did do a good job, didn't I ?

我确实干得不错, 不是吗?

did do a good job: did 在句中起加强语气的作用, 应重读。job 指某一件“活儿”, 前面的形容词可以变化, 如: do a bad job / do a perfect job / do a careless job 等。形容词不表示工作本身的性质, 而是表示这件活儿完成的质量如何。

5. There's still some film left on this roll, and there's one person I haven't photographed in a long time.

这卷胶卷上还剩下几张没有照掉。有一个人我好久没有给她照相了。

film: 这里指胶卷。roll: 卷。

6. I haven't brushed my hair.

我还没有梳头发。

brush one's hair: 梳头。

7. It's not fair.

这样不公平。这里 Marilyn 的意思是“你没有考虑我的意愿”。她没有特意打扮过, 不愿意 Richard 给她拍照。

ACT 3-2 “它们代表了你最优秀的成绩。”

【故事梗概】

在 Carlson 先生的办公室里, Carlson 先生在看 Richard 拍摄的街头表演艺术家的照片。他对这些照片非常满意, 当场拍板定案, 决定出版 Richard 的作品。

Carlson: Wonderful!

Richard: Thanks.

Carlson: Fabulous!

Richard: Thanks.

Carlson: Terrific!

Richard: Thanks.

Carlson: They get better and better.

Richard: Thanks a lot.

Carlson: This is sensational!

Richard: Yeah. Thanks.

Carlson: What a job! Good work, Richard!

Richard: I'm so glad you like them so much.

Carlson: Like them? They represent your best work.

Richard: Really?

Carlson: Absolutely.

Richard: Well... what do you think? Do have my book?

Carlson: You do. You do. There's a book here. I'll have a contract and an advance payment waiting for you first thing in the morning.

Richard: Thank you.

Carlson: And while you're here, I would like to introduce you to your editor. And I want you to meet the people in the

art department. I'll set up an appointment with the marketing people.

Richard: When do you think we'll be through?

Carlson: In about half an hour Why?

Richard: I can't wait to tell Marilyn!

【语言点精讲】

1. They get better and better.

这些照片一张比一张好。

better and better: 越来越好，一张比一张好。and 连接形容词的比较级，表示“越来越”。

2. This is sensational!

这太妙了！

sensational: 非常好的；使人感动的。

3. What a job! Good work, Richard!

干得真好！优秀的作品啊，Richard！

1-3 以及文中出现的 Wonderful! Fabulous! Terrific! 都是用来赞美别人的表达方式。Carlson 先生用了一系列的句子来表达他对 Richard 的作品的满意。美国人彼此之间，意思的表达比较直截了当，觉得对方工作成果让自己满意时，通常会立即称赞，有缺点时也会及时提出改善的建议，尤其在公务上更是如此。被称赞的人，一般都会表现得受之无愧，当仁不让。

4. They represent your best work.

它们代表了你最优秀的成绩。

represent: 代表，体现。

5. I'll have a contract and an advance payment waiting for you first thing in the morning.

明天一早，我就会搞出一份合同和一笔预付版税等着你。

contract: 合同，契约。

advance payment: 预付款，定金。

first thing in the morning: 早上要做的第一件事。

6. And while you're here, I would like to introduce you to your editor. And I want you to meet the people in the art department. I'll set up an appointment with the marketing people.

你既然来了，我想把你介绍给你的编辑，我想让你见一见艺术部的成员。我将为你同销售部的人约个时间见面谈一下。

introduce sb. to...: 把某人介绍给.....。

editor: 编辑。

set up an appointment with sb.: 与某人约个时间。与某人安排一次会面。

7. When do you think we'll be through?

你认为我们什么时候能办完这些事？

through: 这里指完成。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 18 课：当仁不让

ACT 1-1 “我无法相信！”

【故事梗概】

市里教育经费拮据，联合校董会出了空缺，Carter Boswell 竞选的口号是节约经费，办法是取消学校的课余文化项目。Ellen 对这种短见的作法感到气愤。

Ellen: [as Philip enters] I don't believe it!

Philip: What's wrong?

Ellen: Carter Boswell!

Philip: Who's Carter Boswell?

Ellen: He's running for the school board. The election's next month.

Philip: What's wrong with wanting to be on the school board?

Ellen: Nothing. But he wants to cut the school budget!

Philip: Maybe it needs cutting.

Ellen: Cutting the budget is fine, but he wants to do it by cutting all the cultural programs. No music, no dance, no concert, no stage presentations.

Philip: Why does he want to do that?

Ellen: He says it's to save the taxpayers' money and I think he believes that the taxpayers will vote for him if he spends less on the cultural programs.

Philip: He's probably right. Lots of people want their taxes used for new books and a new paint job in the schoolrooms.

Ellen: Maybe some of us would like to pay a little bit more and keep the cultural programs for our kids.

Philip: Well, I'm not sure, Ellen. I hear it from my patients. Lots of people are tired of higher taxes.

Ellen: I know, but if Boswell wins he'll be an important decision-maker on the school board, and he doesn't know anything about our children's education.

【语言点精讲】

1. He's running for the school board. The election's next month.

run for: 竞选, 角逐。

school board: (地方政府的) 联合校董会; 教育委员会。美国各州的公共教育是由州内各学区 (school district) 负责。各学区由通过选举产生的联合校董会 (school board) 人员组成。联合校董会的权力有: 聘用学区教育局长。局长负责学区的具体教育工作。联合校董会在任用教师, 选择教材方面施加影响。还有权批准其它决策。竞选联合校董会委员, 常成为美国公民参政的第一步。

election: 选举。

2. Cutting the budget is fine, but he wants to do it by cutting all the cultural programs. No music, no dance, no concert, no stage presentations.

削减经费也可以, 可是他想要通过削减所有文化项目的方法来削减经费。取消音乐课, 取消舞蹈课, 取消音乐会, 取消舞台演出。

cut the budget: 削减预算。

stage presentation: 表演, 演出。

3. He says it's to save the taxpayers' money and I think he believes that the taxpayers will vote for him if he spends less on the cultural programs.

他说是为纳税人节约开支, 而我认为他相信假如他在文化项目上少花一些钱, 纳税人会投他的票。

It's to save...: 这是为了省 (钱, 时间等)。

taxpayer: 纳税人。

vote for sb.: 为某人投票。

4. Lots of people are tired of higher taxes.

很多人厌倦交纳更多的税款。

be tired of sth.: 对某事感到厌倦。

5. Lots of people want their taxes used for new books and a new paint job in the schoolrooms.

很多人想让他们自己的钱被用于买新的书籍和把教室重新粉刷一次。

a new paint job: 指一次重新粉刷油漆的活儿。

6. I know, but if Boswell wins he'll be an important decision-maker on the school board, and he doesn't know anything about our children's education.

我知道, 可是假如 Boswell 竞选获胜, 他将成为联合校董会上重要的决策者, 而他却对于我们孩子的教育一无所知。

decision-maker: 决策者。

ACT 1-2 “为什么我不该参加竞选？”

【故事梗概】

鉴于并没有人与 Carter Boswell 竞争, Ellen 决定要参选。她的决定得到了全家人的支持。

Philip: Who's running against him?

Ellen: Nobody. That's the problem.

Philip: Well, it sounds to me like Carter Boswell is going to win this seat on the [board](#).

Ellen: Oh, not if I can stop him!

Philip: And how are you going to stop him?

Ellen: I don't know. Maybe I'll run against him.

Philip: [He thinks she is joking.] Well, you've got my vote.

Ellen: I'm serious, Philip. Why shouldn't I run?

Robbie: [He enters.] Why shouldn't you run for what, Mom?

Philip: Your mother is thinking of running for the school board.

Robbie: Hey, that's terrific, Mom!

[Richard and Marilyn enter.]

Richard: Against Carter Boswell? Great!

Ellen: Well, if I run for office, the voters will have a clear choice. I stand for everything Boswell doesn't.

Marilyn: I think a lot of people will vote for you against Boswell, Ellen. I'll vote for you.

Ellen: Will you help me if I do run?

Marilyn: [Absolutely](#).

Ellen: The trouble is it takes a little bit of money to run a [campaign](#).

Philip: I think you can make a difference, Ellen. And in a short campaign you wouldn't need as much money. You know something, Ellen? Why not give the people of Riverdale a clear choice? I'm with you. You can make a difference.

【语言点精讲】

1. Who's running against him?

有谁跟他竞选这职务?

run against sb.: 与某人竞选。

2. Well, it sounds to me like Carter Boswell is going to win this seat on the board.

那么, 听起来好像 Carter Boswell 要稳拿联合校董会的职位了。

It sounds to me like: 听起来好像, 听起来似乎会。

seat: 职位。每位校董事在校董会里都有一个席位。

3. Not if I can stop him!

我要是能办得到, 就不让他赢得这个席位。

这是省略句, 全句应为 He's not going to win this seat on the board if I can stop him.

4. Why shouldn't I run?

为什么我不该参加竞选?

5. Well, if I run for office, the voters will have a clear choice. I stand for everything Boswell doesn't.

说起来, 如果我竞选这一职务, 选民们将有明确的选择。我支持 Boswell 所不支持的一切事物。

run for office: 竞选某职务。office 在这里指公职, 职务。

voter: 投票人, 选民。

a clear choice: 明确的选择。

stand for: 代表, 支持。

6. The trouble is it takes a little bit of money to run a campaign.

问题是进行竞选活动要花不少钱呢。

It takes a little bit of money to do sth.: 做某事要花些钱。a little bit of money 意思实际上是 quite a bit of money, 这是反话。

run: 进行(竞选), 推动。

campaign: 这里指竞选活动。竞选活动可包括公开演讲, 在报纸上做广告、访问选民, 以及在电视上露面。

7. I think you can make a difference, Ellen. And in a short campaign you wouldn't need as much money.

我认为你会产生影响的, Ellen。而且如果竞选活动的时期很短, 你就不需要那么多钱。make a difference 在这里指关系重大, 影响很大。

8. You know something?

口语中常用的引导语, 表示将提供某种对方可能还不知道的情况。也常说: You know what?

9. I'm with you.

我在你这边。我支持你。

ACT 1-3 “因为我关心。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 去找里弗代尔当地报纸的编辑 Charles Maxwell, 希望他可以帮忙宣布自己参加竞选的消息。

Maxwell: Come in.

Ellen: Mr. Maxwell?

Maxwell: [He looks up.] Yes, Charles Maxwell.

Ellen: My name is Ellen Stewart.

Maxwell: Hello. Please, sit down. You asked to see me. What would you like to see me about?

Ellen: I'd like your help.

Maxwell: Well, I'm editor of the most influential newspaper in Riverdale. Actually, it's the only newspaper. [He smiles.]

A lot of people would like my help. Do you have a story?

Ellen: I'm planning to run for the school board.

Maxwell: Against Carter Boswell?

Ellen: Yes.

Maxwell: Well, that is news.

Ellen: Will you announce that I'm running?

Maxwell: Sure. But I need some information.

Ellen: Of course.

Maxwell: [He gets a pad and a pen .] Why will the voters vote for you against Boswell, Mrs. Stewart?

Ellen: Because I care.

Maxwell: "Vote for Ellen Stewart. She cares." Not a bad slogan.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, I'm editor of the most influential newspaper in Riverdale. Actually, it's the only newspaper.

嗯, 我是里弗代尔最有影响的报纸的编辑。实际上, 它是这里惟一的报纸。

the most influential: 最有影响力的。

Actually, it's the only newspaper.: 比较小的地方常只有一种地方报纸。Maxwell 前面说的 the most influential newspaper 是带诙谐意味的, 但亟需补充下面这句, 以免听者误认他在大言不惭。

2. Do you have a story?

你是有一条新闻吗?

a story: 是报业的行话, 指刊出或播出的一条新闻, 不指虚构小说。

3. That is news.

这可是条新闻。句中的 is 重读了, 加重了强调的语气。

4. Because I care.

因为我关心；因为我认真于……。

5. Not a bad slogan.

这口号不坏。

slogan: 标语，口号。

ACT 1-4 “你现在正在成为新闻来源。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 向当地报纸的编辑 Maxwell 解释了自己的竞选计划。Maxwell 同意给刊登一条她参加竞选的消息。

Maxwell: But what do you care about?

Ellen: Well, I care about the children of our town. I don't want them to grow up without cultural programs in our school.

Maxwell: Do you have a plan?

Ellen: I want our children to learn more than reading, writing, and arithmetic. I want to keep the after-school programs -- the music, the concerts.

Maxwell: It's not a bad plan. But who's going to pay for all of this?

Ellen: We are. The citizens of Riverdale, of course. I plan to get help from the businessmen and the corporations of Riverdale.

Maxwell: That's fair enough. Exactly what do you want from me, Mrs. Stewart?

Ellen: You don't know me. I can't expect you to take my side against Boswell. But I do need some publicity so that the people of our town know that I'm running for office and that I care about our children.

Maxwell: Fair enough. I certainly can print the news. And you are now making news.

【语言点精讲】

1. I want our children to learn more than reading, writing, and arithmetic. I want to keep the after-school programs -- the music, the concerts.

我要让咱们的孩子不止学会读、写、算。我想要保持课余的项目——音乐课，音乐会。

reading, writing and arithmetic: 阅读、写作、算术。通称 the three R's, 因为都含有字母 r。

2. That's fair enough.

这倒很合理。

3. I can't expect you to take my side against Boswell. But I do need some publicity so that the people of our town know that I'm running for office and that I care about our children.

我无法指望你支持我反对 Boswell。可是我确实需要一些宣传，好让我们镇上的人民知道我在竞选职务，我关心我们的孩子。

expect sb. to do sth.: 期望某人做某事，指望某人做某事。

to take my side: 支持我。

run for office: 竞选职务。

publicity: 宣传。

4. Exactly what do you want from me, Mrs. Stewart?

Stewart 夫人，你究竟要我为你做什么呢？

5. I certainly can print the news. And you are now making news.

我当然可以把这条消息刊登在报上，而你现在正在成为新闻来源。

print: 刊登在报纸上。

make news: 制造新闻。

ACT 2-1 “在投票处再见。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 并没有强大的政治机器作为后盾，竞选全靠自己一家和 Robbie 的朋友们帮忙，用电话拉票，用信件寄传单。

Grandpa: [He enters the living room.] Here are the fliers, hot off the press!

Ellen: [She takes some fliers.] Looks good. Simple.

Marilyn: Right over here, Grandpa. You fold the fliers. Richard and I will put them into the envelopes.

Richard: We finished addressing over three hundred envelopes.

Grandpa: Need another box?

Ellen: Good work, gang.

Mike: [speaking on the phone] Hi, this is Mike Johnson. Can I speak with Mr. or Mrs. Anderson? Thanks.

Robbie: [speaking on the phone] Mr. Nelson. Hi. This is Robbie Stewart. Did you know my mother is running for the school board?

Jimmy: [speaking on the phone] Yes, Miss Kim, Ellen Stewart. "She cares." Oh, see you at the polls. [He hangs up the phone, picks it up again, and dials another number.]

Robbie: Certainly, I'll give her your best wishes, Mr. Nelson.

Mike: [speaking on the phone] Hi, this is Mike Johnson. Can I speak with Mr. or Mrs. Burns? Thank you.

【语言点精讲】

1. Here are the fliers, hot off the press!

传单来了，刚刚印出来的。

flier: 传单；广告传单。又称 handouts。较正式的传单或小册子称为 leaflets，课堂上发的简明讲义也称为 handouts。

Hot off the press! : 刚刚印出来的。 hot off 原指食物刚刚出炉。卖食品以刚出炉还冒着热气的最吸引人，其它东西也借用了这个比喻。

2. We finished addressing over three hundred envelopes.

我们已经给 300 多个信封写上收信人姓名、地址了。

finish doing sth.: 做完某事。

address: 在这里做动词，指写（收信人的）姓名、地址。

3. Hi, this is Mike Johnson. Can I speak with Mr. or Mrs. Anderson? Thanks.

你好，我是 Mike Johnson。我可以找 Anderson 先生或夫人听电话吗？谢谢。

这是打电话时常用的开场白。

4. Did you know my mother is running for the school board?

你知不知道我妈妈在竞选联合校董会的职务？

run for: 竞选。

5. Oh, see you at the polls.

噢，在投票处再见。

很显然，对方直捷了当地说明她是要投埃伦一票的，所以不用多劝说了。See you 是常见面的熟人道别时的用语，也可说："See you later."或"I'll be seeing you."在电话交谈之末说"See you...."更为恰当。

poll: 投票处。

ACT 2-2 “它起了很大的作用。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 对竞选准备的进程很满意。照例回家很晚的 Philip 医生只能干别人最不喜欢的贴信封的活儿。

Ellen: We have done so much in such a short amount of time. I can't believe it! Wait till Philip comes home and sees our progress!

Robbie: Everyone saw the story in the Riverdale newspaper.

Ellen: Mr. Maxwell was very kind to print my announcement.

Grandpa: It helps enormously. Everybody in Riverdale reads his paper.

Richard: Your photo in it helped, too.

Ellen: Thanks to you, Richard. It's a good picture.

Philip: [He enters.] Well, hi, all.

Richard & Robbie: Hi, Dad.

Ellen: Hello, darling.

Philip: May I ... may I help?

Marilyn: [She **murmurs** yes.] Licking envelopes.

Grandpa: I fold the fliers.

Richard: We stuff them.

Philip: And I lick the envelopes.

【语言点精讲】

1. We have done so much in such a short amount of time. I can't believe it!

我们在这么短的时间里做了这么多的事，我简直无法相信！

a short amount of time: 短时间。用 amount 表示不可数名词，而用 number 表示可数名词。

2. Wait till Philip comes home and sees our progress!

等菲利普到家，看见我们取得的进展，（他会很惊讶的）！

progress: 进展，进步。

3. Mr. Maxwell was very kind to print my announcement.

Maxwell 先生好心地刊出了我的声明。

announcement: 公告；宣告；发表；通告。

4. It helps enormously. Everybody in Riverdale reads his paper.

它起了很大的作用。里弗代尔家家都看他这份报。

enormously: 巨大地。

5. Thanks to you, Richard. It's a good picture.

多亏了你，Richard，这张照片照得真不错。

thanks to: 由于，幸亏。

6. Well, hi, all .

嗨，大家好！

7. Licking envelope.

用舌头舔背胶粘信封。

ACT 2-3 “你也得上电视才好。”

【故事梗概】

Boswell 先生正在电视上做竞选演讲。Boswell 的老练而富于煽动性的竞选演说给 Ellen 心上投下了自我怀疑的阴影。家人都在给 Ellen 打气，并要她也去做竞选拉票演说。

Robbie: Hey, everybody, Mrs. Greenberg is on the phone. She says Carter Boswell is on the TV right now--doing a **commercial**.

Philip: What **channel**?

Robbie: Five.

Philip: Five? [He turns on the television.]

[They all watch the TV.]

Boswell: ...and if you ask what I care about, I'll tell you. I care about the school buildings in need of paint. I care about more **lockers** for the teachers. I care about new **fixtures** in the **hallways** -- not music or dancing or entertainment. I care about the **practical** things. If you do, vote for me, Carter Boswell.

Ellen: A lot of people will agree with him.

Philip: I told you.

Robbie: Too bad kids can't vote. It's our school, but we can't vote.

Richard: There are people in favor of the cultural programs, Mom.

Marilyn: There are, Ellen. Don't be **upset** by Boswell's commercial.

Philip: You have to go on television, too.

Ellen: Boswell's a powerful speaker.

Philip: You can be, too. Your ideas are good ones.

Ellen: I don't know. I'm not sure I'm up to it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Hey, everybody, Mrs. Greenberg is on the phone. She says Carter Boswell is on the TV right now--doing a commercial.

嗨，大家听着，Greenberg 夫人打电话来了，她说 Carter Boswell 现在正在电视上露面——他在广告节目里讲话。

commercial: 电视或收音机里的广告。

2. I care about the school buildings in need of paint. I care about more lockers for the teachers. I care about new fixtures in the hallways--not music or dancing or entertainment. I care about the practical things.

我关心那些需要油漆粉刷的校舍，我关心给老师们多设一些衣物柜，我关心在走廊里安装新灯具——而不是搞什么音乐课，舞蹈课和娱乐活动，我关心的是实用的东西。

in need of: 需要，缺少。这是较为正式用语。

locker: 金属制的储物柜。美国的学校里普遍设立这种柜子，分配给每位学生和老师存放东西之用，各人可自行加锁。

fixture: 固定装置。房屋里的附属装置，如电灯、洗手间的水池等。这里，Boswell 先生是 在指学校走廊天花板的灯，或称 light fixture。

practical: 实用的。

3. If you do, vote for me, Carter Boswell.

如果你也关心实用的东西，请投我 Carter Boswell 一票。

do 在这里代表上一句的谓语 care about the practical things.

4. There are people in favor of the cultural programs, Mom.

还是有人赞成文化项目的，妈妈。

in favor of : 支持，赞同。在表决时可以说: "Those in favor, please raise your hands... Those against, please raise your hands."

5. You have to go on television, too.

你也得上电视才好。

go on TV: 上电视，在电视上露面。

6. I'm not sure I'm up to it.

我不敢肯定我能顶得下来。

up to it: 在这里指能做得到，相当于 able to do it.

ACT 3-1 “你这个主意很高明啊！”

【故事梗概】

在 Stewart 家厨房里，Richard 手握摄像机。他为 Ellen 拍摄了竞选演讲，并把他拍的片子送到当地的家用电器商店里去播放。

Ellen: ...my **slogan** is "I care." I care about people, not things. Vote for me, Ellen Stewart. I care. [to the family]How was it?

Richard: You were **terrific**!

Ellen: Can I see it?

Richard: Sure. [He puts the tape in the VCR. They see and hear parts of the tape again.]

Ellen: [on television] Hello. My name is Ellen Stewart, and I'm running for the open seat on the school board. My slogan

is "I care." What does the word care mean? ... I care about people, not things. Vote for me, Ellen Stewart. I care.

Philip: I like it, but now what? How can we possibly get it on so Riverdale will see it and hear it?

Richard: Leave it to me.

[In the window of a local **appliance** store. All the television sets are playing Ellen's message.]

Ellen: [on television] ... I mean that when I say "I care." I care about people, not things. Vote for me, Ellen Stewart. I care. In the Stewarts' living room. It is **nighttime**. Richard enters from outside.

Marilyn: What happened?

Richard: Mom is now on television in every appliance store in Riverdale, except Hamlin's. He's a Boswell voter.

Philip: That's a **brilliant** idea, Richard!

Grandpa: You **inherited** your father's brains.

Philip: We got our brains from you, Dad.

【语言点精讲】

1. He puts the tape in the VCR.

他把录像带放进录像机

VCR: 录像机, 是 videocassette recorder 的缩写。

2. Leave it to me.

交给我吧。交给我去办。由我来处理（别人不需管了）。

3. In the window of a local appliance store. All the television sets are playing Ellen's message.

在当地一个家用电器商店里, 店中所有的电视机都在播送埃伦的讲话。

appliance store: 家用电器商店。

4. I mean that when I say "I care."

当我说“我关心”的时候, 这就是我的意思。

5. Mom is now on television in every appliance store in Riverdale, except Hamlin's. He's a Boswell voter.

现在里弗代尔的每一家家电商店的荧屏上都在播放妈妈的演讲, 除了 Hamlin 的店, 他们要投票支持 Boswell 的。

Hamlin's: 这里指的是 Hamlin's shop。

a Boswell voter: Boswell 的支持者。

6. That's a brilliant idea, Richard!

Richard, 你这个主意很高明啊!

brilliant: 卓越的, 棒的。相当于 very clever, splendid.

7. You inherited your father's brains.

你继承了你爸爸的好脑筋。

inherit: 继承。你能继承东西, 如戒指或房子。你也可继承一些个人特征, 如蓝眼睛或音乐才能。

brain: 这个词既指脑器官, 又指智力。在后一意义上常用复数。

ACT 3-2 “你领先了, 那总比落后好。”

【故事梗概】

选举当天, Stewart 一家人围在电视前看投票的直播。Ellen 的票数暂时领先。Ellen 很紧张。

Richard: And guess what? I called channel five. Their TV news is going to cover it. "Housewife **campaigns** in **appliance** stores." And I'll bet some magazine will **pick up** the story, too.

Robbie: Mom, you're going to win! I know it!

Philip: Hold it, Robbie! Just cool down. I know we're getting some attention now, but in the end the voters will have to decide.

Grandpa: You're going to win. Trust me!

[Election Night. The family is watching the news on television.]

Reporter: In the hotly contested race for the one seat on the Riverdale School Board, Mrs. Ellen Stewart has taken an early lead.

Robbie: She's winning! Mom, you're winning!

Reporter: Now returning to other local news ...Riverdale High School beat its rival Horace Mann in baseball today ...

Ellen: It's too soon to know for certain.

Philip: You're ahead. That's better than being behind.

Reporter: More sports after this.

Ellen: It's not over yet. Let's just all calm down, and wait for the final results.

Grandpa: Ellen, why don't you go out to the backyard and get some fresh air?

Ellen: Thank you, Grandpa. I need some.

【语言点精讲】

1. Their TV news is going to cover it.

他们的电视新闻将报导这件事。

cover: 这里是对某一事件进行采访报导的意思。cover 近来常用作“涵盖，包括，包覆，掩护，负担费用，保证”等意思，都是从最基本的“覆盖上”化出的。

2. And I'll bet some magazine will pick up the story, too.

我敢打赌有些杂志也会报导这条新闻。

I'll bet: 我相信。

pick up the story: 报道这条新闻。pick up 除了接人、取物等意外，还有“（偶然）捡拾”的意思，因此化出了“偶然结识，（警方）在路上拘捕，染上传染性疾病，养成习惯，学到本领，（开车）半路上搭载生人，获得（奖赏，声誉，钱财，可贵的东西等），嗅到或听到、接收到”等等。

3. Hold it, Robbie! Just cool down. I know we're getting some attention now, but in the end the voters will have to decide.

Robbie, 沉住气，冷静点。我知道我们现在吸引了一些注意力，但是归根结底还是得由选民们来决定。

hold it: 沉住气。hold 在这里是“停止，等一下”的意思，it 指当时正在做的事。

cool down: 冷静点。用于 叫人冷静下来，不要过分激动或过分乐观。

get attention: 吸引注意力。

4. In the hotly contested race for the one seat on the Riverdale School Board, Mrs. Ellen Stewart has taken an early lead.

在争夺联合校董会唯一空缺席位激烈的选举战中，Ellen Stewart 已初步领先。

hotly contested race: 激烈的竞赛或选举战。

take an early lead: 初步领先。

5. Riverdale High School beat its rival Horace Mann in baseball today.

里弗代尔中学今天在棒球比赛中击败了对手霍勒斯·曼中学队

beat one's rival: 击败了竞争对手。

6. You're ahead. That's better than being behind.

你领先了，那总比落后好。

ahead: 领先。

7. More sports after this.

稍候是体育新闻。

More ... after this: 这是在广播或电视节目中，一个较长的节目没有完，中间穿插一小段广告、简明新闻或音乐时，广播员惯用的话。

this 指下面插入的节目。对于前面的节目称为 that，如在新闻节目完了以后常说：“That was John Smith with the world news.”等。

ACT 3-3 “你的选票数很接近。”

【故事梗概】

选举的结果出来了，Ellen 以微弱的劣势输掉了选举。但是她的主张引起了各方，包括当选的 Boswell 的关注。Boswell 先生还打算为她组建一个艺术委员会。

Ellen: What happened?

Philip: You came very close. Ellen.

Grandpa: You lost by only a hundred and twenty-one votes.

Ellen: [She sits down.] I lost.

Richard: You tried, Mom.

Marilyn: You lost by a very small number of votes.

Robbie: Only one hundred and twenty-one votes! I'm sorry, Mom.

Ellen: There just wasn't enough time.

Philip: [He sits down next to her.] Look, you've made a very strong impression on our community. You'll have another chance next election.

[The phone rings. Philip answers it.]

Philip: Hello. Oh, yes, yes, Mr. Maxwell. [He gives the telephone to Ellen.]

Ellen: Hello, Mr. Maxwell.

Maxwell: How are you? I just called to tell you that you are very impressive. You lost the election, but you won the attention of the residents of Riverdale, of Boswell, and of me.

Ellen: Well, thank you, Mr. Maxwell. I appreciate your kind words. I needed that.

Maxwell: I hear Boswell wants to appoint you to a special arts committee. I'm sending over a reporter in the morning to interview you.

Ellen: You are?

Maxwell: I'm going to do an article on "Ellen Stewart--she cares." Maybe we'll all care now. Good-bye.

Ellen: Thank you----and good-bye.

Philip: What was that about?

Ellen: You were right, Philip. I did make a difference in town.

Robbie: And in this family.

[Ellen and Robbie hug .]

【语言点精讲】

1. You came very close. Ellen.

你的选票数很接近，Ellen。

close 在表示比分接近，票数相差不多，差一点儿打赢。

2. You lost by only a hundred and twenty-one votes.

你仅以 121 票之差落选了。句中的 by 是介词，表示数目，量，度等。

3. There just wasn't enough time.

太仓促了。Ellen 感到很遗憾，如果时间充裕些，多做准备，结果就不会这样了。

4. You've made a very strong impression on our community.

你已给我们的社区留下了很深的印象。

make a ...impression on...: 给人以某种印象。impression, 印象。

5. I just called to tell you that you are very impressive.

我给你打电话是想告诉你，你给人们很深刻的印象。

impressive: 形容词，给人深刻印象。

6. You lost the election, but you won the attention of the residents, of Riverdale, of Boswell, and of me.

你在选举中失败了，但你却赢得了里弗代尔居民的注意，也赢得博斯韦尔和我的注意。

... of Boswell, and of me: 句子前面省略了“you won the attention”。

7. I hear Boswell wants to appoint you to a special arts committee.

我听说博斯韦尔想委任你担任一个特别的艺术委员会的委员。

appoint: 任命，委任。

committee: 委员会，工作小组。

8. I'm going to do an article on "Ellen Stewart--she cares."

我要刊出一篇文章，题目叫作“Ellen Stewart，她关心”。

I'm going to do an article: 我准备写一篇文章。do 在这里相当于 write。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 19 课：我愿意

ACT 1-1 “领结总是这么难打吗？”

【故事梗概】

Susan 和 Harry 今天要结婚了。Philip, Richard 和 Robbie 在帮助 Harry 打领结。但是他们似乎都不知道领结的打法。

Harry: [He looks in the mirror at his bow tie.] It looks wrong.

Philip: Hmmm. It is wrong.

Richard: Are they always that difficult to make?

Philip: The truth is...yes. I'll try again.

Robbie: At this rate, the wedding will take place tomorrow.

Philip: Not to worry. OK. Here we go. [He tries again to tie Harry's bow tie.]

Harry: I'm worried, Philip. What if we can't tie the tie?

Richard: [joking] If we can't tie the tie, then there can't be a wedding.

Robbie: You'd better not make Harry any more nervous than he is. [to Harry] Don't worry. We'll figure a way.

[Grandpa enters the room.]

Grandpa: How're you doing, fellas?

Harry: [nervously] Not so good, Grandpa. We can't get this bow tie tied. Nobody knows how to do it. Do you?

Grandpa: No. I never could, either.

【语言点精讲】

1. He looks in the mirror at his bow tie.

他在看镜子里的领结。

bow tie: 领结，蝶形领结。

2. Are they always that difficult to make?

领结总是这么难打吗？

that: 那样，如此。that 再这里起状语副词作用，相当于 so，是美国人常用的非正式语言。

3. At this rate, the wedding will take place tomorrow.

要是照这个样子，婚礼要拖到明天上午举行了。

at this rate: 以这种（慢）速度。

take place: 发生，举行。

4. Not to worry.

别担心。在这里等同于 Don't worry.

5. If we can't tie the tie, then there can't be a wedding.

美国人举行婚礼时，新郎一般都穿西服、打领结。Richard 的这句话其实是一句双关语。美语中结婚的另一种说法是“tie the knot”，意思是“get married”，而 tie 和 knot 都是“结”的意思，所以说“If you can't tie the tie (knot), you can't get married.”

6. You'd better not make Harry any more nervous than he is.

你顶好别再给 Harry 火上加油了，他已经够紧张了。

You'd better ...: 你最好……。提出建议时用 had better，含有较多的警告、告诫、指责等含意。had better 比 should, must 口气更强烈。当我们用 had better 时意味着假如你不听这一劝告，就将有不佳的后果，因此不宜在正式场合或对较陌生的人使用。

7. We'll figure a way.

figure a way: 找到方法。

8. How're you doing, fellas?

伙计们，你们进行得怎么样了？

fella: 伙计，小伙子（很口语化的讲法）。

ACT 1-2 “那商店今天开着吗？”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 建议使用夹上去的领结。Richard 去给一个礼服租借公司打电话，去看是否可以借到可以夹上去的领结。

Philip: Well, you have your own **tuxedo**. How do you tie your bow tie?

Robbie: Yeah, Grandpa, I've seen you in it. You look great. How do you tie it?

Grandpa: I don't.

Richard: You don't?

Harry: What do you mean?

Grandpa: I never could tie one of those...things... bow ties. I have always worn a **clip-on** bow tie.

Harry: A clip-on?

Philip: Of course. Now I remember.

Grandpa: Yes, it's so easy. All you do is clip it around under your **collar**.

Richard: We all need one of those.

Robbie: The tuxedo **rental** store. Do you think they're open?

Philip: Should be. Sunday's their big day.

Richard: I'll call and find out. [He leaves the room.]

Grandpa: Well, if they're not, I'll lend you mine, Harry. You're the only one who really needs to be wearing a tuxedo, anyway.

Harry: Thanks, Grandpa.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, you have your own tuxedo.

说起来，你自己有一套常礼服。

tuxedo: 无尾常礼服。tuxedo 是一种较正式的男子服装（常礼服），无燕尾，在仅次于最正式的场合穿着。一般中等人家只租用而并不自备；但女子礼服通常是哪怕只穿一次也要自行购置。

2. I never could tie one of those...things... bow ties. I have always worn a clip-on bow tie.

我一直也不会打那个……什么……领结，我总是戴能夹上去的现成领结。

one of those... things...bow ties: 省略号表示说话时有停顿，意谓说话人忘了那东西叫什么，或因轻视而不愿直呼其名。those 及 things 也都表示一时找不到适当的词，或表示轻视。

clip-on bow tie: 夹上去的领结。

3. All you do is clip it around under your collar.

只要把它串在衬衣领下面，再把夹子卡上就行了。

collar: 衣领。

4. The tuxedo rental store. Do you think they're open?

礼服出租店里一定有，那商店今天开着吗？

they: 这里指代商店。在美国，人们经常用复数 they 来指一家商店。

5. Should be. Sunday's their big day.

应该开着，星期天是那商店生意最好的日子。

should be: 也许。在这里相当于 Probably.

their big day: 在这里指商店生意兴隆的日子。

ACT 1-3 “这叫作婚礼日心慌症。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 去礼服店为 Harry 借领结。面对即将开始的婚礼，Harry 非常紧张，Grandpa 和 Philip 在设法让他平静下来。

Philip: [He tries to make Harry feel better.] I'm the father of the bride. I'm supposed to be worried about my daughter, and here I am with the man that's marrying my daughter--worrying about him.

Grandpa: Poor Harry. I know the feeling. Wedding-day jitters.

Robbie: [to Richard as Richard returns] Are they open?

Richard: We're in luck. They're open. And they have lots of clip-on bow ties.

Robbie: I'll bicycle down to the village and get them.

Harry: You'd better hurry, Robbie.

[Robbie leaves.]

Grandpa: There's lots of time. [He looks at his watch.] A little over two hours.

Harry: In two hours and fifteen minutes I'll be married to Susan.

Philip: And be a true member of the Stewart family.

Grandpa: Oh, you're a lucky guy, Harry. Susan is one of the best women you'll ever find. She's just like her grandma.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'm supposed to be worried about my daughter, and here I am with the man that's marrying my daughter--worrying about him.

我是新娘的父亲，我本该为我的女儿担心的，可现在我却在要和我女儿结婚的男人身旁——为他在担心。

I'm supposed to: 我本应该。 指的是被大家期望发生的事。

2. Poor Harry. I know the feeling. Wedding-day jitters.

可怜的 Harry，我知道你现在的感觉，这叫作婚礼日心慌症。

jitters: 紧张。通常 jitters 前面要有 the。

3. We're in luck.

be in luck: 运气好；交好运；走运；幸运。

4. I'll bicycle down to the village and get them.

我骑车到街上去取。

bicycle: 在这里做动词，骑自行车。

5. In two hours and fifteen minutes I'll be married to Susan.

再过两小时十五分钟，我就和 Susan 结婚了。

ACT 1-4 “戒指肯定在这儿。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 提到了戒指的事情。Harry 突然意识到，自己找不到戒指了。

Richard: Now, once you put the ring on Susan's finger, you are one of us, Harry. And don't ever forget it.

Harry: Ring? Ring? Oh my! What did I do with the rings? I put them in the pocket of my sports jacket.

Richard: No, I think you put them in your **tuxedo** jacket pocket. Remember?

Harry: Right. [He searches in his pockets but doesn't find them.] What did I do with the rings?

Philip: Didn't you give them to Richard? He's your best man. I remember. You gave them to Richard.

Richard: Oh, yeah. I remember now. You handed them to me. [Richard searches in his pockets.] What did I do with them?

Harry: I hope they aren't lost.

Grandpa: Oh, don't worry, Harry. They have to be here.

Richard: I remember. I gave them to Robbie to hold so I wouldn't lose them.

Harry: Where's Robbie?

Philip: Relax, Harry. Robbie went to **pick up** the clip-on bow ties.

Harry: Oh, I forgot. What time is it?

Grandpa: It's still a little over two hours, Harry. Just **relax**.

Harry: What about the rings?

Richard: I'm sure Robbie has them.

【语言点精讲】

1. Now, once you put the ring on Susan's finger, you are one of us, Harry. And don't ever forget it.

只要你把戒指往 Susan 手指上一戴，你就是我们自己人了，Harry。永远别忘记这一点。

once you put the ring on Susan's finger: 结婚典礼上男女双方交换戒指，并要戴在对方的手指上。

这里的 once 是连词，意为“一旦，一当，只要”等。在此 Richard 讲，一旦 Harry 给 Susan 戴上戒指他们就成了夫妻。

2. I put them in the pocket of my sports jacket.

我把它放在我便装上衣的口袋里了。

sports jacket: 便装上衣（像西装的样式，但不成一套）。

3. Didn't you give them to Richard? He's your best man.

Didn't you give them to Richard? : 你不是把戒指交给 Richard 了吗？用否定词 didn't 提问时，往往表示问话人对答案持肯定的意思。

best man: （新郎的）男宾相。女宾相为 bridesmaid 或 maid of honor。

4. They have to be here.

戒指肯定在这儿（不会丢的）。

5. Robbie went to **pick up** the clip-on bow ties.

Robbie 去取能夹上就用的现成领结了。

pick up: 去取，去拿，去买。

6. It's still a little over two hours.

还有两个多小时呢。it 在这里指代时间。

ACT 1-5 “把我丢下啦？”

【故事梗概】

在紧张了一阵之后，Harry 总算是找到了戒指。Grandpa, Philip 和 Richard 去换衣服了，留 Harry 一个人在房间里。

Harry: [He suddenly remembers.] No, no, Robbie doesn't have them. He gave them to me to hold on to them because he didn't want the **responsibility** of holding them. I put them in my **tuxedo** -- but in the **lapel** pocket. [He finds them there.] That's a **relief**. I was really worried.

Richard: [He takes the rings.] I'll hold on to them for you. The best man always keeps the rings.

Harry: You're right. You're right. You hold on to them so there won't be a problem later.

Philip: Well, now, I think we'd better get dressed, fellas.

Grandpa: All right!

Richard: Robbie will bring the ties back.

Harry: Hey, leaving me?

Grandpa: You'll be fine.

Philip: Try to take it easy. It'll all be over in two.

Harry: Over?

Grandpa: The wedding ceremony will be over. You'll be husband and wife.

Harry: I guess you're right. Two hours from now. [Alone now, Harry sits on the bed. He looks at his watch and thinks aloud.] Two hours from now.

【语言点精讲】

1. He gave them to me to hold on to them because he didn't want the responsibility of holding them.

他把戒指交给我保管，因为他不愿负保管戒指的责任。

hold on to: 拿着；保存，保管。

2. I put them in my tuxedo -- but in the lapel pocket.

我把戒指放在常礼服口袋里了——不过是放在胸前口袋里的。

lapel pocket: 胸前口袋。

3. That's a relief. I was really worried.

现在我放心了，我刚才可真急坏了。

That's a relief. : 现在我放心了。

4. Well, now, I think we'd better get dressed, fellas.

好，我想我们都该去穿戴起来了，伙计们。

get dressed: dressed 是过去分词形容词，用做表语。get 在这里是系动词，表示采取行动以改变状况。动词 dress 表示晨起穿衣或为某种较正式的场合做整齐的穿戴，如赴宴、行婚礼、举行仪式等。

5. Hey, leaving me?

怎么回事？把我丢下啦？

6. The wedding ceremony will be over. You'll be husband and wife.

婚礼就完了，你们两个人就结成夫妻了。

husband and wife: 又称 man and wife，注意这里习惯不用冠词。

ACT 2-1 “我跟你父亲结婚时戴的就是它。”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 和 Ellen 正在帮助 Susan 穿戴打扮。Susan 穿着一件长的结婚礼服。Ellen 把自己结婚时戴过的蓝色腕带送给了 Susan，作为她的“蓝色的东西”。

Marilyn: And now for...something old, something new, something borrowed, and something blue.

Susan: OK. Let's see. Something borrowed. That's this dress. Borrowed from Marilyn.

Ellen: Something blue. My wristband. I wore it when I married your father. [She puts it on Susan's left wrist.]

Susan: Oh, Mother. I forgot you still had it. It's just so lovely.

Ellen: I bought it in an antique shop when I was about eighteen years old. I saved it for my wedding day.

Susan: And you saved it for me, didn't you, Mother?

Ellen: Yes, honey. I did.

Marilyn: Are we ever going to finish?

[They all laugh and cry.]

Ellen: All right. OK. Something borrowed.

Marilyn: The wedding dress. And something blue.

Susan: The wristband.

【语言点精讲】

1. And now for...something old, something new, something borrowed, and something blue.

好，要有旧的东西，也有新的东西，要有借来的东西，也有蓝色的东西。

在美国，女子出嫁时，娘家要给她穿、戴上“something old, something new, something borrowed and something blue”（旧的东西、新的东西、借来的东西和蓝色的东西）。这是一种传统习俗，意思是婚后会交好运。这是一直沿袭下来的老传统了。

2. Something blue. My wristband. I wore it when I married your father.

蓝色的东西，那就是我的腕带，我跟你父亲结婚时戴的就是它。

wristband: 腕带。

3. I bought it in an antique shop when I was about eighteen years old. I saved it for my wedding day.

我在大约 18 岁时在一个古董店里买的，我留着它到结婚时戴的。

antique shop: 古董店；卖旧工艺品的商店。

4. Are we ever going to finish?

我们还能穿戴完吗？

ACT 2-2 “我是留着它今天戴的。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 决定用 Grandma 送给自己的珍珠项链作为自己的新娘结婚时身上穿戴的“旧的东西”。

Susan: Something old?

Ellen: Something old. Right. What's old?

Susan: Of course! Something old. I had planned to wear them. [She gets something from the dresser.]

Ellen: Grandma's pearls! Oh, Grandpa will be so pleased that you're wearing them. I'm sure he misses Grandma on a day like this.

Susan: Help me with them, Marilyn. I've never worn them before. I've been saving them for today.

Ellen: Saving them for today? Oh, you're a real Stewart!

Marilyn: Oh, there you go. Lovely!

Ellen: Lovely!

Susan: Lovely!

Marilyn: Something borrowed, something blue. Something old... and now for something new.

Susan: The veil. Oh, it's so beautiful, Marilyn!

Ellen: You really are a fabulous designer, Marilyn.

Marilyn: [She puts the veil on Susan's head and hums the "Wedding March."] Doesn't it look just right on Susan?

Ellen: Perfect!

【语言点精讲】

1. She gets something from the dresser.

她从梳妆台那儿取出一件东西。

the dresser: 梳妆台，带穿衣镜的抽屉柜。

2. Grandma's pearls! Oh, Grandpa will be so pleased that you're wearing them. I'm sure he misses Grandma on a day like this.

奶奶的珍珠项链！噢，爷爷看见你戴上它，会非常高兴的。我敢肯定，在今天这种好日子里，他会想她的。

pearls: 珍珠项链。

3. I've never worn them before. I've been saving them for today.

我以前从来没有戴过它，我是留着它今天戴的。

I've been saving them for today.：这是一个现在完成进行时式。表示一直都在留着，等今天再用，有较强的感情色彩。

4. Oh, there you go. Lovely!

好，这就行了。真美！

There you go.：一切就绪。

5. The veil. Oh, it's so beautiful, Marilyn!

面纱，噢，Marilyn，太美了！

veil：面纱。

6. You really are a fabulous designer, Marilyn.

你真是个卓越的服装设计师，Marilyn。

7. She puts the veil on Susan's head and hums the "Wedding March."

她把面纱蒙在苏珊头上，嘴里哼着《婚礼进行曲》。

hum：哼歌。

Wedding March：婚礼进行曲。

ACT 2-3 “你从来没有现在这么好看。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 也得了婚礼日心慌症，不殊于 Harry。Ellen 和 Marilyn 似乎在借 Susan 出阁之喜缅怀旧梦，体贴温柔，无所不用其极。

Marilyn: And when you both say, "I do.", Harry will lift this veil over your head and kiss the bride.

Ellen: Oh, I'm so excited!

Susan: When you said, "I do." Marilyn, it suddenly became real.

Marilyn: That's all right, Susan. You've got the wedding-day jitters! In less than two hours, you will be Mrs. Harry Bennett.

Ellen: Oh, that reminds me. If we don't get dressed, we won't be there to see Susan become Mrs. Harry Bennett.

Susan: Before you leave -- do I look all right?

Ellen: You never looked better.

Susan: Mom.

Marilyn: She's right. [She hugs Susan. Suddenly, Marilyn's baby starts to cry in another room.] And that's dear little Max. Got to go and feed him.

Susan: What am I supposed to do?

Marilyn: [She and Ellen are about to leave.] Take off the veil, kick off your shoes, and sit down.

Ellen: we'll come upstairs and get you in a little while.

Marilyn: Richard's going to take some wedding pictures before the ceremony. So just relax.

Susan: Are you kidding? Relax?

[Ellen and Marilyn leave.]

Susan: [She hums the "Wedding March."] Susan Stewart...you are about to become Susan Bennett-Mrs. Harry Bennett.

【语言点精讲】

1. When you said, "I do." Marilyn, it suddenly became real.

你刚才一说出了“我愿意”的时候，Marilyn，我忽然明白这事是真的了。

when you said：注意这里的时态，一般过去时，指刚才 Marilyn 所说的“And when you both say, “I do. ”, Harry will lift this veil over your head and kiss the bride. ” Susan 这时神经高度紧张，故 Marilyn 所描述的情况突然使她醒悟，她再过一会儿就要真地成为 Harry 的妻子了。

2. You've got the wedding-day jitters! In less than two hours, you will be Mrs. Harry Bennett.

你是得了婚礼日的心慌症！再有不到两小时，你将成为 Harry Bennett 夫人了。

许多美国妇女在婚后改用丈夫的姓。Susan 的娘家姓为 Stewart，她婚后的姓应为 Bennett。一些美国妇女还愿意保留娘家姓，一些妇女用两家的姓。因此在 Susan 跟 Harry Bennett 结婚后，她有以下几个姓名的选择：

Susan Stewart（不改变），

Susan Bennett（换成丈夫的姓），

Susan Stewart Bennett（娘家姓+夫家姓），

Mrs. Harry Bennett（在正式の場合用）。

3. Oh, that reminds me.

That reminds me.：这给我提了个醒（使我想起来了）。句型是 remind sb. of sth.，如请别人在将来某时提醒自己去去做一件事，句型为 Please remind me to do sth.或 Please remind me about sth.

4. You never looked better.

你从来没有现在这么好看。这是常用的给别人打气的话，也可说：“You're looking better/younger/smarter/more handsome than ever.”

5. Got to go and feed him.

我得去给他喂奶了。

Got to go.：我得走。在这里相当于“I've got to go.”这是个非正式但常用的句子。表示“我必须走了”或“我不得不走”。

6. Are you kidding? Relax?

你是在说笑话吧？我怎能放松得了？这里的意思是 How can I relax?

7. Susan Stewart...you are about to become Susan Bennett—Mrs. Harry Bennett.

Susan Stewart 啊.....你很快就要成为 Susan Bennett——Harry Bennett 夫人了。

are about to: 很快，即将，就要。

ACT 3 “我愿意。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 和 Harry 的婚礼如期进行了。婚礼简朴而温馨。

Judge: Philip... Ellen.

Philip: Ah, Judge.

Judge: How are you? [He looks at Ellen.]How are you, my dear?

Ellen: Hello.

Judge: I think it's time for the wedding to begin.

[They all enter the living room.]

Judge: All right, ladies and gentlemen. Please take your places. The wedding ceremony is about to begin.

[The Judge, the family, and the guests go outside to the patio for the ceremony.]

Judge: OK, Jane. Start the music. Dearly beloved, we are gathered here today to join this man and this woman in holy matrimony. Do either of you have any reason why you should not legally be joined in marriage? Is there anyone present who can show any just cause why these two people should not be legally joined in marriage? Then, Harry Bennett, do you take Susan Stewart to be your lawful, wedded wife?

Harry: I do.

Judge: And you, Susan Stewart, do you take Harry Bennett to be your lawful, wedded husband?

Susan: I do.

Judge: The rings, please.

[Harry looks in his jacket pocket for the wedding rings. But he can't find them.]

Richard: I have them, Harry.

[Harry takes the rings from Richard. He puts one on Susan's finger. She takes the other ring and puts it on Harry's finger.]

Judge: By the power **vested** in me by the laws of the State of New York, I now **pronounce** you husband and wife. You may kiss the bride now, Harry.

[Harry lifts the veil and kisses Susan. The guests laugh, **applaud**, and throw **confetti**.]

【语言点精讲】

1. I think it's time for the wedding to begin.

我想婚礼该开始了。

It's time for... to...: 是.....的时候了。这个句型是常用的。

2. Take your places.

大家各就各位。

3. Dearly beloved, we are gathered here today to join this man and this woman in holy matrimony. Do either of you have any reason why you should not legally be joined in marriage? Is there anyone present who can show any just cause why these two people should not be legally joined in marriage?

亲爱的在座诸位，我们今天聚会在这里将这个男子和这个女子在神圣的婚姻中结合为夫妻。你们二人中谁有理由认为你们不应合法地结为夫妻吗？在场的人中有任何人能提出正当的理由说明这两个人不应合法地结为夫妻吗？

holy: 神圣的。

matrimony: 结婚，婚姻。

Do either of you...?: 你们两位之中有哪位.....? 法官应该说 “Does either of you...?”, either 指单数，而不是复数。

just cause: 正当的理由。

4. Then, Harry Bennett, do you take Susan Stewart to be your lawful, wedded wife?

你那么，Harry Bennett，你愿意接受 Susan Stewart 为你的合法的妻子吗？

在婚礼庆典上这是必问话。

5. The rings, please.

请戴戒指。句中省略了 exchange 这个单词。

6. By the power vested in me by the laws of the State of New York, I now pronounce you husband and wife.

You may kiss the bride now, Harry.

我以纽约州法律赋予我的权力，宣布你们二人为夫妻。现在你可以吻新娘了，Harry。

vest in: 赋予。

7. Harry lifts the veil and kisses Susan. The guests laugh, applaud, and throw confetti.

Harry 掀开面纱，吻了 Susan。客人们又是笑，又是鼓掌，还抛撒五彩碎纸。

confetti: 五彩碎纸。婚礼结束时，宾客撒在新娘和新郎头上的碎彩纸，以表庆贺。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 20 课：黄金时光

ACT 1-1 “她真是忙个不停。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 和 Philip 各有工作，忙得没有时间互相关心或和家人在一起欢聚。这引起了 Robbie 和爷爷的不安。

[In the Stewarts' home at night. Grandpa is sitting in the living room. He is balancing his **checkbook**. Robbie enters and speaks with his grandfather.]

Robbie: Where's Mom?

Grandpa: She went to a school-board meeting.

Robbie: I don't know how she does it. She sure keeps busy.

Grandpa: It's important to her. There are lots of places to go, lots of things to do. She can't sit around and do nothing.
Philip works late.

Robbie: I guess you're right. I wish I had her energy.

Philip: [He enters the house.] Anybody home?

Robbie: We're in here, Dad.

Philip: Oh. Hi, gang.

Grandpa: Hello, Philip. How was your day?

Philip: My day was just fine. So was my night. It's almost ten o'clock. Mmm, I'm starving. Um where's Mom?

Robbie: She went to a school-board meeting.

Grandpa: There's a note for you on the refrigerator.

Philip: Oh?

[Philip enters the kitchen and reads the note on the refrigerator door. It says, "Honey, will be home late. Sandwiches in the fridge and cookies on the table. See you later. Love, Ellen."]

【语言点精讲】

1. He is balancing his checkbook.

他在核对支票簿上的款额。

balance one's checkbook: 核对支票存款户头。会计作业中，一纸中分为二栏，一边是资产，另一边是负债。二者相等则帐目无误，称为 balance。checkbook 是支票簿。美国的银行，会按月把客户当月所开的支票和收支对账单寄给客户，供其核对正确与否。客户要注意这些支票是不是自己开出的，以及在计算上是否有误。客户做这种核对的工作，称为“balance one's checkbook”。

2. I don't know how she does it. She sure keeps busy.

我真不知道她怎么受得了。她真是忙个不停。

sure (=certainly) 在这里是副词用法，修饰全句或谓语动词，强调说话人的感情或反应，特别多见于美国英语中的非正式口语。

keep busy: keep 在这里是半系动词，后面带形容词表语。

3. There are lots of places to go, lots of things to do. She can't sit around and do nothing.

有许多地方要去，有许多事要做，她总不能闲坐着无所事事啊。

sit around and do nothing: 闲坐着无所事事。

4. I wish I had her energy.

我但愿我也像她那样精力充沛。注意 wish 的宾语从句里用了虚拟语气。

5. Anybody home?

家里有人吗？

6. We're in here.

我们在里面。

7. My day was just fine. So was my night.

我今天干的很好，今晚也干的很好。

8. There's a note for you on the refrigerator.

冰箱上有她给你留的条子。在美国，家里人互相留言，常写在纸条上用一块磁铁吸在冰箱上，因为一回家开冰箱找吃喝就看见了。现在有一种小纸本，每页上方有一条不干胶，写完撕下即可贴在引人注意的地方，商标名叫 Post-it，也很受欢迎。

ACT 1-2 “一块曲奇饼干没关系。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 去参加校董会的会议了。晚归的 Philip 只能吃冷的三明治作为晚饭。

Philip: [He opens the refrigerator door and takes out a sandwich. He then sits at the kitchen table.] Did you have dinner, Robbie?

Robbie: Yeah. Mike and I had a hamburger at the diner. I came home a little while ago. You've been working late almost

every night this week, Dad. Aren't you **exhausted**?

Philip: I don't have time to be exhausted.

Robbie: You and Mom haven't had dinner together with us in almost a full week.

Philip: Yeah, I feel bad about us not having dinner with the family, but our schedules are so different. Either I'm at the hospital doing paper work, or Mom is at a **committee** meeting. I frankly don't know what to do about it.

Robbie: I'm worried about you and Mom. You really have been working too hard.

Philip: Well, I think I've had enough of that sandwich. [He leaves the unfinished sandwich on the plate and gets up from the table.]

Robbie: You didn't finish it.

Philip: It's not good to eat before going to bed. A cookie can't hurt, though. [He and Robbie each take a cookie from a plate.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Mike and I had a hamburger at the diner. I came home a little while ago.

迈克和我在餐车式餐馆吃了个汉堡包，我刚回家不久。

diner: (外表像餐车的) 餐馆。Diner 原来是较小、较简陋的餐馆，常装璜成火车餐车的样式，而且通常 24 小时营业。近年来有些 Diner 餐馆门面越来越豪华，已超越传统的模样了。

2. I feel bad about us not having dinner with the family.

我们不和家人一起吃晚饭，我觉得不对劲。

feel bad about doing sth.: 为做某事而心中感觉不安。

3. Either I'm at the hospital doing paper work, or Mom is at a committee meeting. I frankly don't know what to do about it.

不是我在医院里写书面材料，就是妈妈去开委员会。坦白地说我不知道该怎样解决。either...or...: 或者.....或者，不是.....就是.....

frankly: 坦白地，直率地，真诚地。

4. Well, I think I've had enough of that sandwich.

哦，我想这三明治我也不想再吃了。

to have had enough of sth. /sb.: 常可在表示“足够”以外，表达一种厌烦情绪。如，

I've had enough of your excuses.

Haven't you had enough of that noisy rock music?

5. It's not good to eat before going to bed. A cookie can't hurt, though.

睡觉前吃东西不好，但一块曲奇饼干没关系。

hurt 这个动词指造成损害或不利的效果，用否定式时产生了“也没什么不好，不妨.....”的含义。表建议时可以说：

It won't hurt (you) to take a drink now and then.

It never hurts to be kind to others.

表推荐时可说：

I don't think a short walk after lunch will hurt you.

Just a chocolate or two won't hurt.

ACT 1-3 “黄金时间。”

【故事梗概】

Philip 去睡觉了。Robbie 和 Grandpa 继续交谈。Robbie 对父母目前的这种“聚少离多”的状态很是担忧。

Philip: Well, I'm heading off for bed and a good night's sleep.

Robbie: Well, good night.

Philip: Good night, Son. [He goes into the living room.] Good night, Dad. I'm going to bed.

Grandpa: Good night, Philip.

Philip: Haven't you finished **balancing** that **checkbook**?

Grandpa: I found another mistake. I'll be off to bed myself in a minute.

Philip: OK. Good night.

[Philip leaves.]

Robbie: I'm really concerned about them, Grandpa.

Grandpa: Concerned about whom?

Robbie: About Mom and Dad. They hardly ever see each other. Dad often works late, and Mom has all these **committees** she's on.

Grandpa: What do you propose to do about it? You have that look in your eye.

Robbie: I don't know, but there must be a way of getting them to spend more time together Quality time.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, I'm heading off for bed and a good night's sleep.

好，我要上床去了，好好地睡一觉。

head off for: 是表示“直奔某处而去”的意思，是非正式的美国口语用法。但对不是极熟悉亲密的人不宜这样说。

2. I'll be off to bed myself in a minute.

过一会儿我也要去睡了。

be off to: 与 head off for 同义，也是表示“直奔某处而去”的意思。

3. I'm really concerned about them.

我真为他们担心。

be concerned about: 关心，挂念。

4. They hardly ever see each other. Dad often works late, and Mom has all these committees she's on.

他们几乎互相不能见面。爸爸常常工作到很晚，妈妈又在那么多委员会里担任工作。

hardly ever: 几乎从不，很少。近义的表达还有 almost never, seldom, rarely.

have all these committees she's on. : 在那么多委员会里担任工作。

5. What do you propose to do about it? You have that look in your eye.

你建议怎么办呢？从你眼神里看得出你有个主意。

propose to do...: 建议做.....

You have that look in your eye. : 从你眼神里看得出有那个意思。当你从对方的表情中看出他的想法时，可以说这句话。

6. I don't know, but there must be a way of getting them to spend more time together. Quality time.

我不知道，但应该有个办法让他们俩有更多的时间在一起度过。黄金时间。

quality time: 黄金时光。当人们在一起做他们极乐意做的事，或极值得做的事时，他们这段相处的时光非常宝贵，称为 quality time。

有些美国人喜欢把工作日程排得满满的，所以有时一家人很难得有时间相聚在一起。特别是近几年来，职业妇女开始增多，她们与家人孩子相处的时间较少。因而美国开始提倡“Quality Time”，意思是与家人共处是很重要的，它不在于时间长短。

ACT 2-1 “我有一些心事。”

【故事梗概】

当天晚上，Robbie 等着 Ellen 开会回来。他和 Ellen 讲了自己对父母这种几乎连见面的时间都没有的生活状况的担心。

Ellen: Hello there, Robbie. What are you doing up this late?

Robbie: Reading.

Ellen: Reading? At this hour? Ah, come on.

Robbie: What are you doing up this late?

Robbie: Things on my mind.

Ellen: Do you care to talk about them?

Robbie: Sure, if you don't mind listening.

Ellen: Robbie, Robbie, remember me? I'm your mother. If you have something you want to talk about, I'm always prepared to listen.

Robbie: You haven't been around much lately.

Ellen: So that's it. OK, let's talk.

Robbie: You and Dad are like ships that pass in the night. Dad works hard, and he works late. You work hard on all your **committees**, and you work late.

Ellen: I thought you were proud of the work I do.

Robbie: I am, Mom. Real proud. You are one **fantastic** mom, but...but I've been noticing how little **quality** time you spend with Dad and Me ...and the family.

Ellen: It's a real problem, Robbie. I know it.

【语言点精讲】

1. What are you doing up this late?

你这么晚不睡在干什么？

up: 醒着，不睡。在这里相当于 **awake**.

this: 这样，如此。在这里相当于 **so**.

2. Come on.

算了吧。实话实说吧，不要拐弯抹角。

3. Things on my mind.

我有一些心事。我在想一些事情。

on one's mind: 在这里指有心事。

4. Do you care to talk about them?

你愿谈谈吗？愿意和我谈谈吗？

5. You haven't been around much lately.

最近你常不在家。

around: 在家。在这里相当于 **at home**。

lately: 最近。

6. You and Dad are like ships that pass in the night.

你和爸爸像是黑夜交错而过的航船。

like ships that pass in the night: 像夜里交错而过的船。此短语可用来表示两个人之间没有时间相处，或只见到对方片刻。

7. I thought you were proud of the work I do.

我原以为你为我所做的工作感到骄傲。

thought: think 的过去式 thought 后带名词（宾语）从句，句中亦用过去时，表示原来是这样想的，因而常有现在不这样想，或现在发现这不符合事实的意思。

8. I am, Mom. Real proud. You are one fantastic mom, but...but I've been noticing how little quality time you spend with Dad and Me ...and the family.

我是感到骄傲，妈妈，真正的骄傲。你是一位了不起的妈妈，可是.....可是我最近注意到你和爸爸和我在一起度过的黄金时间太少了.....和全家在一起的时间太少了。

Real proud: 用 **real** 当副词修饰形容词或副词，限于美国口语中非正式用法，等于程度副词 **very**，并带一定的感情色彩。

one fantastic mom: 一位非常好的母亲。使用 **one+形容词+名词**，比用 **a+形容词+名词** 的结构显得更有感情。

ACT 2-2 “我想我有一个办法。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 建议他的父母一起去度假，但是 Ellen 认为他们的时间表不会允许他们去度假。于是，Robbie 又提了另一个方案。

Robbie: I'm **concerned**. There must be a way that Dad and you can spend more time together.

Ellen: Well, we always talk about taking a **vacation** together -- with the family.

Robbie: I think you ought to take a vacation away from the family -- alone. Kind of a second **honeymoon**.

Ellen: It would be wonderful, but our schedules won't allow it.

Robbie: I think I have an idea.

Ellen: You do?

Robbie: Yup. I think I have an idea that will bring Dad and you together in a more scheduled way.

Ellen: What is it?

Robbie: Well, you know how Dad is always talking about the kids in the **ward** and how important it is for them to be paid attention to?

Ellen: Yes.

Robbie: Well...and how hard it is because the doctors and nurses are so busy?

Ellen: Yes.

Robbie: Well, how would it be if you took some time to work with Dad towards solving that problem?

Ellen: I don't get it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, we always talk about taking a vacation together -- with the family.

噢，我们总说要一起去度一次假期——同全家在一起。

take a vacation: 度假。

with the family: 同家人一起。

2. I think you ought to take a vacation away from the family -- alone. Kind of a second honeymoon.

我认为你们应该离开家里人去度一次假期——就你们两人在一起，好像是个第二次蜜月似的。

I think you ought to...: 我认为你（你们）应该，必须……。用此来表示一种很强的建议。

away from the family: 离开家里人。

kind of: 是美国口语用法，也说 sort of，有时简拼为 kinda 或 sorta，用于名词或动词前，或甚至独立使用，有较强的状语功能，表示“好像是……，有点像……，大概如此”等模糊概念。

3. I think I have an idea that will bring Dad and you together in a more scheduled way.

我想我有一个办法能使你和爸爸较为定期地在一起。

4. Well, you know how Dad is always talking about the kids in the ward and how important it is for them to be paid attention to?

噢，你知道爸爸总是在谈病房里的孩子们，说一件很重要的事是要有人关心他们。

ward: 是医院住院部的一间病房或一个病区。在这里显然是指儿科病区。

for them to be paid attention to: 有人关心他们。

5. Well, how would it be if you took some time to work with Dad towards solving that problem?

那么，你为何不花点儿时间同爸爸一起设法解决这个问题呢？

How would it be if you took some time...?: 你何不花点时间……？用此结构来提建议。

work (with Dad) towards: (与爸爸合作) 致力于某个目标。

6. I don't get it.

我不明白，我不懂。相当于 I don't understand.

ACT 2-3 “你是个非常聪明的青年人。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 又向 Ellen 建了一个建议。这次，他巧妙地把父亲在医院的工作和母亲在教育方面的工作结合了起来，达到了使他俩产生共同兴趣的目的。Ellen 对这个建议很感兴趣，夸他是个聪明的年青人。

Robbie: Like setting up a regular weekly reading program. You and Dad. You and Dr. Philip Stewart -- going to the children's ward once or twice a week and reading to them.

Ellen: Not bad. Not a bad idea, Robbie. As a matter of fact, it fits right in with something I'm working on right now with the school-board committee.

Robbie: What's that?

Ellen: I've been trying to work out a program in the public school that will bring parents and teachers together once a week to read to the students -- their own children, really. By doing that, it will encourage reading.

Robbie: So it might fit in with a program for reading to the kids in the hospital.

Ellen: You're right. We'll do it! I'm going to talk to Daddy about it right now.

Robbie: But Dad was so exhausted when he came home from work. Why don't you talk to him about it tomorrow?

Ellen: You are a very smart young man, Robbie. I think I'll wait until tomorrow.

Robbie: You won't forget, will you?

Ellen: Believe me, I won't. It is a great idea, and I promise you I won't forget.

Robbie: Thanks, Mom.

Ellen: Thank you, Robbie. [She hugs him.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Like setting up a regular weekly reading program.

例如建立一项每周一次的阅读计划。

2. As a matter of fact, it fits right in with something I'm working on right now with the school-board committee.

事实上，这恰好同我正在和校董会委员会研究的一件事相吻合。

as a matter of fact: 事实上。

fit right in with: 恰好与.....相吻合。

3. I've been trying to work out a program in the public school that will bring parents and teachers together once a week to read to the students -- their own children, really.

我一直在研究要在公立学校设立一个计划，把家长和教师们聚在一起，每周一次给学生们——实际上是给他们自己的孩子们——读故事书。

try to do sth.: 尝试做某事。

work out a program: 制定出一个计划。想出一个方案。

4. But Dad was so exhausted when he came home from work. Why don't you talk to him about it tomorrow?

可爸爸从医院下班回来后累得不得了，你明天再和他谈这件事不行吗？

Why don't you do sth.? : 这是一个用于提建议的常用句式。

5. You are a very smart young man.

你是个非常聪明的青年人。

Robbie 不但提出了好建议，还能指出马上找 Philip 谈是不恰当的，故此 Ellen 说他 smart。称未成年男孩为 young man 表示对他的尊重或期望，但有时对方会不高兴，认为有调侃的意思，宜慎重。

ACT 3-1 “你这话我再同意不过了。”

【故事梗概】

第二天早上，当 Philip 喝咖啡读报纸的时候，Ellen 过来和他讨论她正在筹备的阅读项目。

Ellen: Good morning. What a wonderful morning! Don't the flowers smell wonderful?

Philip: Good morning, Ellen. Yes, they do. That's why I'm reading my paper and having my coffee on the patio this morning. Ah, it does smell sweet. How was your school board meeting last night? You must've come home very late.

Ellen: Did you find the sandwich I made for you?

Philip: Thanks, dear. I was so tired! I didn't even finish it.

Ellen: Philip, I've been working on this special project with the school board, and I'd like your opinion about it.

Philip: What is it?

Ellen: I have been trying to find a way to encourage reading.

Philip: Good luck!

Ellen: Well, I think I may have found a way to do it.

Philip: Tell me about it. I work with families every day, Ellen. I see how people spend their leisure time -- young and old.

Ellen: Mostly watching television. Well, that would be OK if, and I repeat, if people took the time to read.

Philip: I couldn't agree with you more.

【语言点精讲】

1. What a wonderful morning! Don't the flowers smell wonderful?

What a wonderful morning! : 多好的早晨啊! 这是一个由 what 引导的感叹句。

Don't the flowers smell wonderful? : 这花儿闻起来好香, 是不是? 这是一个反问句, 问话者在期待对方赞同自己的观点。

2. It does smell sweet.

它的确闻起来很香。

does: 在这里表示强调, 后面接动词原形。

3. You must've come home very late.

你(昨天)一定回来得很晚。

must have come: 在推测过去发生的事时, must do 变为 must have done。

4. I've been working on this special project with the school board, and I'd like your opinion about it.

我一直在和学区校董会设计一项特别项目, 我想听听你对这项目的意见。

5. Good luck!

祝你好运! 在这里 Philip 的意思是: 祝你成功! 这说明 Philip 认为要想使学生阅读是一件很可能劳而无功的事。

6. Well, I think I may have found a way to do it.

嗯, 我认为我可能已经找到一种办法能做到这一点。

I may have found...: 我已经找到.....。这是一个虚拟语气的句子。用 may have+ 过去分词或者 might have+过去分词, 表示“过去可能”。

7. Mostly watching television. Well, that would be OK if, and I repeat, if people took the time to read.

对, 主要就是看电视呗。说起来, 那到没有什么关系, 只要, 我再说一遍, 只要人们肯花时间去读书。

if, and I repeat, if...: 要强调调话中某个词时常用这个说法。又如 I will not, and I repeat, not, allow you to stay out till after eleven.

8. I couldn't agree with you more.

你这话我再同意不过了。这是常用的强调地表示同意的说法。

ACT 3-2 “从你的神气里可以看得出来。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 向 Philip 描述了自己的计划, 她以商量启发的口吻征求 Philip 的意见, 并且事先以温情的语言来引导。果然, Philip 对于阅读计划逐渐积极起来, 并主动提出在医院儿科病区里开始。

Ellen: The question is, how do we get them to read more?

Philip: I think you're going to give me the answer to that question. You have that look in your eye.

Ellen: I do have an answer, Philip. Or at least I think I do.

Philip: Well, tell me about it.

Ellen: The plan is a simple one. Involve the entire family in a reading project.

Philip: In the home?

Ellen: Yes, in the home. But first in the schoolrooms.

Philip: Hmm, interesting. But how do you plan to do that?

Ellen: By **arranging** with the public schools to schedule one hour a week -- to start with. During that time parents are invited to attend -- and to read along with the children -- their children.

Philip: It can go beyond the school system, Ellen.

Ellen: Really?

Philip: I **guarantee** you it would go very well in the hospitals. My patients -- mostly kids -- would love to read and be read to.

Ellen: You think so?

Philip: I know so.

【语言点精讲】

1. The question is, how do we get them to read more?

问题是，我们怎样才能促使他们多读一些书呢？

2. I think you're going to give me the answer to that question. You have that look in your eye.

我想这问题的答案正是你想要告诉我的，从你的神气里可以看得出来。

You have that look in your eye. : 在这里的意思是 I can see from your eyes that... . 英语中常用单数的 **eye** 表示一种容貌的特点、判断力、性格或表情。又如，He has an eye for the best designs. /She had sadness in her eye. 单数的 **ear** 也常用来表示判断力，如，I have no ear for music.

3. I do have an answer, Philip. Or at least I think I do.

我的确已经有了答案，Philip，至少我认为我已经有了答案。

4. Involve the entire family in a reading project.

让全家人都参与阅读计划。

5. By arranging with the public schools to schedule one hour a week -- to start with.

与公立学校商定好，开始先每周安排出一个小时的时间（搞阅读）。

public schools: 在美国指公立学校，而在英国却指相当贵族化的少数几所私立寄宿学校，学费很贵。

6. It can go beyond the school system.

这种做法可以推广到学校体制以外的范围。

beyond: 超出。

7. I guarantee you it would go very well in the hospitals. My patients -- mostly kids -- would love to read and be read to.

我向你保证，这项活动可以在医院里开展得非常好。我的病人——主要是孩子们——会很喜欢自己阅读和听别人朗读的。

I guarantee: 我保证。

go: 在这里是“推行，行得通”等意思。又如，I think your plan won't go with the factory owners.

ACT 3-3 “你愿和我一块儿干吗？”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 和 Philip 都认为在医院里给孩子们读书是个很好的计划，这也可以让他们有更多的时间在一起。

Ellen: Maybe we can **experiment** with your patients and see how the plan works.

Philip: I love the idea. Would you work with me on it?

Ellen: I would love to, Philip. [She sits on his lap.]

Philip: And that way, we'll spend more time together, Ellen. We just don't see each other anymore.

Ellen: You and I are very busy these days. This is true. We need to find time to be together more, to do things together more----you and I. This would be a wonderful way to **accomplish** that.

Philip: I have a question.

Ellen: Yes?

Philip: What do we read?

Ellen: To the patients in the ward?

Philip: Yes.

Ellen: Well, let's you and I talk about it. What would you like to read to them?

[They think.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Maybe we can experiment with your patients and see how the plan works.

也许我们可以在你的病人中先试试，看这项计划是否可行。

experiment with: 用.....来进行试验。

2. Would you work with me on it?

你愿和我一块儿干吗？

3. I would love to, Philip.

我非常愿意（和你一块儿干）。

I would love to: 在这里是 I would love to work on it with you. 的省略。

4. She sits on his lap.

她坐在他的腿上。

lap: 膝盖。

5. And that way, we'll spend more time together, Ellen. We just don't see each other anymore.

而且那样一来，我们就会有较多的时间在一起了。我们俩现在简直是谁也看不见谁了。

6. Well, let's you and I talk about it. What would you like to read to them?

嗯，你和我两人商量一下吧。你愿意给他们读什么书呢？

let's you and I: let's 是 let us 的略语，因此这样说不合语法的，但在美国却很常听见，不以为怪。

ACT 3-4 “雪夜林边小驻”

【故事梗概】

几天之后，在医院里，Philip and Ellen 试行了他们的阅读计划。他们为孩子们朗读了 Robert Frost 的诗歌并取得了大成功。

Philip: Mrs. Stewart and I will read a poem by Robert Frost.

Ellen: It's called "Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening".

Philip: Would you begin, Ellen?

Ellen: All right. "Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening" by Robert Frost.

[She reads the poem.]

"Whose woods these are I think I know.

His house is in the village though;

He will not see me stopping here

To watch his woods fill up with snow."

Philip: [He reads the poem]

"My little horse must think it queer

To stop without a farmhouse near

Between the woods and frozen lake

The darkest evening of the year.

Ellen: He gives his harness bells a shake

To ask if there is some mistake.

The only other sound's the sweep

Of easy wind and downy flake."

Ellen & Philip: "The woods are lovely, dark and deep

But I have promises to keep,

And miles to go before I sleep,

And miles to go before I sleep."

Grandpa: You two belong on stage! That was wonderful!

Ellen: Grandpa!

Philip: Dad...Robbie. When did you come?

Grandpa: We've been listening to you both. These are lucky kids.

Robbie: Do you enjoy reading together?

Philip: Well, we may read together aloud at home.

Grandpa: You were right, Robbie.

Robbie: [He smiles.] I know.

【语言点精讲】

1. Mrs. Stewart and I will read a poem by Robert Frost.

a poem by Robert Frost: Robert Frost 作的一首诗。

Robert Frost: 是美国最著名的诗人之一。他的诗曾四次获得 Pulitzer 奖。Frost 的许多诗是描写乡下农村生活的。他的诗也以富有哲理而著名。他曾说过: 他的梦想是写出“几首难被人抛弃的诗”。Frost 的最著名的诗包括: “摘苹果之后”, “补墙”, “没有走过的路”以及“雪夜林边小驻”。最后这一首是美国学校中最常研读的诗之一。

2. It's called "Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening".

Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening: 雪夜林边小驻。是 Robert Frost 写的最著名的诗作之一。

woods: 树林。

3. Whose woods these are I think I know. / His house is in the village though; / He will not see me stopping here / To watch his woods fill up with snow.

我想我知道树林的主人, / 然而他的房子远在它村。 / 他看不见我在这里停留, / 看着皑皑白雪落满树林。

fill up with: 积满, 落满。

4. My little horse must think it queer / To stop without a farmhouse near / Between the woods and frozen lake / The darkest evening of the year. /

我的马驹一定在诧异 / 为何停在远离农舍的地方, / 在一年中最黑暗的夜里 / 停在林边与冰封的湖旁。

queer: 奇怪, 与众不同。queer 在句中是宾语补语。注意, 这个字用在男人身上时过去是“同性恋者”的委婉说法, 不宜用。

frozen: 结冰。

5. He gives his harness bells a shake / To ask if there is some mistake. / The only other sound's the sweep / Of easy wind and downy flake.

他轻摇銮铃, 似乎在问 / 是否我停错了地方。 / 万籁无声, 只有微风轻拂 / 使羽毛般的雪片习习作响。

harness: 马具, 挽具 (将马系在车上用的皮革或金属套)。

sweep: 一阵..... (掠过)。

downy flake: 柔细的雪片。downy 是 down (n., 羽绒) 的形容词形式。这种表达方式仅用于诗歌中。

6. The woods are lovely, dark and deep / But I have promises to keep, / And miles to go before I sleep, / And miles to go before I sleep.

树林多么美好, 幽暗深邃, / 但我与人有约, 不能违背。 / 还需长途跋涉才许入睡, / 还需长途跋涉才许入睡。

have promises to keep: (我) 要遵守诺言。可以用 have+ n.+ to do (sth.) 的结构来解释你为什么不能去做其他的事情。例如:

I can't stay because I have work to do.

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 21 课：小池塘里的大鱼

ACT 1-1 “她是个讨人喜欢的孩子。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 和 Harry 再看 Michelle 试穿他们给她新买的衣服。Susan 表达了她对他们的新婚生活的满意。但是 Harry 似乎有心事。

Michelle: I really like this one. Susan. Do you?

Susan: Turn around, Michelle. Let me see the back of it. [Michelle turns around.] I like it a lot. It fits well. It doesn't need any alterations. We must've bought the right size.

Harry: like the color. She looks good in blue.

Michelle: I like blue, too, Daddy.

Susan: Try on the skirt and blouse outfit, Michelle, the one that Daddy wanted you to wear.

Michelle: OK. [She leaves the room.]

Harry: Michelle has been a different kid since we've been married. She's never been happier.

Susan: And I've never been happier. Harry. [She kisses him.] I love her very much. She's been a joy.

Harry: We're very lucky, the three of us...and becoming part of the Stewart family, too.

Susan: We couldn't ask for anything more, could we?

Harry: Well...

Susan: Well? Could we ask for anything more?

【语言点精讲】

1. I like it a lot. It fits well.

我很喜欢它，它很合身。

I like it a lot.: 这里 a lot 是状语，修饰谓语 like，要放在它后面。

fit: 合适，合身。

2. It doesn't need any alterations. We must've bought the right size.

不需要任何改动，我们显然买对了尺码了。

alteration: 修改。这里指的是改动衣服的尺寸使其合身。

must've bought the right size: 显然买对了尺码。用“must have (or must've) + 过去分词”是对过去发生的事情作出的肯定的推论。

3. She looks good in blue.

她穿蓝色很好看。

in: 表示穿着什么衣服

4. Try on the skirt and blouse outfit, Michelle, the one that Daddy wanted you to wear.

你试一下那套裙子和衬衫套服，Michelle，就是爸爸要你穿的那一套。

blouse: 女式衬衫。

outfit: 基本的含义是一套的东西。这里指套服。

5. Michelle has been a different kid since we've been married. She's never been happier.

从我们结婚以来，Michelle 似乎变了一个人，她从未像现在这样快乐过。

She's never been happier. : never 这个表示否定的词与比较级联用，实际上表达的是最高级的含义。这种组合所表达的强调的语气比较强烈。

5. She's been a joy.

她是个讨人喜欢的孩子。

a joy: 这里指人。这是英语一个常用的修辞手法。注意 joy 在这里是可数名词，指一个人时要有不定冠词。又如，That boy is a headache.

6. We couldn't ask for anything more, could we?

我们不能要求更多的幸福了，是不是？

ACT 1-2 “再换回你的牛仔裤。”

【故事梗概】

在 Harry 打算把心事托出的时候, Michelle 进来了。他们的注意力又转到了 Michelle 的新衣服上。

Harry: Well...we...

Michelle: [She enters the room in her new skirt and blouse.] How do you like it, Daddy?

Harry: It's my favorite outfit.

Susan: It's good for every day. It will be good for school, Michelle.

Michelle: I like it, too. I always like skirts that go like this. [She twirls around to show how the skirt moves.] Do you want to see the winter jacket on me, Susan?

Susan: Yes, I do. Change back into your jeans, and put on the new winter jacket we bought today.

Michelle: OK. [She leaves the room.]

Susan: What did you mean by "well...?" You had something on your mind when I said we couldn't ask for anything more.

Michelle: [She enters.] Is everything all right?

Harry: Everything is fine, Michelle.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's good for every day. It will be good for school.

它适合每天穿。上学穿它会很好。

be good: 适合于。

every day: 每天。在作为形容词时连写为 everyday, 意思为日常的。

2. I always like skirts that go like this.

我一直喜欢这样飘动的裙子。

go: 在这里表示即将用实际行动表达的一种动作。如在哼一个曲调前可说 The song goes like this. 又如, 在教一个舞蹈动作时可以说 The left foot goes like this.

3. She twirls around to show how the skirt moves.

她旋转身躯来显示裙子如何飘动。

twirl around: 快速转动。

4. Change back into your jeans, and put on the new winter jacket we bought today.

再换回你的牛仔裤, 穿上我们今天买的冬季夹克。

change: 这里是换衣服。

jeans: 牛仔裤, 又称 blue jeans, dungarees, denims, denim jeans。

winter jacket: 冬季夹克, 棉衣。

5. You had something on your mind when I said we couldn't ask for anything more.

当我说我们什么都有的时候, 你显然是有话要说。

ACT 1-3 “一家大的会计公司要我去工作。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 对 Susan 讲出了他的心事: 他得到了一个新的工作机会, 但是这个工作是在洛杉矶。

Susan: Let's take a look at the winter jacket. Come on over here, honey.

Michelle: It's kind of warm.

Susan: It is. That's why we bought it for you. This will be a perfect jacket for the wintertime when it's very cold out. But it's kind of small also. We must've bought the wrong size.

Harry: Looks like we should've bought a bigger one. I guess we'll have to exchange it, too. I'm sure the store has others.

Michelle: I look silly! It is too small!

Susan: You're growing so fast, Michelle.

Michelle: Can I take it off? I'm hot!

Susan: Sure. Put it back in your room, and we'll **hang** everything up later.

[Michelle leaves the room.]

Susan: [to Harry] Well, are you going to tell me what's on your mind, Harry?

Harry: I have been offered a job with a major **accounting** company in Los Angeles. [repeating] I have been offered a job with a major accounting company in Los Angeles.

Susan: Los Angeles? That's a big decision.

Harry: I know. It will also affect you and your job, if we decide to go.

Susan: Wow! It sure will. But first tell me about the job, Harry. If it's a good one, then we'll make it work for us.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's kind of warm.

它很暖和。

kind of: 是状语, 相当于 sort of, a bit, somewhat. 口语中常读作 kinda.

2. Looks like we should've bought a bigger one. I guess we'll have to exchange it, too. I'm sure the store has others.

看来我们本该买一件大一点的。我想这一件我们也得去换掉, 我敢说店里还有别的。We should've bought...: 我们本该买……。用 "should have + 过去分词" 表示遗憾, 即对于本该做但是没有做成某事而感到惋惜。

exchange: 这里指换掉已购买的商品。

3. We'll hang everything up later.

过一会儿我们来把它们都挂起来。

4. Are you going to tell me what's on your mind?

你要不要把你心上的事跟我说一下?

这里 going to 表示个人的意图, what 在从句中是主语。当疑问词是句子主语时, 问句的动词谓语保留在陈述句中的形式和语序, 即不必倒装, 亦不用另加助动词的办法。这样的问句成为名词从句时, 语序也不产生变化的问题。

5. I have been offered a job with a major accounting company in Los Angeles.

洛杉矶一家大会计公司向我提供一个职位。

6. If it's a good one, then we'll make it work for us.

如果这工作不错, 那么我们就考虑接受下来。

ACT 1-4 “明天才正式谈。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 告诉 Susan, 如果他接受了这个工作, 全家可能就要搬到洛杉矶去。而这将影响 Susan 的事业。

Harry: I have a client in the **garment** business on Seventh **Avenue**. I do his taxes every year. He has a big sales office in Los Angeles and the company in Los Angeles that does his major accounting work is looking for an **executive**. And he **recommended** me.

Susan: That's wonderful, Harry.

Harry: Yes, but it would mean that we'd have to move to L.A.

Susan: What about the salary?

Harry: The real discussion comes tomorrow. Susan, I don't plan to make any decisions until I have a chance to talk with you about it.

Susan: I understand, Harry.

Harry: And I don't have to make a quick decision. They know that I'm married and that I have a family.

Susan: Well, there's a lot to think about. If it's a good job, then I've got to do some thinking about my career **opportunities** in Los Angeles.

Michelle: [She enters again.] Is everything OK?

Susan: Yes, honey.

【语言点精讲】

1. I have a client in the garment business on Seventh Avenue. I do his taxes every year.

我有个经营成衣业的客户，在第7街，我每年为他处理申报税款工作。

client: 委托人，客户。

garment: 衣服，成衣。

do his taxes: 这里指为他处理税务工作。在美国，每年需要自己填写报税单，大部分的公司以及一些个人会把报税的事情委托给专业的会计公司来处理。

2. He has a big sales office in Los Angeles and the company in Los Angeles that does his major accounting work is looking for an executive. And he recommended me.

他在洛杉矶有个很大的销售办事处，而洛杉矶承办他主要的会计工作的公司正在物色一名主管人员。他就推荐了我。

sales office: 销售办事处。

looking for an executive: “executive”是指公司的总经理，董事，主管。高级经理人才因难寻而抢手。专有一些人（或公司）代人寻觅这种人才，称为“猎头”（head-hunting），相反，一般的人觅取职业称为 job-hunting。

3. Yes, but it would mean that we'd have to move to L.A.

是的，可那意味着我们得搬家到洛杉矶去。

move to sp.: 搬到某地去。

L.A.: 洛杉矶。是 Los Angeles 的缩写。很多人喜欢用 L.A. 称洛杉矶。

4. What about the salary?

工资怎么样？

5. The real discussion comes tomorrow.

明天才正式谈。

6. If it's a good job, then I've got to do some thinking about my career opportunities in Los Angeles.

如果这职务不错的话，那么我就得想一想我在洛杉矶的工作机会了。

career opportunities: 工作机会，事业机会。

ACT 2-1 “可我的心没有。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 到 Susan 的办公室去找她一起吃午饭。Susan 和 Grandpa 讲了 Harry 得到了一个在洛杉矶的工作机会的事情。

Grandpa: Hello. Hello, there. [He hugs Susan.] Are you ready for the lunch with your Grandpa?

Susan: Oh! Hi, Grandpa. Yes, of course, I am, but my mind isn't.

Grandpa: What's the matter, Susan?

Susan: A real dilemma.

Grandpa: Does it have anything to do with you and Harry?

Susan: Yes, but I don't know where to start.

Grandpa: Maybe I can help. Tell me what it is, Susan.

Susan: Thanks, Grandpa. Please sit down. Oh! [She takes the toy dinosaur that was on the chair so that Grandpa can sit down.] Harry has been offered a job in Los Angeles.

Grandpa: Well, this is something to think about.

Susan: There are so many things to consider. There's Michelle. I wonder if a move would be a bad thing for her. And my job. I don't know if I can get a good job in Los Angeles. And what about our family?

【语言点精讲】

1. Yes, of course, I am, but my mind isn't.

我是准备好了，可我的心没有。（可我有点心事。）

2. A real dilemma.

我遇到真正的进退两难的困境了。

dilemma: 进退两难的困境，大伤脑筋的事。

3. Does it have anything to do with you and Harry?

是关于你和 Harry 的事吗？

4. Yes, but I don't know where to start.

是的，可是我不知从何说起。

5. She takes the toy dinosaur that was on the chair so that Grandpa can sit down.

她拿起椅子上的玩具恐龙，好让爷爷能坐下。

dinosaur: 恐龙。

6. I wonder if a move would be a bad thing for her.

我不知道迁居对她来说是不是件坏事。

这句话属于间接问句的形式，从句由 if 引导，使用陈述句语序。wonder 在这里表示说话人不能肯定，在由它引入“两可”性质的从句时，主要表示否定含义。

ACT 2-2 “总得有一方做出牺牲的。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 给 Susan 当了好参谋，并指出去与留的利弊，还强调了她自己应该做出抉择。幸福的婚姻意味着有时一方要为另一方做出牺牲，这是充满人生哲理的过来人之言。

Grandpa: Can I tell you what I think?

Susan: Tell me.

Grandpa: I think that you're very **successful** and that you have a **fantastic reputation** in the toy industry. I think you could talk to Mr. Marchetta, and I think he could help you find a real good job in Los Angeles. He was very helpful to me, remember?

Susan: I **suppose** I could call him. But I'm not so sure that I want to leave New York, you, and the rest of our family.

Grandpa: Well, I'm not going to kid you, Susan. You know we'd all miss you. But this should be your decision. It's something that only you and Harry can work out.

Susan: If moving to L. A. is in Harry's best interest, I have to do what I can do to support him.

Grandpa: In every **marriage**, **sacrifices** have to be made by one partner from time to time.

Susan: And what about Michelle?

Grandpa: Well, what do you think?

Susan: I think Michelle is better off staying where she is.

Grandpa: What does she think?

Susan: I don't know for sure.

Grandpa: Well, you'll have to ask her.

Susan: I think I'm going to have a talk with Mr. Marchetta and get his feelings about my leaving, and about helping me find a job in Los Angeles.

Grandpa: Good idea.

Susan: I'll call him right now. No point in delaying. Thanks, Grandpa. [She calls Mr. Marchetta.]

【语言点精讲】

1. I think that you're very successful and that you have a fantastic reputation in the toy industry.

我认为你事业很成功，你在玩具业里有非常好的声誉。

reputation: 声望, 声誉, 信誉。

industry: 工业, 企业。

2. I'm not going to kid you.

我不和你开玩笑。

3. If moving to L. A. is in Harry's best interest, I have to do what I can do to support him.

如果搬到洛杉矶对哈里最为有利的话, 我该竭全力支持他。

to be in someone's interest: 符合某人的利益。

do what I can: 竭尽全力。尽我所能。

4. In every marriage, sacrifices have to be made by one partner from time to time.

在所有的婚姻里, 时不时总得有一方做出牺牲的。

sacrifices: 牺牲。

from time to time: 有时, 不时。

5. I think Michelle is better off staying where she is.

我认为 Michelle 就呆在这里可以生活得更好。

better off: 境况(尤指经济境况)较好。相当于 in a better situation or condition。

6. I think I'm going to have a talk with Mr. Marchetta and get his feelings about my leaving, and about helping me find a job in Los Angeles.

我想我要去和 Marchetta 先生好好谈一谈, 听听他对我离开的意见, 还要谈谈他帮我在洛杉矶找个工作的问题。

have a talk with: 好好谈一谈。

get his feeling about my leaving: 看看他对我离开的意见。

7. No point in delaying.

没理由拖下去。

ACT 2-3 “这是千载难逢的好机会。”

【故事梗概】

Harry 正在和他的生意伙伴 Bill York 一边吃午饭, 一边讨论在洛杉矶的这个工作机会。这个工作机会很诱人。Harry 必须在周末前做出决定。

Bill: Harry, it's the perfect job for you. You'll love it.

Harry: It's a big decision for me, Bill, and I have to discuss it with my wife. I don't know if it's right for her.

Bill: She'll love it. It's a once-in-a-lifetime offer, Harry.

Harry: OK. Tell it to me again.

Bill: The company is Craft and Craft, the biggest [accounting](#) company in the country.

Harry: I know the company well, it's big.

Bill: The biggest.

Harry: Yeah, yeah. The biggest. When do I have to let you know?

Bill: Talk it over. Think it over. Let me know by the end of the week.

Harry: When would we have to move?

Bill: As soon as possible.

Harry: I also have my daughter to consider. I don't want to [interrupt](#) her school year.

Bill: Let me know by the end of the week. It's a great [opportunity](#) for you, Harry. Believe me. [He shakes Harry's hand as he gets ready to leave.]

Harry: I know.

Bill: Craft and Craft is the biggest in the country.[He leaves.]

Harry: Yeah, I know. The biggest.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's a once-in-a-lifetime offer.

这是千载难逢的好机会。

once-in-a-lifetime: 千载难逢（的好机会）。

2. Talk it over. Think it over. Let me know by the end of the week.

先和她好好谈谈，你好好考虑考虑，在周末以前告诉我。

3. When do I have to let you know?

我什么时候得给你回话？

When do I have to...?: 向对方确认自己有多少时间来完成某件事的时候，可以用这个句型。

4. I also have my daughter to consider. I don't want to interrupt her school year.

我还有女儿的事得考虑，我不想让她在学期中间搬家。

have sb. to consider: 还有某人的事得考虑。

ACT 2-4 “我为什么不应该觉得好呢？”

【故事梗概】

当天晚上，Susan 和 Harry 在讨论 Harry 的这个新的工作机会。Susan 可以在洛杉矶找到新的工作。现在问题的焦点是 Michelle 是否会希望搬到洛杉矶去。

Susan: I think Michelle is **asleep** now. Let's talk.

Harry: I met with Bill York today.

Susan: And I talked With Mr. Marchetta. Did York make the offer?

Harry: Yup. He asked me if I want the job.

Susan: That's exciting, Harry. What was it?

Harry: A **vice-presidency** with the biggest **accounting** company in the country Craft and Craft.

Susan: Aren't you excited about that?

Harry: Sure, I am. But there's so much more to consider.

Susan: I talked to Mr. Marchetta.

Harry: What did he say? Did you tell him about me?

Susan: Of couses, Harry. I want what's best for you, and I think I can get a good job through Mr.Marchetta in Los Angeles also.

Harry: You're kidding.

Susan: No, I'm not kidding. I talked with him, and he understands **completely**. He has a major toy buyer in Los Angeles, and he's pretty sure that I can get a good job there.

Harry: **Unbelievable!**

Susan: But I think we should talk to Michelle about all of this.

Harry: Your're right. We'll talk to her about it.

Susan: And how do you feel about taking the job in Los Angeles?

Harry: How should I feel? It's the biggest company in the country.

Susan: Well, then you feel good about taking it?

Harry: Well... I feel fine about it. Why shouldn't I?

【语言点精讲】

1. Did York make the offer?

York 提出聘请了吗？

make the offer: 提供，提议。在这里指提出工作邀请，提供工作机会。

2. A vice-presidency with the biggest accounting company in the country Craft and Craft.

全国最大的会计公司——克拉夫特及克拉夫特公司——的副总裁。

A vice-presidency with : (公司) 的副总裁职位。

3. I want what's best for you, and I think I can get a good job through Mr. Marchetta in Los Angeles also.

我想要你得到对你最有益的职务，我想我也能通过 Marchetta 先生在洛杉矶找到一个好工作。

what's best for sb.: 对某人最有利的事物。

4. No, I'm not kidding. I talked with him, and he understands completely. He has a major toy buyer in Los Angeles, and he's pretty sure that I can get a good job there.

不，我不是在开玩笑。我和他谈了，他完全理解。他在洛杉矶有个玩具大买主。他相当肯定我能在那儿得到一个好职务。

understand completely: 完全理解。

buyer: 这里是指“买主，主顾”。但大公司专管采购原料或进货的职员也称为 buyer。

pretty sure: 相当肯定。

5. Why shouldn't I?

我为什么不应该觉得好呢？

这句话时常有为自己辩护，表示抗争，或要克服自己心中的疑虑的潜意。在这里，Harry 显然还下不定决心，不能完全说服自己。

ACT 3-1 “我想听听你的意见。”

【故事梗概】

第二天，Susan 和 Michelle 谈了他们要搬到洛杉矶的事情。Michelle 并不希望搬家，但是她很通情达理。

Michelle: I love my school. I have so many good friends there now. I wouldn't miss a day even if I were really sick.

Susan: Come and sit down for a minute, Michelle. I'd like to talk to you about something. Something important.

Michelle: What's wrong, Susan?

Susan: Oh, there's nothing wrong, Michelle. But your daddy and I are talking about something that I'd like your **opinion** about.

Michelle: I know. I heard you talking about it the other night when I was trying on my new clothes. It's about moving to Los Angeles.

Susan: You're right. How do you feel about it?

Michelle: Well, I really wouldn't want to move, but...

Susan: But?

Michelle: But if you and Daddy wanted to, I guess you know what's best for the family and for me.

Susan: That's very **considerate** of you, Michelle. But what about your friends?

Michelle: I'd miss them a lot, but I know what it feels like to miss someone.

Susan: Honey, we don't have to move if you're not going to be happy about it.

Michelle: Does Daddy want to move?

Susan: I think so. He's going to tell us tonight about the job offer.

【语言点精讲】

1. I wouldn't miss a day even if I were really sick.

我就是真的病了，我也不会有一天不去学校。

were: 用于所有人称和数，是表示现在的虚拟条件，其主句中常用 would (should) do something, 表示现在及未来的虚拟结果。

miss: 在句中表示“漏过”或“错过”，与表示“怀念”的 miss 不同。

sick: 有“生病”和“恶心，呕吐”两义。一般表示生病时，如果可能引起混淆，常用 ill 或 not well 代替。

2. But your daddy and I are talking about something that I'd like your opinion about.

只是我和你爸爸正在讨论一件事，对此我想听听你的意见。

3. That's very considerate of you.

你真能体谅人。

considerate: 体贴的, 体谅别人的。

4. I'd miss them a lot.

我会非常想念他们的。

miss: 在这里表示“怀念, 想念”。

5. I know what it feels like to miss someone.

我知道想念一个人是什么滋味。

这里 it 是先行主语, 代替动词不定式 to miss。to feel like...在这里是“有.....的感觉”的意思, 又如: What does it feel like to go without food for a whole day?

ACT 3-2 “我看得出你现在情绪很好。”

【故事梗概】

稍后, Harry 回来了。晚饭前, Susan 和 Michelle 表明了虽然她们喜欢生活在纽约, 但是会坚决支持 Harry 的决定。

Harry: Well, how was everybody's day today?

Susan: Michelle was chosen to do the school poster for the play this year.

Harry: Congratulations, Michelle! That's something! And how was your day, Susan?

Susan: I see you're in a good mood. Why don't you tell us about your day?

Harry: I met with Bill York.

Susan: It's OK to talk about it, Harry. Michelle knows all about it.

Harry: Really?

Susan: Really, Harry. Michelle and I have all kinds of feelings about leaving New York, the family, and friends. But if you think you should take the job, we're behind you.

Harry: What about Michelle's school?

Susan: We'll move after the school term.

Harry: What about her new friends?

Michelle: I'll make new friends wherever we are as long as we're together.

Susan: We're a family, Harry. Whatever you think is right for you is right for us.

Harry: I am so touched. The two of you are really something.

Michelle: We love you, Daddy.

Harry: And I love you.

【语言点精讲】

1. Michelle was chosen to do the school poster for the play this year.

Michelle 被选中给今年学校演剧绘制招贴画了。

do: 在这里代表更具体的 design 或 draw。学校里这一类事常挑选好学生或有特长的学生去做, 对学生是一种鼓励。

poster: 海报, 招贴画。

2. That's something!

太好了! 太棒了!

That's something 指这是一件了不起的事。反之, it's nothing 指那算不了什么。

3. I see you're in a good mood. Why don't you tell us about your day?

我看得出你现在情绪很好, 你何不把你今天的事给我们谈一谈呢?

in a good mood: 情绪好, 心情好。

4. Michelle and I have all kinds of feelings about leaving New York, the family, and friends. But if you think you should take the job, we're behind you.

Michelle 和我对于离开纽约，离开家人和朋友们，心情很复杂。可是如果你认为你应当接受这一工作，那我们支持你。

all kinds of feelings: 复杂的心情。

We're behind you. : 我们支持你。

5. I'll make new friends wherever we are as long as we're together.

只要我们能在一起，无论我们在哪儿，我都可以交得到新朋友

as long as we're together: 只要我们在一起。这里 as long as 表示一个条件，而不是像字面上那样表示时间长度。这句话既透露了米歇尔的痛苦的过去，也显示她面对未来的勇气。

6. I am so touched. The two of you are really something.

我真感动，你们两个人真是了不起。

touched: 非常感动。

ACT 3-3 “我是小池塘里的大鱼。”

【故事梗概】

另 Susan 和 Michelle 惊讶的是，Harry 并没有接受那份工作。Harry 不想为一个大公司工作，他想要创建自己的公司，做自己的老板。他们不用搬家了，这是个令全家都很高兴的决定。

Susan: OK. Now, tell us about your talk with Mr.York. Did you take the job?

Harry: Nope.

Michelle: What?

Susan: No? You didn't take it?

Harry: No, I did not take the job.

Michelle: But, Daddy. I thought...

Susan: Harry, you didn't turn it down because of me...

Michelle: Or me?

Harry: No, no. I turned it down because of me.

Susan: How's that?

Harry: Well, I began to think about you and about Michelle, and then I asked myself, do I really want to work for the biggest company in the country?

Susan: And?

Harry: And I don't. I went into business for myself because I like being my own boss. I run my own company. I'm a big fish in a little pond. I'm not really sure I want to be a little fish in a big pond.

Michelle: Oh, Daddy, does that mean we don't have to move?

Harry: That's right, sweetheart.

Susan: Are you sure?

Harry: I couldn't be more sure, Susan.

Susan: I'm glad if you are, Harry.

Harry: And besides, how could I live in Los Angeles when all my favorite people live here?

Susan: Your favorite people?

Michelle: Who's that?

Harry: The Stewart family, of course.

【语言点精讲】

1. But, Daddy. I thought...

可是，爸爸，我还以为.....

thought: 过去时态的 thought 常表示某一想法是不符合事实的，已被新的认识所推翻；这一句是极好的例证。

2. Harry, you didn't turn it down because of me...

Harry, 你不是为了我而拒绝的吧.....

turn (it) down: 拒绝。

3. How's that?

这是怎么回事?

4. I went into business for myself because I like being my own boss. I run my own company. I'm a big fish in a little pond. I'm not really sure I want to be a little fish in a big pond.

我自己经商是因为我喜欢自己当自己的老板。我是小池塘里的大鱼, 我并不真的认为我情愿当大池塘里的小鱼。

go into business: 经商, 从事商业。

I'm a big fish in a little pond. : 我是小池塘里的大鱼。用这句话来形容小单位的主管, 他在单位中可以独当一面, 但如果换到一个大单位, 可能面临许多竞争, 地位也可能变成几个小主管其中的一个了。

5. I couldn't be more sure.

我再肯定不过了。

6. How could I live in Los Angeles when all my favorite people live here?

我最喜欢的人都在这里, 我怎能住到洛杉矶去呢?

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 22 课: 职业选择

ACT 1-1 “我左右为难。”

【故事梗概】

自从儿子出生后, Marilyn 一直呆在家里照顾孩子。她一方面想回去工作, 另一方面又舍不得儿子。

[Marilyn Stewart is singing a popular lullaby to her baby, Max.]

Marilyn:

Rock-a-bye, baby, on the tree top,

When the wind blows,

The cradle will rock.

When the bough breaks,

The cradle will fall,

And down will come baby,

Cradle and all.

[Marilyn is in the living room. She is looking at the fashion designs she has drawn.]

Richard: Hi, Marilyn. What are you doing?

Marilyn: Just sketching. I've been thinking a lot about our responsibilities in the past few weeks.

Richard: I never stop thinking about them.

Marilyn: I've been wrestling with the question of whether I go back to work or not.

Richard: I see.

Marilyn: And I'm torn. I really want to go back to work, use my talents, and pursue my career in fashion design like we always thought I would. But now... I want to be with Max as a full-time mother, especially when he's a baby.

Richard: I really understand, Marilyn But you never have to worry about Max. There's Mother and Grandpa... and I can always arrange my photo schedule around your schedule, if that will help.

Marilyn: It's not the same, Richard.

Richard: Have you discussed going back to work with your boss?

【语言点精讲】

1. Marilyn Stewart is singing a popular lullaby to her baby, Max.

Marilyn Stewart 在给她宝宝 Max 唱一首广泛流行的摇篮曲。

lullaby: 催眠曲, 摇篮曲。

2. Rock-a-bye, baby, on the tree top, / When the wind blows, / The cradle will rock. / When the bough breaks, / The cradle will fall, / And down will come baby, / Cradle and all.

摇呀摇, 宝贝, 安睡在树梢, /刮起了风时, /小摇篮就摇。/刮断了树枝, /摇篮往下掉, /连摇篮带宝贝, /摔了一大交。

Rock-a-bye: 摇呀摇。

cradle: 摇篮。

bough: 大树枝。

3. I've been wrestling with the question of whether I go back to work or not.

我在左思右想, 是否要回去工作。

wrestling with the question: 遇到难题而左思右想。

whether ... or not: 是否。用 whether 从句尾可用 or not, 但以 if 代替 whether 时, 比较保守的语法家认为不应加上 or not。

4. And I'm torn. I really want to go back to work, use my talents, and pursue my career in fashion design like we always thought I would.

我左右为难了。我真的想回去工作, 使用我的才智, 像我们一直想的那样从事我时装设计的事业。

I'm torn: 我左右为难。我不确定该做怎样的决定。凡因疑难而感到焦虑或形成分裂, 常可用这个表达。torn 是 tear 的过去分词, 意指两个想法把自己向不用的方向牵扯。

pursue: 追求, 继续, 从事。

fashion design: 时装设计。

5. I can always arrange my photo schedule around your schedule, if that will help.

再说我总是可以避开你的工作时间来安排我的摄影工作, 假使这样做有用的话。

around: 表示设法安排以适应或避开。

6. It's not the same.

那是不一样的。

ACT 1-2 “你也得为你自己设想才是。”

【故事梗概】

一天前, Marilyn 的雇主 Rita Mae 打电话来问她什么时候可以回去工作。Marilyn 很难决定是选择作为一个时装设计师的职业还是选择作为一个妈妈。

Marilyn: Rita Mae called yesterday.

Richard: Ah! That's what's got you thinking, isn't it?

Marilyn: She wants to know when I think I'll be returning to the boutique.

Richard: And you said?

Marilyn: I said I'd give her an answer in a few days... that I wasn't sure.

Richard: I'm sure Rita Mae will understand and wait until you're ready to go back to work.

Marilyn: Well, maybe she will, and maybe she won't. Who knows? If I don't accept her offer, maybe she'll find someone else in the meantime, and when I'm ready to go back, there won't be a job for me.

Richard: That's something to consider. You've got yourself to think about, too.

Marilyn: But I am thinking about myself. Don't you see?

Richard: What do you mean?

Marilyn: It's not just the job. It's also my career as Max's mother. That's the way I look at it. I have two career opportunities at the same time. My career as a fashion designer and my career as a mother.

Richard: I never really thought about being a mother as a career. I guess you do have two career opportunities and a

decision to make.

[They hear the baby cry.]

Marilyn: I hear Max.

Richard: I'll go to him.

Marilyn: No, that's Ok. I'll do it.

【语言点精讲】

1. That's what's got you thinking, isn't it?

就是那件事勾起你的心事，是不是？

get sb. doing: 表示使人或物开始行动。

2. If I don't accept her offer, maybe she'll find someone else in the meantime, and when I'm ready to go back, there won't be a job for me.

如果我不接受她的工作，也许她会在这段时间里另找个人，那样等到我能够回去时，就没有我的工作。

accept her offer: accept 表示“接受”，与 receive 表示“接到”不同。

in the meantime: 同时，在这段时间。

3. That's something to consider. You've got yourself to think about, too.

这倒是一个需要考虑的问题，你也得为你自己设想才是。

get yourself to think about: 替自己考虑，为自己设想。

4. I never really thought about being a mother as a career. I guess you do have two career opportunities and a decision to make.

我从来没有真正地把当母亲作为一种事业前途来考虑过。我想你现有两种事业机会，需要作出一个决定来。

think about A as B: 是把 A 当作 B 来考虑。

5. I hear Max.

我听到 Max（哭了）。

ACT 2-1 “做母亲可真不容易。”

【故事梗概】

星期六的早上，Ellen 和 Marilyn 在一起照看 Max。Marilyn 讲起了带 Max 去打针的故事。

Ellen: [She puts Max's teddy bear in his playpen.] There's your teddy bear, Max. He just loves that teddy bear that Grandpa Philip bought for him.

Marilyn: I took him to Philip's office yesterday for a checkup. You should have seen the look on his face when Molly gave him the injection.

Ellen: Oh, did he cry?

Marilyn: No. My dear little boy just looked up at me as if to say, "Mama, what are they doing to me? Help!"

Ellen: How did you feel? Tell the truth. Didn't you feel terrible?

Marilyn: I sure did. I held him closely. I kissed the top of his dear little head. He looked up at me. He tried to smile. Being with him helped.

Ellen: Helped him? Or helped you?

Marilyn: Being a mother is not easy, if that's what you mean.

【语言点精讲】

1. He just loves that teddy bear that Grandpa Philip bought for him.

他就是喜欢祖父 Philip 给他买的这只玩具熊。

2. I took him to Philip's office yesterday for a checkup. You should have seen the look on his face when Molly gave him the injection.

我昨天带他去菲利普的诊室里去检查身体。当莫莉给他注射的时候，他脸上的那表情，可惜你没看见。

checkup: 身体检查。

should have done sth.: 表示本应该做某事,但是没有做成。常含有遗憾、责备等感情色彩。

injection: 注射。

3. Tell me the truth. Didn't you feel terrible?

实话告诉我,你没感到很害怕吗?

tell me the truth: 和我说实话。告诉我实话。

4. Being with him helped.

这句话中,being 是动名词,充当句子的主语。但这句话因为 helped 后面没有宾语,所以意思就模棱两可了,因此 Ellen 才问:“Helped him? Or helped you?”如果说:“My being with him helped.”就可以明白是 helped him.

5. Being a mother is not easy, if that's what you mean.

做母亲可真不容易,也许你是这个意思。

ACT 2-2 “不尽然。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 问起了 Marilyn 是否决定回去工作的事情。Marilyn 问起了 Ellen 当时是如何在工作和照顾孩子之间进行选择的。

Ellen: Speaking of being a mother, I've been meaning to ask you what you were thinking about regarding going back to work. I know Rita Mae called I can imagine what is going through your head.

Marilyn: I'm sure you can, Ellen.

Ellen: There are so many things to consider. One thing that makes it easier for you is that you have us. Max will always have a family member to watch over him while you're at work. I didn't have that when Richard and Susan were born.

Marilyn: What did you do?

Ellen: I chose to continue with my career as a music teacher. We hired a woman to watch Richard and then Susan, and I continued with my career.

Marilyn: Do you think you made the right decision?

Ellen: I think I did. But when Robbie was born, I decided to give full-time attention to raising Robbie. I felt differently at that time.

Marilyn: And you gave up your career as a music teacher?

Ellen: Not exactly. I continued to teach piano lessons at home.

【语言点精讲】

1. Speaking of being a mother, I've been meaning to ask you what you were thinking about regarding going back to work.

至于说做母亲嘛,我一直想问问你,关于回去工作的问题你是怎样考虑的?

speaking of: 说到,谈到,至于。用于引出一个与前面提到的事有联系的新话题。

I've been meaning to ask you...: 动词的完成进行时态,强调从某时起一直延续到说话时(并可能还要继续进行下去)的动作。这是比较生动,富有感情色彩的时态。

mean to do sth.: 欲想,打算。

to ask you what you were thinking about...: 在从疑问句转变过来的名词从句里,要用陈述句语序,因此 what were you...变为 what you were... 了。

regarding: 关于。

2. I know Rita Mae called I can imagine what is going through your head.

我知道 Rita Mae 来过电话了,我能猜想出你都想了些什么。

go through: 经过(思虑)。

3. Max will always have a family member to watch over him while you're at work.

在你工作的时候,Max 总能有家里人在照看他。

watch over: 照看, 照顾。

at work: 上班, 工作。

4. We hired a woman to watch Richard and then Susan, and I continued with my career.

我们请了个保姆来照看 Richard, 后来是照看 Susan, 我继续从事我的事业。

We hired a woman to...: 这里指的是雇用全天工作的保姆, 而不是短时间的 baby-sitter。

continue with sth.: 继续。相当于 keep doing。

5. But when Robbie was born, I decided to give full-time attention to raising Robbie. I felt differently at that time.

可是 Robbie 出生时, 我决定把全部时间和注意力都用来抚育 Robbie。那时候我的心情已经变了。

give full-time attention to doing sth.: 集中注意力做某事。

raise: 养育, 抚养。也可以用 bring up。

6. Not exactly.

不尽然。不尽是这样。

ACT 2-3 “事实上, 我的确如此。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 加入了 Ellen 和 Marilyn。Susan 说她一整周都在惦记 Max。

Marilyn: How did you feel about being away when Susan and Richard were babies?

Ellen: I think I did the right thing for them and for myself and for Philip. We needed the money. Remember?

Marilyn: Well, we do too, Ellen. Everything I earn helps us towards getting that house we want and need.

[Susan joins Ellen, Marilyn, and Max on the patio.]

Susan: I can't wait till he's just a little older. Our toy company makes the most wonderful toys for kids.

Marilyn: Max thanks you. I thank you. And Richard thanks you. Now may I please say hello?

Susan: [to Marilyn] Hello.[to Ellen] Hello. I miss Max and think about him all week long. We talk about him at dinner time.

Ellen: Will you please try to relax? I've never seen you so wound up.

Marilyn: You seem to be enjoying the pressure.

Susan: The truth is, I am. My job is not an easy one, but I really enjoy it.

Marilyn: That is exactly what I wanted to talk to you about, Susan.

【语言点精讲】

1. How did you feel about being away when Susan and Richard were babies?

Susan 和 Richard 小的时候, 你(把他们放在家里)自己出去工作, 当时你的心情如何?

2. I think I did the right thing for them and for myself and for Philip. We needed the money. Remember?

我认为我为他们做了一件正确的事, 也为我自己和 Philip 做了一件正确的事。我们当时需要那笔收入, 记得吗?

Remember?: 问人是否 remember, 常带有较微妙的含义, 其实有“这事我提到过, 别忘了, 你应该知道, 你不该不明白”, 等意思。这里 Ellen 是意在强调她当时景况还不富裕, 需要去工作。此事 Marilyn 是知道的, 现在又提一下。因此这个 remember 有“怨我又提到你已经知道的事”的含意。

3. I can't wait till he's just a little older. Our toy company makes the most wonderful toys for kids.

我迫不及待地希望他长大一些, 我们的玩具公司为小孩子们制造了最好的玩具。

can't wait till ...: 不能等到.....时候, 迫不及待。

4. I miss Max and think about him all week long.

我想念 Max, 整个一星期都在想他。

miss sb. 和 think about sb. 都是“想念某人, 惦记某人”的意思。

5. Will you please try to relax? I've never seen you so wound up.

你能不能努力放松一下？我从来没有看见过你这么紧张。

wound up: 非常兴奋，紧张。原形为 wind up。

6. The truth is, I am.

事实上，我的确如此。I am 是“I am enjoying the pressure.”的省略。

ACT 2-4 “为什么必须有这个就没有那个？”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 把自己在工作和孩子间不知该如何选择的问题讲给了 Susan。Susan 认为她可以同时选择这两者，因为她可以在家里工作。

Susan: What's the problem?

Ellen: Marilyn's career.

Marilyn: Well, my choice of careers.

Susan: Choice?

Marilyn: My career as a fashion designer **versus** my career as a mother.

Susan: Why does it have to be one or the other?

Ellen: That's what I said.

Marilyn: How's that?

Susan: Why can't you do both?

Ellen: She's right.

Marilyn: Both?

Susan: Well, that's what I do. I have a job, and I have Michelle. I take care of both to the best of my ability. It's not easy, but what is?

Ellen: And that's what I did. I did both with Richard and Susan, and did both with Robbie.

Marilyn: I thought you stayed home with Robbie.

Ellen: I did. But I was lucky enough to have a career as a music teacher which I could continue at home.

Susan: Why can't you work at home, Marilyn? You're very talented. Designing dresses is a career you could **establish** out of your home, couldn't you?

【语言点精讲】

1. My career as a fashion designer versus my career as a mother.

一个事业是时装设计师，另一个是当母亲。

versus: 与……相对；对照着。

2. Why does it have to be one or the other?

为什么必须有这个就没有那个？

one or the other: 指从两者中选择其一。

3. How's that?

那是怎么说？

4. Well, that's what I do. I have a job, and I have Michelle. I take care of both to the best of my ability.

不错，我就是那样做的。我有工作，我还有 Michele，我尽我所能把两方面都照顾好。

to the best of my ability: 尽我所能。相当于 as well as I can。

5. It's not easy, but what is?

这是不容易，可什么事容易呀？

what is 的后面省略了 easy。

6. I thought you stayed home with Robbie.

我原以为你是呆在家里照顾 Robie 的。

stay home: 呆在家里。

7. Designing dresses is a career you could establish out of your home, couldn't you?

时装设计是一种你可以在家里创立起来的事业，不是吗？

establish: 开办，建立。

out of: 在这里是以……为基地或中心进行活动的意思。

ACT 2-5 “我为什么没有想到这一点。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 的建议点醒了 Marilyn。困扰了 Marilyn 几个月的难题似乎一下子变得简单了。

Marilyn: I don't know why I didn't think of it. It seems so simple now. For a year or two I could stay at home with Max and do my dress designs.

Ellen: And you could make your dresses at home,

Susan: Sounds like a great way to solve the problem.

Ellen: That could solve your problem, Marilyn.

Marilyn: I'm going to call Rita Mae at home and ask her to come by and talk about it. She wants to see Max, anyway.

Susan: I think that really answers your questions, Marilyn. You can do it. Do your designs at home here.

Marilyn: And let Rita Mae do the selling at the boutique.

Ellen: And you can both benefit financially.

Marilyn: I'm going to call Rita Mae right now. Oh, Susan, thank you so much for coming all this way from the city to talk to me about it. I hope you don't mind having taken so much time away from your busy schedule.

Susan: Are you kidding? I don't mind at all. As a matter of fact, I came to spend some time with my favorite nephew.

[She bends over the playpen.]

Ellen: I think you should call Rita Mae right now. I think your idea of working at home is perfect.

Marilyn: I don't know what I would do without you I'm lucky to have you all.

Ellen: We are lucky to have you, Marilyn.

Susan: And so is Max.

【语言点精讲】

1. I don't know why I didn't think of it. It seems so simple now.

搞不懂，我为什么没有想到这一点。现在好像问题很简单了。

在讨论问题时，这句话，以及后文出现的“Sounds like a great way to solve the problem.（听起来像是一个极好的解决问题的方法。）”

和“I think that really answers your questions.（这能够解决你的问题。）”都可以用来表示某人对某个建议表示赞同，认为其有助于解决问题。

2. I'm going to call Rita Mae at home and ask her to come by and talk about it. She wants to see Max, anyway.

我要给 Rita Mae 家里打电话，请她过来谈这件事，反正她也想看看 Max 呢。

call sb. at home: 打电话到某人家里。

anyway: 无论如何（反正）。

3. And let Rita Mae do the selling at the boutique.

让 Rita Mae 在时装屋负责销售那一头的事。

do the selling: 负责（销售）。

4. And you can both benefit financially.

而你们双方都能得到经济效益。

benefit financially: 挣得利润。

5. Oh, Susan, thank you so much for coming all this way from the city to talk to me about it. I hope you don't mind having taken so much time away from your busy schedule.

噢，Susan，真感谢你从城里大老远来到这儿和我谈这件事。你那么忙，却为我花了那么多时间，望你不要为此介意。

6. As a matter of fact, I came to spend some time with my favorite nephew.

事实上，我是来与我心爱的小侄子呆一会儿的。

as a matter of fact: 事实上，实际上。

7. I don't know what I would do without you I'm lucky to have you all.

我真不知道我没有你们该怎么办，我有你们大家，真是幸运。

这句话是用来表达自己的感谢之情的常用语。

ACT 3-1 “这是个好兆头。”

【故事梗概】

星期六的晚上，Marilyn 和 Ellen 在和 Max 玩儿的时候，Marilyn 的雇主 Rita Mae 来了。

Ellen: [She looks at Max in his playpen.] Hi, big guy.

[The doorbell rings.]

Marilyn: That must be Rita Mae.

Ellen: She sure got here quickly. That's a good sign. She must like you and your work, Marilyn.

Marilyn: I think she's just anxious to see Max. She loves children. [She goes to the door.]

Rita Mae: Hi, Marilyn.

Marilyn: Welcome. It's so nice of you to come.

Rita Mae: Oh, I just wanted to see your baby, Max.

Ellen: Hello, Rita Mae.

Rita Mae: [to Ellen] I haven't seen you since the hospital.

Ellen: I'm Ellen Stewart, Marilyn's mother-in-law.

[She shakes Rita Mae's hand.]

Rita Mae: We met at the hospital. Hello. How are you?

Ellen: I remember. How are you?

Rita Mae: Oh, and there is Max! Oh! My, how he's grown! [She give Marilyn a present.] A little present for Max.

Marilyn: [She opens the present. It is a silver spoon.] Oh, it's beautiful, Rita Mae! You shouldn't have.

Rita Mae: It's nothing. It's just a little present for Max.

【语言点精讲】

1. Hi, big guy.

嗨，小家伙。这里故意把这小男孩称为“big guy”。

2. She sure got here quickly. That's a good sign.

她来得真快。这是个好兆头。

a good sign: 一个好兆头。

3. I think she's just anxious to see Max. She loves children.

我想她只是渴望看到 Max，她最喜欢孩子们了。

be anxious to do sth.: 急切、渴望做某事。anxious 与 eager 相较，口气稍重。eager 是渴望、巴不得怎样，而 anxious 则常是焦虑、急切的意思。be anxious to do something 则常是和 eager 同义，但更强调其急切。

4. It's so nice of you to come.

你能来真是太好了。

5. I haven't seen you since the hospital.

我从上次在医院见到你一次之后，一直还没有见到你呢。

since the hospital: 相当于“since I met you at the hospital”。 the hospital 指 Marilyn 生 Max 后大家去医院看望一事。

6. My, how he's grown!

噢，天啊，他长得这么大了！

My: 在这里用来表示惊讶。

how he's grown: 在惊叹句中常省略表示所惊讶的性质的形容词或副词，这里是 how big 的意思。

7. [She opens the present. It is a silver spoon.] Oh, it's beautiful, Rita Mae! You shouldn't have.

[她打开礼物，是一把小银匙。]噢，美极了，Rita Mae！你不该这样破费的。

She opens the present. It is a silver spoon. : 西方人的一个传统的习惯是，当你接受了礼物时，一定要当场打开。在你表示了你
对礼物的欣赏之情之后，向送礼者当面道谢。这是一种礼节。银勺或银杯是送给新生儿的很传统的礼物，因为这是婴儿需要的第一个用
具。通常父母们都会把银勺、银杯珍藏起来做为纪念。

You shouldn't have. : 你不该买礼物。你不该破费。这是别人送重礼时常说的客气话。should not have done sth. 这里的动词是
过去虚拟语气，指本不该做某事（但是已经做了）。

ACT 3-2 “如果你需要什么就告诉我。”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 对 Rita Mae 讲了自己打算在家里工作的构想，Rita Mae 对此很感兴趣。

Ellen: Can I get you some coffee or tea or a cold drink, Rita Mae?

Rita Mae: Oh, nothing, thank you.

Ellen: Well, I will leave you two to talk. [to Max] Come on, you big guy. Yes, come on. [She picks up the baby.] That's
it.

Ellen: [to Rita Mae] It's nice seeing you. Let me know if you need anything. [She leaves.]

Rita Mae: Thanks, Ellen.

Marilyn: Thanks, Ellen

Rita Mae: OK, Marilyn. You sounded like you've made a decision when you called me. I'm all ears.

Marilyn: I have made a decision, Rita Mae. I've decided to stay at home and be a **full-time** mother.

Rita Mae: I'm **disappointed**, but I respect your decision. If I had a child as **cute** as Max, I might do the same thing.

Marilyn: But I haven't finished telling you the other half of my decision.

Rita Mae: The other half?

Marilyn: Yes. I think I can stay at home and take care of Max and continue my career.

Rita Mae: Sounds interesting. Let me hear it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Can I get you some coffee or tea or a cold drink? -- Oh, nothing, thank you.

你要点咖啡、茶或冷饮吗？-- 噢，不要了，谢谢你。

a cold drink: 冷饮，指的是类似可乐的软饮料。

Oh, nothing, thank you. : 西方社交礼节，如客人拒绝，主人即不再问。因此到他们家中作客时，如主人问要不要吃喝什么，想要宜
直接说要，否则就会挨饿忍渴。

2. Well, I will leave you two to talk. [to Max] Come on, you big guy. Yes, come on. [She picks up the baby.] That's it.

好，我走开，让你们俩谈谈吧。[对 Max 说]来吧，你这个大小人。对，来吧。[她抱起婴儿。]行了。

I will leave you two to talk. : 我走开，你们俩谈吧。

That's it. : 这里的 it 指想做的事或希望发生的事。在忙乎一阵后终于做好一件事时常这样说。如进餐时上完最后一道菜, 出门前给孩子穿戴打扮好, 上场前化妆完毕穿好戏中服装, 经过摆姿势打灯光最后按下相机的快门, 等等。这个 it 常重读。

3. Let me know if you need anything.

如果你需要什么就告诉我。

4. You sounded like you've made a decision when you called me. I'm all ears.

你给我打电话时的口气听起来好像你已做出了决定。我现在洗耳恭听。

I'm all ears. : 我洗耳恭听。我迫切想听听。

类似的说法还有,

She was all smiles. (她满面堆笑。)

The children were all eyes at the zoo. (孩子们在动物园里眼睛都忙不过来。)

5. I'm disappointed, but I respect your decision.

我很失望, 但我尊重你的决定。

I'm disappointed: 我很失望。如说 He's a disappointing boy, 则是令人失望的意思。

6. If I had a child as cute as Max, I might do the same thing.

我要是有个像 Max 一样可爱的孩子, 我可能也会这样做的。

这是一个虚拟语气的句子, 从句 if 用过去式 had, 表示和现在事实相反。

7. Sounds interesting. Let me hear it.

听起来很有意思, 跟我说说。

ACT 3-3 “我正是这样想的。”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 打算在家里做定制婚纱, Rita Mae 认为这是一个很好的想法。

Marilyn: Do you remember our talks about custom-designed dresses for the boutique?

Rita Mae: I sure do.

Marilyn: Why can't I design dresses for you here at home? And make them here. Have the fittings here, too.

Rita Mae: And I could do the selling and the pricing at the boutique.

Marilyn: Exactly.

Rita Mae: Oh! What kind of dresses would you design?

Marilyn: I've thought about that for some time.

Rita Mae: Yes?

Marilyn: Wedding dresses.

Rita Mae: Wedding dresses? Brilliant idea! There's a big market today in wedding dresses.

Marilyn: That's what I thought.

Rita Mae: I like the idea very much. And if it's successful, we can expand to all kinds of dresses.

Marilyn: That's what I thought.

【语言点精讲】

1. Do you remember our talks about custom-designed dresses for the boutique?

你还记得吗? 我们谈过时装屋可以搞为个别顾客专门设计的时装。

custom-designed: 为顾客特别要求设计的; 定制的。

2. Why can't I design dresses for you here at home? And make them here. Have the fittings here, too.

我为什么不可以在家里为你设计时装呢? 也在家里缝制时装, 连试样子都在这里。

fittings: 试衣, 试穿。定制衣服必需在半成品时进行试穿, 视是否适合而改正瘦长短, 称为 fittings。

3. And I could do the selling and the pricing at the boutique.

我可以在时装屋里管销售、定价那一头。

pricing: 做价, 定价。

4. Brilliant idea! There's a big market today in wedding dresses.

这主意真高明! 现在结婚礼服的需求量很大。

Brilliant idea! 这主意真高明!

There's a big market for...: 表示有销路, 需求量大。

5. That's what I thought.

我正是这样想的。

用来表示赞同对方的话。

6. I like the idea very much. And if it's successful, we can expand to all kinds of dresses.

我很喜欢这主意, 如果它成功了, 我们可以扩展到各种时装。

expand: 扩大, 发展。

ACT 3-4 “你这话当真?”

【故事梗概】

Rita Mae 希望 Marilyn 为自己的一个侄女设计一件婚纱, 这将是 Marilyn 的第一个客户。

Rita Mae: As a matter of fact, I have a customer for your first wedding dress. My niece is getting married, and I've been trying to find just the right thing for her. Marilyn, you're going to design my niece's dress. That'll be our first one, and then we'll use it to sell others.

Marilyn: Do you really mean it?

Rita Mae: I really mean it. It's a simple idea, and it will work. You can certainly design dresses. I know that. And there's no reason why you can't do it from your home.

Marilyn: I'm so excited! I can't wait to tell Richard!

Rita Mae: If I had a baby like Max, I'd want to stay home and be near him all the time, too. You're making the right decision for Max and for yourself too, Marilyn.

Marilyn: It all sounds so easy.

Rita Mae: Now the hard work begins.

Marilyn: Would you like to see some of my designs that I've been working on?

Rita Mae: I'd love to. [She begins to look at Marilyn's dress designs.] Ooh! Oh, that's wonderful! Ooh...

【语言点精讲】

1. As a matter of fact, I have a customer for your first wedding dress.

事实上, 我已经为你的第一件结婚礼服找到了一个顾客。

as a matter of fact: 事实上, 实际上。

2. Do you really mean it?

你这话当真?

Rita Mae 很痛快就同意了 Marilyn 在家里工作的想法, 还给她介绍了第一位客人, 一切顺利得令 Marilyn 不敢相信。这句问话就表达出了 Marilyn 的难以置信的感觉。

3. I really mean it. It's a simple idea, and it will work. You can certainly design dresses. I know that. And there's no reason why you can't do it from your home.

我是真心实意的。这是个简单的想法, 而它会成功的。你肯定是个设计服装的能手, 这我很清楚。没有什么理由说你不能在家里设计出来。

I really mean it. : 相当于 I mean what I said.

there's no reason why you can't do it: 这是一个双重否定句, 强调肯定的语气。

4. I can't wait to tell Richard!

我迫不及待地想告诉 Richard!

can't wait to do sth. : 迫不及待地要做某事。

5. If I had a baby like Max, I'd want to stay home and be near him all the time, too.

我若是有个像 Max 那样的宝宝, 我也会想要呆在家里一刻不离开他的。

这句话用了虚拟语气, 表示与现在的事实相反的假设。

6. Now the hard work begins.

现在要开始艰苦的工作了。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 23 课: 社区服务中心

ACT 1-1 “他就要过来谈这个问题的。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 正在家里读报纸。他正在阅读的晨报上, 有一篇社论文章使他烦恼。

Robbie: [He enters the patio.] Morning, Grandpa. Is something the matter, Grandpa?

Grandpa: The **editorial** in this paper made my friend Nat Baker really upset. Ah! I'll read it to you. "The old library building on Chestnut Street, which has been **vacant** for over a year now, was supposed to be made into a community center to serve the senior citizens as well as the younger people of Riverdale. Due to lack of funds for the repainting of the **interior** of the building and for the furniture needed, the plans for the community center have been postponed **indefinitely**." He's coming over to talk about it.

Robbie: Is it that serious a problem, Grandpa?

Grandpa: It is. Nat's not as lucky as I am, Robbie. He doesn't have any family with him. He lives alone and depends on places like a community center to be with people -- people his own age.

Robbie: But there's the old community center on Elm Street.

Grandpa: It's small, and the problem is that it's set up **primarily** for kids to play. The Ping-Pong tables, soda machines, and lots of music. It's too noisy for some older people like Nat.

Robbie: I never realized that.

【语言点精讲】

1. The editorial in this paper made my friend Nat Baker really upset.

这张报纸上的社论着实令我的朋友 Nat Baker 不高兴。

editorial: 社论。

make sb. upset: 使某人很不高兴, 使某人感到沮丧。

2. The old library building on Chestnut Street, which has been vacant for over a year now, was supposed to be made into a community center to serve the senior citizens as well as the younger people of Riverdale.

栗树街上的旧图书馆大楼已闲置一年多, 原计划改建为社区中心, 为里弗代尔的老年公民和年轻人服务。

vacant: 空的, 空闲的。

was supposed to: 原本应当做某事 (但是没有做)。

community center: 社区中心。

senior citizens: 老人。这是一种比较尊敬的说法。

as well as: 也, 以及, 和。

3. Due to lack of funds for the repainting of the interior of the building and for the furniture needed, the plans for the community center have been postponed indefinitely.

由于缺乏粉刷内部并购置所需家具的资金, 建立社区中心的计划已被无限期推迟。

due to: 由于。

lack of funds: 缺乏资金。

repainting: 重新粉刷。

the furniture needed: 意思相当于“the furniture which is needed.” furniture 为集合名词, 没有复数, 一件家具是 a piece of furniture。类似的词还有 machinery, equipment 等。

be postponed indefinitely: 无限期的推迟。

4. He's coming over to talk about it.

他就要过来谈这个问题的。

5. He lives alone and depends on places like a community center to be with people -- people his own age.

他独自生活, 依赖像社区中心这一类的地方来同别人——和他年纪差不多的人——接触。depend on: 依赖, 依靠。

to be with people: 与别人在一起, 与人接触。

6. It's small, and the problem is that it's set up primarily for kids to play. The Ping-Pong tables, soda machines, and lots of music.

那太小了, 而且问题是, 它主要是为供孩子们游戏而设立的。有乒乓球台、冷饮出售机, 还经常放音乐。

primarily: 主要地。

Ping-Pong: 乒乓球, 也称 table tennis。

soda machine: 冷饮出售机。

ACT 1-2 “我懂你的意思了。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 和 Robbie 在说话的当空, Alexandra 来了。她来帮助 Robbie 准备他的数学考试。

Grandpa: It's hard for some older people to take all that noise. That's why the new community center is a good idea. Part of the building for older people, part of the building for younger people.

Robbie: I see what you mean.

[The doorbell rings.]

Grandpa: That must be Nat.

Robbie: It could be Alexandra. She's coming over this morning to help me with my math.

[He answers the door.]

Alexandra: Hi, Robbie.

Robbie: Hi, Alexandra. Come on in. Do you want something cold to drink?

Alexandra: I'd love some cola, please.

Robbie: Cola coming up. I really appreciate you coming over to help me with my math. My final exam is next Tuesday.

Alexandra: You're so good in all your other subjects. I just can't understand why you have so many problems with math.

Grandpa: [He enters the kitchen.] Hi, Alexandra.

Alexandra: Hi, Mr. Stewart.

Grandpa: I thought that was Nat Baker who rang the front doorbell. Don't let me interrupt you.

Robbie: No problem, Grandpa. We're just having some cola before getting to the tough stuff -- math.

【语言点精讲】

1. It's hard for some older people to take all that noise. That's why the new community center is a good idea.

要某些老年人忍受那样的吵闹声是很痛苦的, 因此建立新的社区中心是个好主意。

take: 这里指忍受。

That's why: 最好不要译为“这就是为什么……”, 因为汉语中不习惯用此说法。可以译成“因此, 正因为这样”。

community center: 社区活动中心。

2. I see what you mean.

我懂你的意思了。

3. It could be Alexandra. She's coming over this morning to help me with my math.

也可能是 Alexandra，她今天上午要过来帮我学数学。

could be: 表一种可能性。

is coming over: 这是用现在进行时表将来，而这个动作通常是已经计划好的。

help sb. with sth.: 在某事上帮助某人。

4. I'd love some cola, please. -- Cola coming up.

请给我点可乐。——可乐马上就来。

cola: 是“可乐”型饮料（如 Coca-Cola, Pepsi-Cola）的简称。另一简称 Coke 只限于 Coca-Cola，若明确指另一种时称 Pepsi。

Cola coming up.: Robbie 故意用饭馆侍者的应答口吻，以示马上遵命。

5. I really appreciate you coming over to help me with my math. My final exam is next Tuesday.

我真感谢你过来帮我学数学，我星期二就要期末考试了。

you coming over: coming 在这里是动名词，you coming 是主谓关系的结构，作 appreciate 的宾语。虽然也可以说 your coming，但在非正式英语中较少用，特别是在这个结构当句子宾语时用得更少。

6. I thought that was Nat Baker who rang the front doorbell. Don't let me interrupt you.

我还以为前门按电铃的是 Nat Baker 呢，别让我打扰你们。

I thought that was...: 这是一个很好的例子，说明“I thought + 宾语从句”常表示原来想的与事实不符。爷爷很尊重别人的隐私权，故在打扰了两个孩子之后急忙表示歉意，并进行解释。interrupt: 打搅，打断。

7. No problem, Grandpa. We're just having some cola before getting to the tough stuff -- math.

没关系，爷爷。我们喝点可乐就去研究那令人头痛的问题——数学。

No problem: 没问题。近年的美国流行说法，用于别人道歉、解释、请求等情况下，表示愿意为人办事或不介意。

the tough stuff: 令人头痛的问题，棘手的问题，困难的东西。tough 与 hard 大致相同，但 tough 更口语化。

ACT 1-3 “当年我也是这样。”

【故事梗概】

在 Grandpa, Alexandra 和 Robbie 三人谈话的时候，Robbie 意外的得知，学工程出身的 Grandpa 在高中时代也不喜欢学数学。

Alexandra: He'll do anything to avoid getting down to math lessons, Mr. Stewart.

Grandpa: I was the same way.

Robbie: Really, Grandpa?

Grandpa: Really. I didn't like math. I wasn't good at it, and I didn't like studying it.

Robbie: But you had to be good at math. You graduated from [engineering](#) school.

Grandpa: I was. But not in high school. For some reason, I couldn't get a [handle](#) on it. Then, in college, I became good at it.

Alexandra: Then there's hope for Robbie.

Robbie: I can't wait. You think I can just [skip](#) it now and get to it at college?

Alexandra: You'll never get to college to find out, Robbie, if you skip it now.

[The doorbell rings.]

Grandpa: That must be Nat. [He goes to the door.]

Alexandra: Sit down, Robbie. Let's get to work.

【语言点精讲】

1. He'll do anything to avoid getting down to math lessons.

他会想尽办法逃避数学（课）。

avoid doing sth.: 避免做某事。逃避做某事。

get down to: 着手去处理（难题）。

2. I was the same way.

当年我也是这样。

3. For some reason, I couldn't get a handle on it . Then, in college, I became good at it.

不知为了什么原因，我就是抓不到数学的窍门。后来上了大学，我数学就学好了。

for some reason: 由于某种（不知道的）原因，不知什么原因。

get a handle on: 开窍，控制，掌握。handle 是物或机器、工具的柄，借喻有了把握，有了办法，能抓得住了。

4. You think I can just skip it now and get to it at college?

你认为我能不能现在就把数学跳过去，到上了大学再认真学它？

skip something: 表示为图省事、快便而跳过某种阶段或手续。skip, 略过，免掉。

5. You'll never get to college to find out, Robbie, if you skip it now.

Robbie, 如果你现在把数学跳过去，你将永远上不了大学，也就永远无法弄清楚是否学得好了。

find out: 找出，发现。

6. That must be Nat.

一定是 Nat 来了。

must be: 表肯定的推测。语气较强，表明说话人有信心断定某事会发生。

ACT 1-4 “我知道你们想快点开始。”

【故事梗概】

稍后，Grandpa 的朋友 Nat Baker 来了。他和 Grandpa 谈论的“严重的问题”引起了 Alexandra 的好奇。

Grandpa: [He enters with Nat Baker.] I'd like you to meet my friend Nat Baker. This is Alexandra Pappas, and this is my grandson Robbie, whom I think you've met once or twice before.

Alexandra: Nice to meet you, Mr. Baker.

Robbie: Hi, Mr. Baker. We met before.

Nat: Where?

Robbie: In town. At the hardware store.

Nat: I remember now. Right. Hi. [to Alexandra] Hello, Alexandra.

Grandpa: Don't let us keep you from your math tutoring, Robbie. I know you want to get to it.

Robbie: Stay ...stay.

Alexandra: I told you. He'll use any excuse to avoid math.

Nat: Did you read the story in the paper, Malcolm?

Grandpa: I did.

Nat: It's a serious matter for a lot of us. A serious matter.

Grandpa: It is . Come on out to the patio. We'll talk about it out there.

Nat: Thanks. [to Robbie] Nice to meet you...again.

Alexandra: What's the problem?

Robbie: Come on! You'll hear about it. [He and Alexandra walk toward the patio.]

【语言点精讲】

1. I'd like you to meet my friend Nat Baker. This is Alexandra Pappas, and this is my grandson Robbie, whom I think you've met once or twice before.

我想让你们认识一下我的朋友 Nat Baker。这是 Alexandra Pappas，这是我的孙子 Robbie，我想你以前见过他一两次。

这是一个典型的介绍别人的套路。

2. In town. At the hardware store.

在镇上，五金商店。

hardware store: 五金商店。五金工具商店。

3. Don't let us keep you from your math tutoring, Robbie. I know you want to get to it.

别让我们妨碍你们的数学辅导，Robbie。我知道你们想快点开始。

keep sb. from: 阻止，妨碍。

tutoring: 个别辅导，补习。

4. Stay ...stay.

先别走.....留一下。别走，别忙着走。

作者描写 Robbie 怕学数学，调侃得很。爷爷说 I know you want to get to it 也是反话正说，而连 Alexandra 屡次戳穿 Robbie，结果最后也被 Robbie 影响，把教他数学的事暂时放下了。

5. I told you. He'll use any excuse to avoid math.

我早就告诉过你了，他会利用一切借口来躲避数学功课的。

excuse: 借口，理由。

avoid sth.: 逃避某事，躲避某事。

ACT 2-1 “就决定在明天上午吧。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 和 Nat 决定自己动手，继续活动中心翻新的工作。Robbie 和 Alexandra 也表示愿意帮忙。他们决定去集合各自的朋友，第二天再碰一次面，讨论具体的工作。

Nat: There is a way, Malcolm. We get our friends to roll their sleeves up and get to work.

Grandpa: It's certainly a good idea. If I could take a look at the place, I could probably tell what it requires to fix it up.
How much paint, how many hours of work ...

Nat: That's what I came to ask you to do, Malcolm. If you would supervise the refurbishing, I'll find the people to help do it.

Robbie: I'll help too, Mr. Baker. I can get some of my friends to go around the neighborhood and collect the furniture we need.

Alexandra: I'll help.

Grandpa: Tomorrow. Yes. We'll meet tomorrow morning, right here.

Robbie: Can we help?

Alexandra: I'd really like to.

Grandpa: Sure.

Nat: We might need you to come through with your friends, Robbie. Not just to go around the neighborhood asking for furniture, but to help with the paint job. That's backbreaking work and may be too much for us.

Robbie: I'll do it. I'll talk to them.

Alexandra: And tomorrow morning we'll all meet here to discuss the plan?

Grandpa: Tomorrow morning it is.

【语言点精讲】

1. We get our friends to roll their sleeves up and get to work.

我们可以找我们的朋友，大家一起卷起袖子干起来。

roll one's sleeves up: 卷起袖子；准备做艰苦的工作。

2. If I could take a look at the place, I could probably tell what it requires to fix it up.

如果我能去看一看那个地方，我或许能够判断要把它整修好都需要什么。

fix (it) up: 整修。

3. If you would supervise the refurbishing, I'll find the people to help do it.

如果你肯监督整修的工作，我就去找人帮忙干。

supervise: 监督。

refurbishing: 整修，再刷新。

4. We might need you to come through with your friends, Robbie. Not just to go around the neighborhood asking for furniture, but to help with the paint job. That's backbreaking work and may be too much for us.

我们可能会需要你把你的朋友们找来，Robbie，不光是在邻里四处求人给家具，而且还要帮忙油漆粉刷。那是很累人的活儿，我们老头们可能干不下来。

come through with: 意谓办到自己答应或别人指望自己的事。这里指答应找人来，确实找来。

backbreaking work: 很累人的活，很辛苦的活。

too... for...: 表示负面意思，即过分如何而使人不能办到。

5. Tomorrow morning it is.

就决定在明天上午吧。

这个倒装句表示经过商量后作出的决定，含有痛快明确的意思。

ACT 2-2 “我确信他们本意是好的。”

【故事梗概】

第二天，Grandpa 和 Nat 的朋友都到齐了。但是 Robbie 和 Alexandra 却没有露面。

[The doorbell rings.]

Grandpa: [He answers the door.] Come in, come in. Please, come in.

Nat: I'd like you to meet my friend Malcolm Stewart. Malcolm, this is Joanne Thompson.

Grandpa: Hello, Joanne. [He shakes her hand.] Nice to meet you.

Joanne: My pleasure, Malcolm.

Nat: And this is Abe Lucas. You must remember Abe. He ran the [drugstore](#) and used to play drums with the jazz band on weekends.

Grandpa: Oh, sure I do. Hi, Abe. [He shakes his hand.]

Abe: Hello, Mr. Stewart.

Grandpa: Malcolm, please.

Abe: Hello, Malcolm

Grandpa: Sit down, sit down, Have some coffee. And I've got some delicious [Danish pastry](#) for you.

Nat: Where's your grandson Robbie and his friend Alexandra? Weren't they going to be here this morning?

Grandpa: I thought so, too. I'm surprised they're not here. Robbie left early this morning to meet Alexandra. Frankly, I thought they'd be here, but...

Nat: It's OK. I'm sure they meant well, but they probably had other things on their minds.

【语言点精讲】

1. He answers the door.

他去开门。

2. My pleasure, Malcolm.

“My pleasure.”相当于“It's my pleasure.”在对万表示“幸会，叨扰，感谢款待”时，常用这句客气话回答。

3. He ran the drugstore and used to play drums with the jazz band on weekends.

他过去经营那家杂货店，并曾在周末爵士乐队中当鼓手。

drugstore: 药店，杂货店。

used to do: 用于表示过去常常，过去惯常。

play drums with the jazz band: 在爵士乐队中打鼓。

4. Malcolm, please.

在别人称自己的姓并加上 Mr., Mrs. 等尊称时,自己这样说以表示“就叫我 Malcolm 好了”,因为直呼其名更亲近一些。也可以说: Malcolm to you.

对方为表示接受这种安排,可以把自己的寒暄话重复一下,而改用新的称谓,因此 Abe 又说了一次“Hello, Malcolm.”

5. And I've got some delicious Danish pastry for you.

我还为你们准备了一些可口的丹麦点心。

Danish pastry: 丹麦点心。

6. I'm sure they meant well, but they probably had other things on their minds.

我确信他们本意是好的,不过他们可能还有别的事。

meant well: 用意善良,本意是好的。

have other things on their minds: 注意 mind 在这里因指不止一人,用复数。to have something on one's mind 是“心上有件事”或甚至“有令人发愁的心事”的意思。

ACT 2-3 “我没问题。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 和 Nat 以及他们的朋友开始讨论翻新改造废弃的图书馆成为社区活动中心所需要做的工作。

Joanne: I understand you used to be in the construction business, Malcolm.

Grandpa: I was, indeed.

Joanne: I wonder if you would take a look at the old library and make sure that it is in good condition so that we don't have to worry about any structural problems.

Grandpa: When can I do that? I'd be happy to.

Abe: We've got permission to go inside the old building during the week -- Tuesday or Wednesday.

Grandpa: That's fine with me. I can do it either day.

Joanne: That would be very helpful.

Nat: I think the building just needs a good cleaning.

Abe: And a good paint job.

Joanne: Then we have to furnish it.

Grandpa: I wish Robbie and Alexandra had come to this meeting. They had some ideas about getting the place fixed up.

【语言点精讲】

1. I understand you used to be in the construction business.

听说你过去从事建筑业。

understand: 这里指“获悉,得知,听说”。

2. I wonder if you would take a look at the old library and make sure that it is in good condition so that we don't have to worry about any structural problems.

我想知道你肯不肯去看一下旧图书馆大楼,确认它状况良好,好让我们不必为任何结构上的问题担心。

I wonder if: 我想知道是否.....

in good condition: 状况良好。类似的短语有 in fine/poor/terrible condition 等。

worry about: 担心。

structural: 结构上的。

3. We've got permission to go inside the old building during the week -- Tuesday or Wednesday.

我们已经获准在不是周末的日子到那老房子里去——星期二或星期三都行。

get permission to do sth.: 得到许可去做某事。

4. That's fine with me. I can do it either day.

我没问题，这两天中哪一天我都可以去。

either day: (两天中) 哪一天都可以。也可以说 on either day 或者 either on Tuesday or on Wednesday。

5. Then we have to furnish it.

然后我们得给它放上家具。

furnish: 这里指放家具。

6. I wish Robbie and Alexandra had come to this meeting. They had some ideas about getting the place fixed up.

Robbie 和 Alexandra 要是来开会就好了，他们对怎样装修这个地方有些主意。

I wish ... had come ... : 这是 wish 引导的过去虚拟语气。表示所希望的是与过去发生过的事情相反的。

get this place fixed up: get+宾语+过去分词补语，表示使某物受到某种处理或对待。

ACT 2-4 “请讲吧。”

【故事梗概】

Grandpa 和 Nat 以及他们的朋友的讨论已经快要结束了，Robbie 和 Alexandra 还是没有露面。Grandpa 觉得很奇怪，因为爽约并不是 Robbie 的作风。

Joanne: Perhaps they'll show up. In the meantime, let me give you some additional thoughts and ideas I have.

Grandpa: OK.

Nat: Go ahead, Joanne.

Joanne: As I said, mostly the building just needs a good cleaning.

[A little later.]

Nat: This place can be developed with one real intergenerational program.

Grandpa: That's an idea I like. A community center with the kinds of programs that fit everyone.

Nat: And programs that don't leave anyone out.

Joanne: It's asking a lot. But we can't do it without talking to the young people. Finding out what they want.

Grandpa: If only Robbie and Alexandra were here.

Nat: Don't be upset, Malcolm. We'll have a chance to talk to them later.

Grandpa: It's not like Robbie. If he says he's going to be here, he's here. I wonder what the problem is.

【语言点精讲】

1. Perhaps they'll show up. In the meantime, let me give you some additional thoughts and ideas I have.

也许一会儿他们会来的，现在请允许我把我的一些另外的想法和主意告诉你们。

show up: 出现，露面。

additional: 附加的，另外的。

2. Go ahead, Joanne.

Joanne, 请讲吧。

3. As I said, mostly the building just needs a good cleaning.

正如我说过的那样，那楼房主要只缺好好打扫一下。

mostly: 在这里修饰全句，指这句话一般来说是符合事实的。

4. This place can be developed with one real intergenerational program.

这个地点可以依照一个真正的把几代人都包括在内的计划建设起来。

intergenerational: 跨世代的。为不同年龄或世代人的。

5. And programs that don't leave anyone out.

这些活动计划要不使任何人被排除在外。

leave sb. out: 不包括某人，排除某人。

6. It's asking a lot.

这需要考虑很多；这（工作）要求的条件很多。

7. If only Robbie and Alexandra were here.

要是 Robbie 和 Alexandra 在这儿就好了。

If only...were here.：要是.....在这儿该有多好。这是由 If only 引导的表示现在的虚拟语气，表示所希望的事情与现在的事实相反，此时 be 动词要用 were，其他动词使用一般过去时。

8. It's not like Robbie. If he says he's going to be here, he's here. I wonder what the problem is.

Robbie 平常不是这样的，如果他说来，就一定会来，我不知道发生了什么问题。

It's not like sb.：这不像是某人所为。某人应该不会这样的。

I wonder what the problem is.：我不知道发生了什么问题。这是一个间接疑问句，疑问词所引导的从句，语序和陈述句一样（what the problem is）。若是改为直接问句，则 be 动词要放在主词前：What is the problem?

ACT 3-1 “我计划要就此写一篇社论。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 和 Alexandra 终于露面了。他们带来了当地报纸的主编 Maxwell 先生。

Robbie: Hi, everyone. Sorry I'm late. But Alexandra and I have been busy at work this morning on the community-center project. And we brought someone along who can help. You remember Charles Maxwell, Grandpa? He's the editor of the Riverdale paper. He wrote some nice articles on Mom when she was running for the school board.
Grandpa: Yes, I remember. You were a great help.

Maxwell: Hi, Mr. Stewart. Hope to be a bigger help on the new community-center project. From what Robbie and Alexandra have told me, you people are making one big story.

Grandpa: Let me introduce you, Mr. Maxwell. This is Nat Baker, who's responsible for this meeting, and this is Joanne Thompson, and Abe Lucas, who used to run the drugstore in town.

Maxwell: Robbie and Alexandra told me what you need to fix up the old library. I am planning to write an editorial that I think will help you.

Grandpa: Let's go. What are your questions?

Maxwell: OK. Now, I have ...first...a couple of questions here. Have you talked to the community council? And have you had an engineer come in to do an inspection?

【语言点精讲】

1. You remember Charles Maxwell, Grandpa? He's the editor of the Riverdale paper. He wrote some nice articles on Mom when she was running for the school board.

爷爷，你还记得 Charles Maxwell 吗？他是里弗代尔报纸的编辑，妈妈竞选联合校董会董事的时候，他写过几篇很友好的有关妈妈的文章。

write an article on...：写关于...的文章。

nice：这里指的是“以诚相助的”。

run for：竞选（某个职位）。

2. Hope to be a bigger help on the new community-center project. From what Robbie and Alexandra have told me, you people are making one big story.

希望在新的社区中心的项目上，我能起更大的作用。我从 Robbie 和 Alexandra 所说的话里知道，你们各位正筹划着造一条大新闻。

You people are making one big story.：您几位正筹划着造个大新闻（指创办 community center 一事）。story 在报纸上指新闻，a big story 指轰动一时的大新闻。这里用 one 而不用 a，是为了强调后面的词。

3. Let me introduce you, Mr. Maxwell. This is Nat Baker, who's responsible for this meeting, and this is Joanne Thompson, and Abe Lucas, who used to run the drugstore in town.

让我给你介绍一下，Maxwell 先生。这是 Nat Baker，他是负责召集这次会议的人，这是 Joanne Thompson——还有 Abe Lucas，

他过去经营镇上的杂货店。

who's responsible for this meeting: 他是负责召集这次会议的人。这是一个定语从句。

be responsible for sth.: 负责某事。

run: 在这里的意思是指经营。

4. Robbie and Alexandra told me what you need to fix up the old library. I am planning to write an editorial that I think will help you.

Robbie 和 Alexandra 对我讲了你们修整旧图书馆楼都需要什么, 我计划要就此写一篇社论, 我想它能对你们有帮助的。

fix up: 修整。

5. Let's go.

我们这就开始说正事。相当于“Let's go ahead with our business.”或者“Let's get right (down) to work.”

6. Have you talked to the community council? And have you had an engineer come in to do an inspection?

你们和镇议会谈过了吗? 还有, 你们是否已找过一位工程师来检查一下?

community council: 镇议会。

have you had an engineer come in...: 在这里相当于 have you asked an engineer to come in...?

inspection: 检查。

ACT 3-2 “我们这个社区一向很慷慨的。”

【故事梗概】

Maxwell 先生询问并记下了完成翻新改造旧图书馆楼成为新社区活动中心所需要的人力和物资。

Maxwell: OK, what do you need most of all?

Grandpa: People power. Men and women, young and old, to give us their time.

Maxwell: To do what?

Joanne: To help scrub the building interior clean.

Nat: So that we can repaint it.

Maxwell: And you also need bodies to do repainting?

Grandpa: That's right. And we'll also need some ladders and some brushes and some paint.

Maxwell: When do you need the volunteers, and where do they report?

Grandpa: I've got the council to agree to open the building for us on the next four weekends.

Maxwell: How about furnishings? Are there any special requirements that I should list in the paper?

Joanne: Yes. Here is a copy of all the things we need to start with.[She hands him a list.]

Maxwell: Let's see. Four desks. Eight straight-back chairs. Thirty folding chairs. Six table lamps. Three end tables. One piano. This is a good start. These items shouldn't be difficult to come by once I print the article in the paper. This community has always been very generous.

Grandpa: I agree, Mr. Maxwell.

【语言点精讲】

1. People power. Men and women, young and old, to give us their time.

人力。男子和妇女, 年轻人和老年人, 我们需要他们把业余时间给我们。

people power: 人力。

2. To help scrub the building interior clean.

帮助把大楼内部刷洗干净。

scrub: 用(硬棕毛)刷子刷。

the building interior: 内部。interior 指内里的一面。

3. And you also need bodies to do repainting?

你们还需要劳力搞刷油漆的活儿?

bodies: 人员, 劳力。

repaint: 用油漆重新刷一遍。re-再, 又; paint 此处是动词。

4. When do you need the volunteers, and where do they report?

你们什么时候需要志愿工作人员来, 他们到哪儿报到?

volunteer: 志愿者, 义工。

Where do they report: 他们该上哪儿报到接活儿呢? 是“Where do they report for work?”的简略。

5. Here is a copy of all the things we need to start with.

这张单子上开的是我们一开始所需要的家具设备。

to start with: 一开始。相当于 in the first place。

6. Four desks. Eight straight-back chairs. Thirty folding chairs. Six table lamps. Three end tables. One piano.

这里有一些家具的表达法:

desks: 书桌。

straight-back chairs: 直背椅。

folding chairs: 折叠椅。

table lamps: 台灯。

end tables: 茶几。

7. These items shouldn't be difficult to come by once I print the article in the paper. This community has always been very generous.

一旦我把文章在报上刊登出来, 这些东西应该不难弄到, 我们这个社区一向很慷慨的。

come by: 意为找到或获得, 常指意外地得到。

print: 这里指“刊登”。

generous: 慷慨的。

ACT 3-3 “他说到做到。”

【故事梗概】

Maxwell 先生把他收集的信息写成了文章登在了当地的报纸上。他通过文章号召人们加入到建设新社区活动中心的志愿工作中来。

Maxwell: What you're saying is, in order for this center to succeed, we need to put together **volunteers** from the various **generations** of future users.

Grandpa: That's right.

Nat: And without their energy and **stamina**, there's no way we can complete this project.

Maxwell: I've got it. Now give me some information about how you see the building being used.

Joanne: Oh, here. [She shows him a floor plan.] On the ground floor we have the **reception** area...

[The next day. Grandpa is on the patio. He is reading Charles Maxwell's **editorial** in the newspaper.]

Grandpa: It's here, Robbie. Charles Maxwell lived up to his word. [He reads the editorial to Robbie.] “At the Stewart family home on Linden Street yesterday, a group of caring Riverdale citizens gathered to plan the **refurbishing** of the old library to **transform** it into a new community center. The original plan by the council was tabled because of lack of funds. The new plan needs you. You could call it a community unity plan. It needs your time, and it needs your energy. And it needs your contributions of furniture, paint, brushes, ladders, lamps, et cetera. A list of these items and a volunteer form can be picked up at the Riverdale Press offices. By working together, this community can do anything to benefit its citizens, and we know you will all work together towards refurbishing the old library and making it a new community center. Charles Maxwell, Editor.”

【语言点精讲】

1. What you're saying is, in order for this center to succeed, we need to put together volunteers from the various generations of future users.

你们刚才说的是，为了要使这个社区中心取得成功，我们需要从未来使用中心的各个不同年龄层的人中聚集志愿工作者。

What you're saying is: 你们说的是。这个表达用来确认对方的话是不是自己理解的那个意思。

put together: 这里指“组织，安排”。

2. And without their energy and stamina, there's no way we can complete this project.

没有他们的力量和干劲，我们是无法完成这个项目的。这是一个用双重否定来强调肯定意义的句子。

energy: 精力的投入，活力。

stamina: 耐力。

no way: 是“没有办法，没门儿”的意思。

3. I've got it. Now give me some information about how you see the building being used.

我都明白了。现在请跟我说一下你们设想这大楼将如何利用。

I've got it. : 我明白了。

see: 这里是 visualize（设想）的意思。

4. She shows him a floor plan.

floor plan: (楼房设计的)平面图。

5. Charles Maxwell lived up to his word.

lived up to one's word: 说到做到。

6. At the Stewart family home on Linden Street yesterday, a group of caring Riverdale citizens gathered to plan the refurbishing of the old library to transform it into a new community center.

昨天在林登大街 Stewart 家住宅内，有一批里弗代尔的关注公益的公民聚在一起，计划重新修整旧图书馆，把它改建为一个新的社区中心。

citizens: 居民。

transform: 改建。

7. The original plan by the council was tabled because of lack of funds. The new plan needs you. You could call it a community unity plan.

原先镇议会所订的计划由于缺乏经费而无限期搁置，新的计划需要你们。你可以称这个计划为社区团结计划。

table: 在这里作动词，是“暂缓讨论”的意思，这是美语用法。在英国英语中，table 是正式提出供会议讨论的意思。把一件应办的事“束之高阁”，也常用 shelve 及 pigeonhole，意谓放到架子上暂不采取行动或不去过问。

unity: 团结。

8. And it needs your contributions of furniture, paint, brushes, ladders, lamps, et cetera. A list of these items and a volunteer form can be picked up at the Riverdale Press offices.

它需要你们捐赠家具、油漆、刷子、梯子、灯具等等。有关这些东西的单子和申请参加志愿工作的表格可到《里弗代尔报》报社索取。

contributions: 捐献品。

et cetera: 等等（表示省略）。这个拉丁短语常被缩写成 etc.，在英语中很常用。

items: 物品。

a volunteer form: 义工申请人员表格。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 24 课：钱行聚会

ACT 1-1 “我想这样或许是可行的。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 刚放学回来。Robbie 和 Ellen 谈起了 Alexandra 就要回国的事情。Ellen 建议在家里为 Alexandra 举办一个钱行晚会。

Robbie: Hi, Mom.

Ellen: Hi, Robbie. You're home from school early.

Robbie: Yeah, they're getting the **assembly** hall ready for the graduation **ceremony**, so we all got to go home early. Too noisy to study.

Ellen: Well, now that you're here, you can help me with dinner. I need those potatoes peeled and **sliced**.

Robbie: Mom, give me a break. Alexandra's coming over to help me study for my math final.

Ellen: Well, in that case, you can wash the dishes and clean up after dinner.

Robbie: Can I invite Alexandra to stay for dinner?

Ellen: Of course.

Robbie: Thanks, Mom.

Ellen: You and Alexandra have become good friends, haven't you?

Robbie: Yes. I like her. She's a terrific person. I'm going to miss her when she goes back to Greece.

Ellen: Would you like to give her a little **farewell** party?

Robbie: Mom, that would be terrific! Maybe we could make it a surprise.

Ellen: Oh, I don't know. Surprise parties don't always work out.

Robbie: Well, we could tell her it's a graduation party for me. When Alexandra arrives, we'll surprise her.

Ellen: Well, I suppose that might work.

【语言点精讲】

1. Yeah, they're getting the assembly hall ready for the graduation ceremony, so we all got to go home early. Too noisy to study.

是的，他们在收拾大礼堂，给毕业典礼作准备，所以我们都得早回家了。太吵了，没法子学习。

assembly hall: 大礼堂。

graduation ceremony: 一般指中学毕业典礼。大学毕业典礼在英国也这样说，但在美国则称为 commencement，意谓学生从此将步入社会，开始人生的旅途。commence 是“开始”之意。

too...to...: 太.....以致于不能.....

2. I need those potatoes peeled and sliced.

我需要把那些土豆削皮，切成片。

peel: 剥皮。

sliced: 切片。

3. Mom, give me a break. Alexandra's coming over to help me study for my math final.

妈妈，让我歇口气吧。Alexandra 要来帮助我学习数学，准备期末考试。

give me a break. : 让我喘口气；让我歇一会儿。

final: 这里指的是 final examination，期末考试。

4. Well, in that case, you can wash the dishes and clean up after dinner.

哦，那样的话，你可以在晚饭后洗盘子和收拾桌子。

in that case: 既然如此，既然如此。

5. Would you like to give her a little farewell party?

你想不想给她举行一个小小的欢送会？

farewell party: 钱行晚会，欢送会。

6. Surprise parties don't always work out.

这种给人一个惊喜的晚会并不是每次都成功的。

work out: 在这里的意思是“成功，奏效”。

7. I suppose that might work.

我想这样或许是可行的。

这句话是由 suppose 引导的虚拟语气句。因为 suppose 表示主观的推测，后面从句中常用 could, would, might 等虚拟语态的词。

ACT 1-2 “我没有问题。”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 想送给 Alexandra 一件离别礼物，但是他没有足够的钱。他想同父母借钱，Ellen 表示同意，并让他去问 Philip 的意见。

Robbie: I'd like to give her a nice going-away present.

Ellen: Fine.

Robbie: There's only one problem.

Ellen: What's that?

Robbie: I'm broke. I should have saved some money.

Ellen: I'm sure Alexandra would be happy with something simple, Robbie.

Robbie: I know. But, well, I'd like to give her something nice to remember me by. Maybe I could borrow some money from you and Dad.

Ellen: It's all right with me if it's all right with your dad.

Robbie: Thanks, Mom. I'll talk to him. Is he still in his office?

Ellen: I think so.

Robbie: Thanks, Mom. [He starts to leave.]

Ellen: [She kisses him.] Robbie! Good luck!

[In Dr. Stewart's office at the hospital. Philip is looking at a patient's chart as the nurse, Molly Baker, enters.]

Molly: Here are the X-rays you wanted, Dr. Stewart.

Philip: Oh. Thank you, Molly. Now, let me check them.

Molly: What do you think?

Philip: I don't see any breaks or fractures. Well, well. Thank you, Molly.

Molly: Good. Thank you. [She leaves.]

【语言点精讲】

1. I'd like to give her a nice going-away present.

我很想给她一件漂亮的离别礼物。

a going-away present: 离别礼物。

2. I'm broke. I should have saved some money.

I'm broke. : 我身无分文。注意这里只能说 broke, 而不能说 broken.

I should have saved: 我早该存些钱的, 但是实际上没有存。“should have +过去分词”这一结构用来表示遗憾, 为过去该做而未做的事而后悔。例如:

I should have repaired the oil leak in my car; the engine is ruined! (I didn't repair it)

I should have taken the job I was offered with the insurance company. (I didn't take it.)

I should have taken some accounting courses in college. (I didn't take any at all)

3. I'm sure Alexandra would be happy with something simple.

我确信 Alexandra 得到一件简单的礼物就会很高兴的。

4. But , well, I'd like to give her something nice to remember me by.

可是, 嗯, 我想给她一件漂亮的礼物作为纪念物, 让她看见就想起我来。

to remember me by : 让她看到东西就想起我来, 睹物思(人)。

5. It's all right with me if it's all right with your dad.

如果你爸爸答应的话, 我没有问题。

It's all right with me: 我没有意见, 这样做我不反对。也可说 It's OK with me.

6. Philip is looking at a patient's chart as the nurse, Molly Baker, enters.

护士 Molly Baker 进来时, Philip 正在看一个病人的体温图表。

a patient's chart: 指病人床脚挂的体温曲线表。一般的名单叫 list, 有纵横几栏的表格叫 table, 有曲线或图解的图表叫 chart, graph 或 diagram。

ACT 1-3 “谁手头不紧啊？”

【故事梗概】

Robbie 走进了 Philip 的办公室。他开始和 Philip 讲借钱的事情。

Philip: Come in! Hi, Son.

Robbie: Hi, Dad. Am I interrupting you?

Philip: No, no, no, no. What's up?

Robbie: Can we talk?

Philip: Sure.

Robbie: I need some help.

Philip: Well, that's what fathers are for.

Robbie: Well, before I go to college, I have the whole summer...

Philip: Yes...

Robbie: And I'm planning to get a job for the summer.

Philip: And what sort of job?

Robbie: I applied for a job as a lifeguard at the community pool.

Philip: Sounds pretty good.

Robbie: Yes. I'll be earning pretty good money if I get it. But right now, I'm kind of short of cash.

Philip: [He laughs.] Who isn't?

Robbie: And my friend Alexandra is going back to Greece...

Philip: Nice girl. We'll all miss her.

Robbie: Mom says we can give her a going-away surprise party.

Philip: Good idea.

【语言点精讲】

1. Am I interrupting you?

我有没有打扰到你？

2. Well, that's what fathers are for.

嗯，这正是父亲所该做的。

be for 表示“供某种用途的”。又例如：If you have any questions, just ask me. After all, what are teachers for?

3. I applied for a job as a lifeguard at the community pool.

我报名在社区的游泳池当救生员。

apply for: 申请，请求。

lifeguard: 救生员。

4. Sounds pretty good.

听起来很不错。

pretty: 在美式中常用作加强语气的词，修饰形容词或副词，略相当于 quite, rather, 或轻度的 very。如：pretty certain/strange/ridiculous/awful 等。

5. Yes. I'll be earning pretty good money if I get it. But right now, I'm kind of short of cash.

如果我能得到这工作，就会得到相当优厚的报酬。可是眼下我手头很紧。

I'm kind of short of cash. : 我手头很紧。相当于 “I don't have enough money.” “kind of” 在这里表示“似乎，有些”等模糊的意思，用来缓和语气。

6. Who isn't?

这里指“谁手头不紧啊？”

“Who isn't?” 常用于生动诙谐地表示“大家彼此彼此，我也一样”。

ACT 1-4 “你真够意思，爸爸。”

【故事梗概】

Philip 同意借给 Robbie 钱来给 Alexandra 买礼物，还同意在送别晚会之后借给 Robbie 使用家里的汽车去送 Alexandra 回家。

Robbie: And I'd like to get her a nice gift...

Philip: What did you have in mind?

Robbie: Well, a **wristwatch**, so she'll think of me when she looks at the time. Nothing **flashy** or expensive. Something simple -- but a good one.

Philip: Sounds fine, Robbie.

Robbie: Well, I saw a nice watch. But I'll need a **loan**. If you could lend me the money, I could pay you back out of my **lifeguard** salary.

Philip: Well. I guess your mother and I can manage it. When do you need the money?

Robbie: Would tomorrow be OK?

Philip: You've got it.

Robbie: Thanks, Dad.

Philip: My pleasure, Son. Oh, and, Robbie...

Robbie: Yes?

Philip: You'll probably want the family car so you can drive her home after the party.

Robbie: Could I?

Philip: If you drive carefully.

Robbie: I will. Thanks, Dad.

Philip: My pleasure.

Robbie: You're OK, Dad.

Philip: [He **pats** him on the **shoulder**.] You're not so bad yourself, Son.

【语言点精讲】

1. What did you have in mind?

你想要什么？你心里想买什么？

2. Well, a wristwatch, so she'll think of me when she looks at the time. Nothing flashy or expensive.

Something simple -- but a good one.

嗯，一块腕表，好让她在看时间时能想起我。不必是什么显眼的手表，也不用是阔气的，一块简单的手表，质量可是要好一些的。

wristwatch: 手表，腕表。

flashy: 光鲜的，俗丽的。

3. If you could lend me the money, I could pay you back out of my lifeguard salary.

如果你借给我这笔钱，我会从我当救生员的工资里还你的。

这个句子是个关于现在或将来虚拟语气的例子。在 if 从句中，情态动词用过去式，在主句中，动词原型前用 would 或者 could，使用这种句式来预想现在或将来的情况。在这里，Robbie 想着他父亲会借给他钱的。

4. I guess your mother and I can manage it.

我想我和你妈可以借给你这笔钱而不为难。

can manage (it): 设法帮这个忙。当然，作为医生的 Philip 是不可能为拿出一块手表的钱而发愁的。

5. Would tomorrow be OK?

明天可以吗？

6. You've got it.

没问题；就这样说定了。

这个表达用于答应给别人某物，带有爽快的劲头。

7. You're OK, Dad.

你真够意思，爸爸。

8. You're not so bad yourself.

你也不错。

这是一句客气话，在别人称赞你时用于回复。

ACT 2-1 “就这么约定了。”

【故事梗概】

当晚，Robbie 和 Alexandra 在学数学的时候，Robbie 邀请 Alexandra 来参加晚会。Alexandra 欣然接受邀请。

Alexandra: You're ready for the next problem?

Robbie: You know what? I can't look at another number. How about a **lemonade** break?

Alexandra: Sure.

Robbie: Oh, by the way, when is your plane **reservation** for your flight to **Athens**?

Alexandra: Sunday. Why?

Robbie: Would you be able to come over Saturday night?

Alexandra: Yes. I should be finished packing by then.

Robbie: My folks are giving me a little **graduation** party.

Alexandra: Terrific!

Robbie: I'll pick you up.

Alexandra: That isn't necessary.

Robbie: My dad's letting me borrow the car.

Alexandra: Oh, well, that would be very nice.

Robbie: About eight o'clock?

Alexandra: Eight o'clock is fine.

Robbie: Great! It's a date.

Alexandra: Who's going to be there?

Robbie: Just my friend Mike and a few kids from school.

Alexandra: I'm going to miss all of you. You've been like a second family to me.

Robbie: We're going to miss you.

Alexandra: Maybe you could come to visit me in Greece?

Robbie: I'm counting on it.

Alexandra: Wonderful!

【语言点精讲】

1. I can't look at another number. How about a lemonade break?

我实在没法子再算一个数目了，休息一下，喝点儿柠檬水好吗？

I can't look at another...: 干某一件事过久，感到腻烦时常这么说。

How about a lemonade break?: 一般办公场所有 tea break 或 coffee break，孩子们更喜欢喝果汁，故说 lemonade break。

2. Oh, by the way, when is your plane reservation for your flight to Athens?

噢，顺便问一句，你订的飞往雅典的航机是什么时候的？

by the way: 顺便问一句。表达一种临时想到、随便问一下的感觉。

flight: 飞机航班，班次。

3. Would you be able to come over Saturday night?

你星期六晚上能过来吗？

come over: 过来，顺便来访。

4. I should be finished packing by then.

到那时候我也该把行李收拾好了。

be finished 是 be+分词形容词，而不是被动式，表示状态，这里等于 I've finished。用 should 表示情态“应该”，并带有虚拟意味，表示对将来的推测。

5. My folks are giving me a little graduation party.

我家里人准备给我举行一次小小的毕业聚会。

my folks: 我的父母，我的家人。

6. I'll pick you up.

我去接你。

pick sb. up: 开车去接某人。

7. It's a date.

就这么约定了。

类似的说法还有：

It's a promise.

It's a bargain.

It's a bet.

8. I'm going to miss all of you. You've been like a second family to me.

我会想念你们大家的，你们一直就像是我第二个家庭一样。

这是一句很煽情的、可以用于分别时候的表达。

9. I'm counting on it.

我指望着这件事。（我正想呢；我也指望有一天能去。）

count on: 盼望，指望，依靠。

ACT 2-2 “大家都是一样的。”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 问起了 Robbie 的毕业感受，并由此谈到了自己来美国后的感受。

Alexandra: Are you excited about **graduating** from high school?

Robbie: Sure... and a little **scared**.

Alexandra: Scared? Why?

Robbie: Aren't you a little scared?

Alexandra: I was when I first came to the United States. I'd never been away from home, and I didn't know what it would be like. But then I found out that people are the same everywhere once you get to know them.

Robbie: I'm glad I got to know you.

Alexandra: Thank you. I'm glad I got to know you -- and your family.

Robbie: Wouldn't it be nice if we could **skip** the examinations and get right to the graduation party?

Alexandra: It would be very nice. But that isn't the way it works. So... back to work.

[Later that night. Robbie and Ellen are saying good-bye to Alexandra.]

Alexandra: Good night, Robbie Good night, Mrs. Stewart. Thank you for dinner.

Ellen: Good night, Alexandra. Will you be all right?

Alexandra: Yes. The Molinas are waiting for me.

Robbie: Good night, Alexandra. I'll pick you up on Saturday night, OK?

Alexandra: Yes. Eight o'clock.

[A car horn heeps.]

Alexandra: I have to run. [She leaves.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Are you excited about graduating from high school?

你就要从中学毕业了，不感到激动吗？

be excited about: 为.....感到激动。

2. Sure... and a little scared.

a little scared: 有些害怕。

3. I was when I first came to the United States. I'd never been away from home, and I didn't know what it would be like. But then I found out that people are the same everywhere once you get to know them.

我刚来到美国时是有点儿。我还从未离开过家，不知道情况会是怎样。可是后来我发现不论是哪里的人，你一旦认识了解了他们，大家都是一样的。

I was when...: 这是“I was a little scared when...”的简略。

be away from home: 离开家。

find out: 发现，弄明白。

4. Wouldn't it be nice if we could skip the examinations and get right to the graduation party?

要是我们能够跳过考试，直接开毕业聚会，该有多好？

这是一个表示现在或将来虚拟语气的句子。Robbie 正想像没有任何考试，但实际上是躲不过这次考试的。

5. It would be very nice. But that isn't the way it works. So... back to work.

那会是很好的。可是现实并非如此，所以嘛.....回头学习吧。

But that isn't the way it works.: 但是现实并非如此。

6. The Molinas are waiting for me.

Molinas 夫妇在等着我。

the+姓氏复数表示某某姓氏一家人。

7. I have to run.

我得走了。相当于 I have to leave immediately.

ACT 2-3 “你怎么啦？”

【故事梗概】

送走 Alexandra 之后，Robbie 坐在沙发上发呆。Ellen 和 Robbie 聊起了即将和 Alexandra 分别的事。到了星期六，Robbie 和他的朋友在为晚会做准备，这时，Alexandra 打来了电话。

Ellen: Good night, Robbie. She's really a good friend, isn't she?

Robbie: Yeah.

Ellen: You are going to miss her.

Robbie: Am I going to miss her?

Ellen: That's what I said! You are going to miss her!

Robbie: I'm going to miss her, and my math teacher's going to miss her.

Ellen: Well, you can write to her.

Robbie: It's not the same.

[Saturday afternoon, Robbbie, Mike, Sandra, and Millie are decorating the living room for Alexandra's going-away party.]

Mike: How does that look, Rob?

Robbie: Great! Pass me the **hammer**.

Mike: You got it!

Sandra: You're sure Alexandra's going to be surprised?

Robbie: Absolutely. She has no idea that the party is in her honor.

Mike: Millie, did you bring the tapes for dancing?

Millie: They're in my bag.

Mike: What did you bring?

Millie: Some rock 'n' roll.

Robbie: Perfect! Alexandra will love it! I can't wait to see her face when she walks in here tonight.

Mike: What about the cake?

Robbie: My mom's decorating it right now.

Ellen: [She enters.] Robbie, there's a phone call for you. It's Alexandra. She sounds **upset**.

Robbie: OK. Thanks, Mom. I'll take it in there. [Robbie picks up the phone in the kitchen.] Hi, Alexandra. What? You what?

Oh no!

【语言点精讲】

1. Pass me the hammer.

把榔头递给我。

把自己手头的东西递给别人称为 **pass**。

2. You got it!

给你!

3. She has no idea that the party is in her honor.

她一点儿也不知道这聚会是为她举办的。

have no idea: 不知道, 相当于 don't know.

be in one's honor: 为了某人而.....; 为了向某人表示敬意而.....

4. Some rock 'n' roll.

rock 'n' roll: 摇滚乐。摇滚乐是 20 世纪 50 年代开始在美国流行的一种音乐。它是从爵士乐 (jazz) 及蓝调 (the blues) 中发展而来的。(the blues 是一种带有慢爵士乐节奏的伤感民歌) Chuck Berry、fats Domino 和 Little Richard 等歌星是最早录制这种音乐的人。“摇滚乐之王” (the King of Rock 'n' Roll) Elvis Presley 是第一个使摇滚乐走向全球的音乐家。他所录制的摇滚乐唱片一直名列最畅销唱片榜首, 这些唱片全世界的销售量在十亿张以上。

摇滚乐曲常用作舞会音乐。这个短语的另一个拼法是 rock-and-roll。

5. I can't wait to see her face when she walks in here tonight.

我迫不及待地想看到她今天晚上走进来时脸上的表情。

6. I'll take it in there.

我到那边接去。

7. What? You what? Oh no!

什么? 你怎么啦? 噢, 不会吧!

这里连用了几个短句, 语气很强烈, 感情色彩很浓。What? You what? 表明了 Robbie 听到 Alexandra 讲的事情之后很震惊、难以置信的感情。Oh no! 则流露出了 Robbie 的失望。

ACT 3-1 “他们坚持要我留下来。”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 要提前回国了, 送别晚会似乎是开不成了。正当 Robbie 的朋友在 Robbie 家里感到沮丧的时候, Robbie 居然带 Alexandra 回来了。

Millie: How about some music?

Sandra: No, let's wait till Robbie gets back from the airport.

Millie: Did she say why she had to leave today?

Mike: She told Robbie that her flight tomorrow was canceled, so she had to take an earlier flight today.

Millie: This is terrible.

Mike: Well, that must be him.

Sandra: Why is he blowing his horn like that?

Mike: I don't know. Maybe he's angry.

Sandra: Do you think we should take down the decorations? They'll just make him sad.

Mike: Too late now. We should have done it sooner. Oh, here he comes.

[Robbie enters.]

Mike: [to Robbie] Hi, How'd it go?

Robbie: OK, I guess. Especially when Alexandra gave me a surprise...

Mike: Yeah? What was it?

Robbie: This!

[Alexandra enters.]

Mike: Alexandra!

Sandra: Hi! What happened?

Alexandra: I called my parents from the airport. When I told them my friends were giving me a party, they insisted that I stay. So now I'm taking a flight on Monday instead.

Mike: That's great! Terrific!

【语言点精讲】

1. No, let's wait till Robbie gets back from the airport.

咱们等到 Robbie 从飞机场回来再说吧。

till: 到.....时候为止。

2. Why is he blowing his horn like that?

他为什么这样一个劲儿地按喇叭？

blow horn: 这里指按汽车的喇叭。

3. Do you think we should take down the decorations? They'll just make him sad.

你们认为我们是不是该把装饰都拿下来？这些东西只会使他更伤心的。

4. Too late now. We should have done it sooner. Oh, here he comes.

现在太晚了，我们本该早点儿取下来的。

should have done sth.: 指本该做某事，但是实际上没有做。常含有指责或者后悔的语气。

5. How'd it go?

事情办得怎么样？

How'd it go? = How did it go?

6. When I told them my friends were giving me a party, they insisted that I stay. So now I'm taking a flight on Monday instead.

当我告诉他们我的朋友要给我举行聚会时，他们坚持要我留下来，所以我现在准备改搭星期一的班机走。

They insisted that I stay.: 他们坚持让我留下来。在表示主观愿望的动词 insist, order, command, demand, ask, recommend, suggest, propose 等后面表示所希望做到的宾语从句中，动词用虚拟语态，其形式为 should+动词原形（should 可以省略）。

I'm taking a flight on Monday: 现在进行时常用来表达计划好的将要进行的动作。

instead: 是副词，表示改变了原先的计划，而代之以新的计划。

ACT 3-2 “为了永远的友谊。”

【故事梗概】

Alexandra 在晚上也送了 Robbie 一个礼物，居然也是一块手表，而且款式是和 Robbie 送她的一样。

Sandra: But how did you know the party was for you?

Alexandra: Well, Robbie told me when he gave me this.

[She shows everyone her new [wristwatch](#).]

Sandra: Oh, it's so pretty!

Alexandra: It's lovely, Robbie.

Millie: All right! Now we can really start the party!

Alexandra: No. Would you mind? I'd like to say something first.

Philip: Hear, hear!

Alexandra: I would just like to thank all of you, my friends, who have made my stay in the United States so wonderful, and to Robbie and the Stewart family for opening their home to me.

Robbie: We should thank you. You're a real friend!

Alexandra: And I also have a little surprise for you, Robbie. A little going-away present. [She gives him a gift.]

Alexandra: Open it, please. I think you might be [amused](#).

Robbie: OK. [He opens the gift. It is a wristwatch.] I can't believe it!

Alexandra: I guess we were thinking the same thought.

Robbie: You had it engraved!

Ellen: Read it, Robbie.

Robbie: "In [friendship](#), always. Alexandra." I knew we thought alike, but this is too much! Thank you. [He hugs her.]

Mike: All right! Let's have some music!

Robbie: [to Alexandra] Miss Pappas?

Alexandra: [to Robbie] Mr. Stewart...

Philip: [to Ellen] Mrs. Stewart, may I have this dance?

Ellen: My pleasure, Doctor.

[They all dance.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Would you mind? I'd like to say something first.

你们不介意吧？我想先说几句话。

Would you mind?: 你们不介意吧？回答礼貌的 Would you mind? 时，如果你的意思是“同意，可以”，千万不要说 Yes，而要说 No，因为后者才是 I wouldn't mind，而前者是 I would mind = I object/I don't like it/I wish you wouldn't 等意思。

2. Hear, hear!

说吧，让我们听一听！

这是在会场上表示对别人的发言拥护或赞成时说的。

3. I would just like to thank all of you, my friends, who have made my stay in the United States so wonderful, and to Robbie and the Stewart family for opening their home to me.

我只想对你们大家都表示感谢，朋友们，是你们使得我在美国的生活如此丰富多采。我还要感谢 Robbie 和 Stewart 一家对我打开了他们家庭的大门。

4. I guess we were thinking the same thought.

我想我们两个人想到一块儿去了。

5. You had it engraved!

你还让人给它上面刻了字！

have sth. done: 这个句型的意思是你让别人为你做什么，而不是你自己做。

6. In friendship, always.

为了永远的友谊。

7. I knew we thought alike, but this is too much! Thank you.

我知道我们想的一样，可这太教人难以相信了，谢谢你。

we thought alike: 我们想的一样。

too much: 在这里是指“太难以置信了”。相当于 difficult to believe; incredible.

8. Miss Pappas? -- Mr. Stewart.

这是比较正式的表达邀舞和应允的办法。

比较完整的说法看下面 Philip 和 Ellen 所说的：

Mrs. Stewart, may I have this dance? -- My pleasure, Doctor. (Stewart 夫人，我可以和你跳这个舞吗？-- 我的荣幸，医生。)

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 25 课：乡间之音

ACT 1-1 “我希望现在就能来一个。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 要和 Marilyn 以及他的妹妹 Susan，妹夫 Harry 一起去宿营。Ellen 正在帮助 Richard 准备野外宿营的东西。

Richard: Hot dogs. I love hot dogs. There is nothing better than a hot dog in the country.

Ellen: Hot dogs and mustard.

Richard: Cooked outdoors over an open fire. I wish I had one now.

Ellen: Do you remember when Daddy and I used to take you and Susan and Robbie to Jones Beach?

Richard: Oh, I sure do.

Ellen: We'd wait until dark and make a fire, and we'd cook the hot dogs. Oh, don't forget the mustard. And, oh, does anybody want ketchup?

Richard: [He takes a jar of mustard and a jar of ketchup from Ellen.] I might as well take it along. And now to make sure we've got the hamburger patties. [He opens the freezer compartment of the refrigerator.] I have to remember to put them in the bag tomorrow morning before we leave.

Ellen: I'll remind you, Richard.

【语言点精讲】

1. There is nothing better than a hot dog in the country.

在乡间吃热狗，再也没有比这个更令人满意的了。

There is nothing better than...: 没有比.....更好的了。这是一个用比较级的形式表达最高级含义的句型。也可以说 There's nothing like...

2. Cooked outdoors over an open fire. I wish I had one now.

在户外篝火上烤热的，我希望现在就能来一个。

I wish I had one now.: 这是一个虚拟语气。表达现在希望干什么，wish 后面从句中的动词用过去式形式，be 动词则使用 were。

3. Do you remember when Daddy and I used to take you and Susan and Robbie to Jones Beach?

你还记得吗，你爸爸和我过去常常带你和 Susan 还有 Robbie 到琼斯海滨去玩？

used to do sth.: 指过去常常做某事，但是现在已经不做了。

Jones Beach: 是长岛的一个著名海滨，在纽约东面约二十英里处。

4. I might as well take it along.

我不妨带着（蕃茄沙司）。

may as well (might as well)：意思是“还是……的好”。

5. And now to make sure we've got the hamburger patties. [He opens the freezer compartment of the refrigerator.] I have to remember to put them in the bag tomorrow morning before we leave.

现在要保证我们有汉堡包用的肉饼。[他打开冰箱的冷冻室门。]我们明天早上动身以前，千万不能忘了把它们放到袋子里。

patty: 肉饼。

freezer compartment: 冰箱内的冷冻室。

before we leave: 在我们离开之前。before 后面从句用一般现在式 (leave, 而不用 will leave) 表示未来的事。

6. I'll remind you.

我会提醒你的。

ACT 1-2 “这算不了什么。”

【故事梗概】

Max 正在长牙，他哭闹得厉害。Marilyn 对把 Max 交给 Ellen 照管这件事感到非常不安。

Richard: Mom, we really appreciate your taking care of Max for the weekend and giving up your free time.

Ellen: I love doing it. Susan and Harry have a sitter for Michelle in the city, and I'm taking care of Max. It's no big deal.

I am happy to do it for you.

Richard: I guess Max is asleep by now. He's not crying anymore.

Ellen: oh, poor baby. He's teething.

Marilyn: [She enters.] Well, he's asleep -- finally. I feel so bad for him. It hurts so much when a baby gets his first teeth.

Ellen: He'll be fine, Marilyn.

Richard: Well, he wakes up several times during the night, and the pain is so bad.

Marilyn: I'm really concerned about going away for the weekend, Ellen, and leaving you with the full responsibility of taking care of Max. Especially with his teething. I wish he felt better.

Ellen: Please don't worry, Marilyn, Remember your father-in-law's a pediatrician. We have a live-in doctor if there's a problem I can't handle.

Richard: I agree, Marilyn. We really don't have to be overly concerned.

【语言点精讲】

1. Mom, we really appreciate your taking care of Max for the weekend and giving up your free time.

妈妈，我真的感谢你在周末照看 Max，放弃了你自己的休息时间。

appreciate your taking care of Max: 在这里，your 是动名词 taking 的逻辑主语。

give up: 放弃。

one's free time: 某人的空闲时间，自由时间。

2. Susan and Harry have a sitter for Michelle in the city, and I'm taking care of Max.

Susan 和 Harry 在城里给 Michelle 找了个临时保姆，Max 则由我来照顾。

sitter: 临时保姆。相当于 baby-sitter.

take care of sb.: 照顾某人。

3. It's no big deal.

这算不了什么。没什么大事，不难，没什么。

4. He's teething.

他在长牙。

teething: 长（新）牙。动词原形是 teethe.

5. I'm really concerned about going away for the weekend, Ellen, and leaving you with the full responsibility of taking care of Max. Especially with his teething. I wish he felt better.

我们要离开一个周末, Ellen, 留下你负担照管 Max 的全部责任, 我真于心不安。特别是他正在出牙, 我真希望他不那么疼就好了。

be concerned about doing sth.: 对做某事感到担忧。

leave sb. with the full responsibility of doing sth.: 让某人对做某事负全责。

especially: 尤其, 特别。

I wish he felt better: 我真希望他现在好一些。这句是虚拟语气, 表示所希望的内容与现在的事实相反。

6. We have a live-in doctor if there's a problem I can't handle.

如果有什么我应付不了的问题, 我们还有个住在家里的医生呢。

a live-in doctor: 住在家里的医生, 这里指的是 Philip 医生。live-in 原指“管吃管住”的工人、保姆等。

7. We really don't have to be overly concerned.

我们真的不需要过分担心。

overly: 过分。

ACT 1-3 “你们将会度过一生最好的时光。”

【故事梗概】

Max 又开始哭了, Richard 去陪他。Marilyn 和 Ellen 开始谈起露营的具体安排。

[A few minutes later. Max is crying upstairs.]

Richard: I'll go upstairs and stay with him until he falls asleep again.

Marilyn: Thanks, Richard. Try putting him across your lap on his stomach. He likes that.

Richard: I'll try it. [He leaves.]

Ellen: When are Susan and Harry picking you up, Marilyn?

Marilyn: They're coming by at six tomorrow morning, so we can get an early start.

Ellen: That's nice. And you'll have a full day in the country.

Marilyn: And a full night. Tomorrow night we'll be camping out in tents.

Ellen: And coming home on Sunday?

Marilyn: We'll be heading back late in the afternoon.

Ellen: You're going to have the time of your lives. Camping out is such great fun.

Marilyn: We'll have a great time camping out, I'm sure. But I'm still a little worried about you, Ellen.

Ellen: It will be my great pleasure, Marilyn. Remember, it's only one night.

Richard: [He enters.] He's asleep. I think he'll sleep through the night now.

Marilyn: Thanks, honey. I hope he's good when we're away.

Richard: Well, so do I. Now, to check the list of things we need for the camping trip. We need to bring a flashlight.

Ellen: It's in the right-hand drawer, next to the bottle openers.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'll go upstairs and stay with him until he falls asleep again.

我上楼去陪着他, 到他睡着。

until he falls asleep: 直到他入睡。在 until 后面用现在式 (falls 而不是 will fall) 表示将来的事。

fall asleep: 入睡, 睡着。

2. Try putting him across your lap on his stomach.

试着让他趴着睡在你的大腿上。

lap: 人坐着时臀部到膝盖的部位。

on his stomach: 脸朝下趴着睡。仰着叫 on one's back, 侧着叫 on one's side.

3. They're coming by at six tomorrow morning, so we can get an early start.

他们明天早上六点钟过来，我们好早点儿上路。

so we can get an early start: 这里的 so 不是并列连词“因此”，而是主从连词 so that“以便”的省略。

4. Tomorrow night we'll be camping out in tents.

明天晚上我们将在户外露营，睡在帐篷里。

camp out: 睡在户外，露宿。

tent: 帐篷。

5. We'll be heading back late in the afternoon.

我们会在黄昏时往回返。

late in the afternoon: 黄昏，傍晚。

6. You're going to have the time of your lives. Camping out is such great fun.

你们将会度过一生最好的时光，野营是件非常好玩的事。

have the time of your lives: 最美好的时光。

be such great fun: 非常有趣（好玩）的事。

7. It's in the right-hand drawer, next to the bottle openers.

手电筒在右边的抽屉里，在开瓶器旁边。

drawer: 抽屉。

bottle openers: 开瓶器。

ACT 1-4 “一切就绪。”

【故事梗概】

去露营的准备工作做得差不多了。Marilyn 建议带上录音机和空白卡带，以便录制有声日记来记录露营中的感受。

Richard: [He goes to the drawer.] Do we have a bottle opener on the list, Marilyn?

Marilyn: [She looks at the list.] No. No bottle opener. Is that one of the things Susan and Harry are bringing?

Richard: No. And we're bringing the **ketchup, mustard, relish** -- all that stuff. And cooking **utensils**. Well, here's the bottle opener, and here's the **flashlight**.

Ellen: Matches.

Marilyn: Matches?

Richard: Yes, of course. For when we build our camp-fire. I can't build a fire by rubbing two pieces of wood together.

Marilyn: And don't forget your camera and film, Richard.

Richard: All packed and ready.

Marilyn: And let's not forget our **cassette** player and some tapes. Some music tapes and some blank tapes so that we can record our thoughts about the trip.

Ellen: Oh, that's a nice idea. An audio diary.

Marilyn: That's what I thought.

Richard: Got it! [he holds up the cassette player and the tapes.] The cassette player and the tapes.

[Max begins to cry again.]

【语言点精讲】

1. And we're bringing the ketchup, mustard, relish -- all that stuff. And cooking utensils.

我们带着蕃茄沙司、芥末、调味酱，等等一切，还有炊具。

ketchup: 在中国一般称为蕃茄沙司。美语更普遍的说法是 catsup。而“番茄酱”则常指 tomato puree, 与 ketchup 有较大的差别。

relish: 调味酱。

cooking utensils: 烹饪用具。

2. For when we build our camp-fire. I can't build a fire by rubbing two pieces of wood together.

我们生篝火的时候用的。我可不会钻木取火。

build a fire by rubbing two pieces of wood together: 钻木取火。

3. All packed and ready.

都已经打好包装了，一切就绪。

4. And let's not forget our cassette player and some tapes. Some music tapes and some blank tapes so that we can record our thoughts about the trip.

还有，别忘了带盒式录音机和盒带。带上几盒音乐带，几盒空白带，好让我们能录下这次旅行的观感。

cassette player : 盒式录音机。

blank tapes: 空白磁带。

5. Oh, that's a nice idea. An audio diary.

噢，这主意很好，一部录音日记。

audio diary: 录音日记，指用录音机记录生活片断。

6. Got it!

我找到了。

it: 在这里，指录音机和录音带。

Got it!: 相当于 I've got it. 在不同的上下文中，这也可以是“我明白了；我想出来了；我听到了；我抓到了”等不同意思。

ACT 2-1 “这就是我理想中的天堂！”

【故事梗概】

星期六下午，Richard, Marilyn, Susan 和 Harry 到达了湖边的宿营地。

Susan: Oh, I love it! I love it! To be away from the city on such a beautiful day is my idea of **heaven!** The grass. The trees. The fresh air.

Harry: I told you you'd like it. I've been doing this for years.

Richard: [He takes photographs of her.] You have the **spirit** of a **teenager**, Susan .Wait till you see yourself jumping around.

Marilyn: That's what I love about Susan. She works hard. She plays hard. She's a real Stewart.

Harry: Come on, Richard. Help me get this stuff out of the car.

Richard: Where does it go?

Harry: Well, we'll put everything over there. We'll set up our tents over there by the edge of the woods. Then we'll be able to make our fire there where it's safe.

Richard: Oh, there's our table and **benches**. All set for eating.

Harry: That's what makes this spot so good.

【语言点精讲】

1. To be away from the city on such a beautiful day is my idea of heaven!

在这样美好的日子里远离城市，这就是我理想中的天堂！

be away from: 远离.....

my idea of: 我心目中的.....

heaven: 天堂。

2. He takes photographs of her.

他给她拍照。

photographs of her: 注意 of 的用法，这个说法与 her photographs 相比，有较强的“动”性，her photograph 是静止的。

3. You have the spirit of a teenager, Susan .Wait till you see yourself jumping around.

Susan，你那股热情劲儿，像是十几岁的孩子。你等着看我拍的你到处又跳又蹦的样子吧。spirit: 精神，热情，冲劲。

teenager: 指 13—19 岁的少年。

Wait till you see yourself jumping around.: 指等照片洗印出来以后, 让 Susan 自己看看。

4. That's what I love about Susan. She works hard. She plays hard. She's a real Stewart.

我就喜欢 Susan 这股劲儿。她干活卖力气, 玩起来也卖力气。她是个真正的 Stewart 家的人。

a real Stewart: 一个真正的 Stewart 家的人。

5. Where does it go?

(东西)放在哪儿?

也可以说: Where shall we put it?

6. We'll set up our tents over there by the edge of the woods. Then we'll be able to make our fire there where it's safe.

我们把东西都放在那里, 我们把帐篷搭在树林边上, 那样我们就可以在那边安全的地方生营火。

set up one's tent: 搭帐篷。

the edge of the woods: 树林边缘。

7. Oh, there's our table and benches. All set for eating.

噢, 那就是我们的饭桌和板凳。都现成的, 可以在那里吃饭。

there's our table and benches: 指野营地预置的野餐桌凳。现在口语中 there's 比 there are 用得更多, 而不论其后的名词为单数还是复数。尤其是在 there's a... and... 中, 因第一个名词是单数, 就更少用 are 了。这句中需要注意的是, there's 在本句中的意思不是“有”, 而是倒装的 is there“在那儿”。

8. That's what makes this spot so good.

正是这些使我们的营址很理想。

spot: 地点。

ACT 2-2 “真像是三个孩子。”

【故事梗概】

刚刚到达宿营地, 但是 Marilyn, Susan, Richard 都感到饿了。Harry 同意马上开始准备野餐。

Marilyn: Is anybody hungry?

Susan: I am.

Harry: We just got here.

Susan: When you're out in the fresh air like this, it makes you hungry. Aren't you hungry, Marilyn?

Marilyn: I sure am. How about you, Richard?

Richard: [Starving](#).

Harry: You guys are like three kids.

Richard: Aren't you hungry, Harry?

Harry: Well, yeah. Now that you mention it, I guess I am. I mean, how could a guy not be hungry with all this talk about eating?

Marilyn: Where's the bag with the chicken salad sandwiches?

Harry: Right here, next to the ice packs. Here. [He hands Marilyn the [groceries](#) and supplies from the back of the car.]

Put the [tablecloth](#) on the picnic table, and I will bring the cola and the plastic cups.

【语言点精讲】

1. When you're out in the fresh air like this, it makes you hungry. Aren't you hungry, Marilyn?

你在户外这么好的新鲜空气里呆着, 它会使你觉得饿的。Marilyn, 你不饿吗?

fresh air: 新鲜空气。

2. You guys are like three kids.

你们这些人，真像是三个孩子。

guys, 家伙。 kids, 娃娃, 孩子。这些都是口语中用的非正式词。

3. Now that you mention it, I guess I am. I mean, how could a guy not be hungry with all this talk about eating?

你们这样一提，我想我也觉得饿了。我的意思是说，你们这样大谈特谈饿的问题，谁还能不感觉饿？

now that: 既然，由于。

I mean...: 我的意思是.....

How could a guy not be hungry...? 注意，此处不能说成 How couldn't...，因为所否定的是 be hungry，即“怎能不饿”，而不是“怎么不能饿”。

3. Where's the bag with the chicken salad sandwiches?

装鸡肉沙拉三明治的袋子在哪儿？

4. Right here, next to the ice packs

就在这儿，在装冰块的袋子旁边。

ice packs: 冰袋。

5. He hands Marilyn the groceries and supplies from the back of the car.

他从车子后箱里取出食物和供应品交给 Marilyn。

grocery: 在美国指售各种食品及罐头的商店，副食店。店主称为 grocer。在这类店中买来的东西也称为 groceries，用复数形式，不用单数形式。

6. Put the tablecloth on the picnic table, and I will bring the cola and the plastic cups.

把桌布铺在野餐桌上，我把可乐和塑料杯子拿来。

put the tablecloth on: 铺桌布。

ACT 2-3 “我从来没有这样轻松过。”

【故事梗概】

四个人开始野餐。美事和野外的美景让 Susan 和 Marilyn 又惦记起了 Michelle 和 Max。

Harry: Well, how do you like it so far?

Richard: I've never been more relaxed.

Marilyn: Me, neither.

Susan: I wish we had brought Michelle, Harry. She would have loved it.

Marilyn: Oh, you're right. I wish we had brought Max.

Richard: Marilyn, Susan, let's not begin to worry about Michelle and Max. We're having a good time, and they're in good hands.

Harry: Richard is right. Are you having a good time, Susan? You haven't answered my question.

Susan: I am having a good time, Harry. I promise not to think about the city. We're in the country. Let's all just enjoy this wonderful place and this wonderful weather.

Harry: Good

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, how do you like it so far?

好了，到现在为止你们感觉怎么样？

so far: 直到现在，到现在为止。一个潜在的意思是“只说现在，以后可能会不同”。

2. I've never been more relaxed. -- Me, neither.

我从来没有这样轻松过。-- 我也没有。

Me, neither.: 等同于“Neither have I.”用 me 代替 I，在口语中用得很多，常常用于单独使用或与 not 等否定词连用的情况。

3. I wish we had brought Michelle, Harry. She would have loved it.

我真希望我们带了 Michelle 来, Harry。她会喜欢的。

I wish we had brought Michelle.: 我真希望我们把 Michelle 带来了。这是 wish 引导的虚拟语气。表达与过去事情相反的希望时, wish 后从句中动词时态用过去完成式(had brought)。又如:

I wish he had come with us. (But he didn't. What a pity!)

I wish my daughter had spent the holiday here. (But she did not.)

4. Marilyn, Susan, let's not begin to worry about Michelle and Max We're having a good time, and they're in good hands.

Marilyn, Susan, 不要开始担心 Michelle 和 Max。我们玩得很快乐, 他们也得到很好的照顾。

Let's not begin to worry about...: 这是一个否定祈使句, 用于提醒或规劝某人。在较非正式的语言中可以说 Don't let's begin to..., 但绝对不能说 Let's don't....

in good hands: 得到很好的照顾, 相当于 being taken care of well。

5. Richard is right. Are you having a good time, Susan? You haven't answered my question.

Richard 是对的。玩得高兴吗, Susan? 你还没有回答我的问题呢。

6. I am having a good time, Harry. I promise not to think about the city. We're in the country. Let's all just enjoy this wonderful place and this wonderful weather.

我玩得很高兴, Harry。我保证不去想城里的事。我们在乡村。让我们大家都来享受这个美妙的地方和这种美妙天气吧。

I promise not to do sth.: 我承诺不做某事。

ACT 2-4 “这是我提起精神的方法。”

【故事梗概】

星期六的晚上, 在 Susan 和 Harry 的帐篷里, Susan 和 Harry 还没有睡, 他们在谈论这次露营之旅。

Susan: This is Heaven, Harry! It was such a great idea to spend the weekend this way.

Harry: Thanks, Susan. I thought you'd all like it.

Susan: [She kisses him.] Like it? I love it! Listen to the sounds of the summer that surround us. It's so calming.

Harry: I've always liked camping out. Away from the telephones and account books. It's refreshing for me. I always go back to the city in a wonderful state of mind.

Susan: We've only been here for a day, and I've completely forgotten about all my business problems. The office seems so far away.

Harry: I'm glad you like it, Susan. We'll spend many more weekends like this.

Susan: And next time we'll bring Michelle. I wish she were here with us to enjoy the country.

Harry: And next time we'll bring Michelle.

[They go to sleep.]

【语言点精讲】

1. This is Heaven, Harry! It was such a great idea to spend the weekend this way.

这简直是上帝过得日子, Harry! 这样过周末的主意简直太棒了。

such a great idea: 如此好的主意。也可以说 so great an idea.

spend the weekend: 过周末。

2. I thought you'd all like it.

我料想你们都会喜欢的。

3. Like it? I love it! Listen to the sounds of the summer that surround us. It's so calming.

喜欢? 我爱上它了! 仔细倾听环绕我们的夏夜声息。好宁静。

surround: 环绕, 周围。

calming: 安静, 静谧。

4. I've always liked camping out. Away from the telephones and account books. It's refreshing for me.

我一直喜欢露营。远离电话和帐本。这是我提起精神的方法。

account books: 会计簿。

refreshing: 恢复精神, 重新充满活力, 清爽怡人, 精神振作。

5. I always go back to the city in a wonderful state of mind.

我总是精神饱满地回到城里(去工作)。

这句话是指“我每次野营之后……”, 故用一般现在时 go。

in a wonderful state of mind 的意思是 feeling refreshed and relaxed。

6. We've only been here for a day, and I've completely forgotten about all my business problems. The office seems so far away.

我们到这儿仅仅一天, 但我已经抛开了我所有的业务上的问题。办公室好像变得那么遥远。

seem so far away: 感觉上似乎很遥远。

7. I wish she were here with us to enjoy the country.

我真希望现在她就和我们在一起享受这乡村美景。

I wish she were here.: 我希望她在这, 她现在在这该多好。动词 wish 后的从句中, 用系动词 be 表示与现在的事实相反的希望时, 不管主语是什么, 一般用其过去式复数形式 were。例如:

I wish I were 18 years old. (Unfortunately, I'm not 18 years old.)

I wish Ann were as pretty as Mary. (The fact is that Mary is much prettier than Ann.)

ACT 2-5 “像是一种特别的音乐。”

【故事梗概】

在 Marilyn 和 Richard 的帐篷里, Marilyn 和 Richard 在谈论乡间的虫鸣声。Marilyn 决定把这让人感到宁静的声音记录下来。

Marilyn: Just listen to the sound. It's so soothing.

Richard: I can hardly keep my eyes open. If only we could bottle the fresh air.

Marilyn: Wouldn't it be wonderful?

Richard: We could call it “Deep Sleep Country Air.”

Marilyn: It puts you to sleep. So does the sound. I've been having a hard time keeping my eyes open just listening to it. It's like a special music.

Richard: Too bad we can't bottle the sound.

Marilyn: But we can! [She sits up quickly.]

Richard: Can what?

Marilyn: Bottle the sound.

Richard: What are you talking about?

[Marilyn picks up the cassette player.]

Richard: Oh, yeah? Great idea! Let's do it! [He turns on the cassette player and begins to record the sounds of the country.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Just listen to the sound. It's so soothing.

听听这些声音。是这样的安详。

soothing: 温柔的, 柔和的, 静谧的。

2. I can hardly keep my eyes open.

我简直睁不开眼睛了。

hardly: 几乎不, 简直不。

3. If only we could bottle the fresh air.

要是我们能用瓶子把新鲜空气装回去该多好。

If only 的意思是“要是……该多好”，其后常用虚拟语气来表达不能实现的愿望。其主句因不言自明，故经常被省略。例如：

If only the time could slow down! (Of course, it's impossible.)

If only Jack had passed the exam! (Actually, he failed.)

If only I were an engineer! (But I am a student.)

4. We could call it "Deep Sleep Country Air."

我们可以称它为“（使人）沉睡的乡村空气”。

5. I've been having a hard time keeping my eyes open just listening to it. It's like a special music.

听着这些声音时我一直挣扎着要让双眼睁开。它就像是一种特别的音乐。

have a hard time doing sth.: 做某事很困难。

6. Too bad we can't bottle the sound.

不能将声音装进瓶里真是太可惜了。

bottle: 这里用作动词，指装入瓶中。

7. He turns on the cassette player and begins to record the sounds of the country.

他开动盒式录音机，开始录下乡野的声音。

turn on: 打开。

ACT 3-1 “我真心欢迎你们回来。”

【故事梗概】

星期天的晚上，Richard, Marilyn, Susan 和 Harry 露营归来。Ellen 因为要照顾不停哭闹的 Max 而还没有睡。

Marilyn: [She enters the house.] I'm so glad everyone is asleep. I thought Max would be crying, and everybody would be awake.

Richard: What did I tell you? Nothing to worry about.

Susan: I'm sure everything is fine. My mother knows all there is to know about taking care of babies, I assure you.

Harry: Let's put some of this stuff away and then take off. We've got a forty-minute drive into the city. [He goes into the kitchen.]

Ellen: [She enters the kitchen in her night clothes.] Welcome home -- and I do mean welcome home. [She hugs Marilyn and Susan.]

Richard: Something wrong?

Ellen: Oh, nothing's wrong, Richard. Believe me, Max is fine. But his teeth hurt, and he just can't get to sleep, poor dear.

[She sits at the kitchen table.]

Susan: Neither can you.

Marilyn: Oh, I feel so bad.

Ellen: Oh, I'm fine.

【语言点精讲】

1. I'm so glad everyone is asleep. I thought Max would be crying, and everybody would be awake.

我真高兴人人都睡着了，我本以为 Max 会在哭，人人都会醒着。

I thought...: 我本以为……（但事实上和我想象的不一样）。

2. My mother knows all there is to know about taking care of babies, I assure you.

我母亲对于看孩子的事是无所不知、无所不晓的，我敢向你保证。

know all there is to know about: 对……全都知 道，都懂；对……无所不知，无所不晓。这是在夸耀某人知识时常用的句式，如：

Philip knows all there is to know about pediatrics.

Harry knows all there is to know about camping.

3. Let's put some of this stuff away and then take off.

咱们把这些东西收起一部分，然后赶快走吧。

take off: 赶快（迅速）离开。

4. We've got a forty-minute drive into the city.

我们还要开四十分的车到城里去。

a forty-minute drive: 开 40 分钟的车。美国的汽车比较普遍，所以常用开车要用的时间来表示距离。注意这个短语 forty-minute, minute 是单数形式，整个短语作为定语修饰 drive，类似的例子还很多，例如：

a five-mile walk

a ten-minute interview

a three-round negotiation talk

5. I do mean welcome home.

我真心欢迎你们回来。

do: 在这里表示强调，加强语气。需要注意的是，时态变化及人称变化都表现在 do 上，其后一律跟动词原形。

6. Oh, I feel so bad.

噢，太抱歉了。相当于 Oh, I'm terribly sorry.

ACT 3-2 “Harry 是个野营专家。”

【故事梗概】

Ellen 问起了他们的周末过得怎么样。大家说因为 Harry 是个搞露营的专家，这个周末过得棒极了。

Ellen: How was your weekend?

Harry: We had a great time, Mom.

Richard: It was wonderful. The weather couldn't have been better.

Ellen: It was nice here, too.

Marilyn: Did you get a chance to get outside at all?

Ellen: Oh, yes. Grandpa helped me yesterday afternoon. I went to the supermarket to get a few things, and I stayed out an extra half hour. The village was filled with people -- the weather was so nice.

Richard: Harry's a professional camper, Mom. He knows all there is to know, and he made the weekend very easy for us to enjoy.

Harry: Come on. You all helped.

Susan: You were wonderful, Harry!

[They applaud him.]

Marilyn: Why don't you go to your room, Mom, and get some sleep?

Ellen: Oh, I'm fine.

【语言点精讲】

1. The weather couldn't have been better.

天气再好不过了。

用 couldn't have + 过去分词来表示过去不可能发生的事，表示一种推测。

2. Did you get a chance to get outside at all?

你有机会出去一下吗？

get a chance to do sth.: 有机会做某事。

3. Grandpa helped me yesterday afternoon. I went to the supermarket to get a few things, and I stayed out an extra half hour. The village was filled with people -- the weather was so nice.

昨天下午爷爷帮了我的忙，我到超级市场去买了几样东西，我又多在外面呆了半小时，村里人多得很——天气是那么地好。

go to the supermarket: 去超市。

be filled with: 充满了, 挤满了。

4. Harry's a professional camper, Mom. He knows all there is to know, and he made the weekend very easy for us to enjoy.

Harry 是个野营专家, 妈妈。凡是野营的事, 他无所不知, 无所不晓, 是他使我们毫不费力地享受了这个周末。

a professional camper: 露营专家。

know all there is to know about: 对.....全都知道, 都懂; 对.....无所不知, 无所不晓。这是在夸耀某人知识时常用的句式。

5. Come on. You all helped.

别这么说, 你们都尽了力。

Come on. : 得了, 别这么说。

6. Why don't you go to your room, Mom, and get some sleep?

妈妈, 你还是回屋去找补点儿觉吧。

Why don't you do sth.?: 为什么不.....呢? 用于提建议。

ACT 3-3 “那会是一笔好买卖。”

【故事梗概】

大家继续谈论露营中的种种快乐。Max 又开始哭了, Richard 夫妇认为他们有机会可以让他好起来。

Ellen: Tell me more about your weekend. Did you do anything special?

Susan: Lots of special country things. We picked flowers.

Marilyn: And we brought some home for you. [She gives some flowers to Ellen.] It was so nice to be out in the country.

Ellen: [She smells the flowers.] They smell wonderful.

Marilyn: Everything smelled so special. It would have been great if we had been able to bottle the smells.

Harry: It would be a great business if you could do that.

[The baby starts to cry upstairs.]

Ellen: Oh!

Marilyn: Uh, we're home now, Ellen. We'll take care of it.

Richard: I'll take care of it. [He holds up the cassette player.] Let's see if it works.

Ellen: What's that?

Richard: A little special country music. [He goes upstairs.]

Susan: I think we'd better head home. It's getting late, and we have a bit of a drive.

【语言点精讲】

1. Tell me more about your weekend. Did you do anything special?

再跟我谈谈你们的周末, 你们做了什么特别的事吗?

Tell me more...: 再多告诉我一些.....。这是用于表示自己对别人谈的事情很感兴趣, 而鼓励别人多谈的句型。

2. They smell wonderful.

(这花)闻起来很香。

smell: 再这里是半系动词, 后面带形容词表语。

3. It would have been great if we had been able to bottle the smells.

我们能把那些气味装进瓶子里该有多好。

用虚拟语气表示与过去事实相反的情况时, 主句中用 would have + 过去分词 (此句中用了 would have been), if 从句中用 had + 过去分词 (此句中用了 had been)。此处 Marilyn 的遗憾是, 他们无法把香味装在瓶子里带回来, 当然, 当她说 "It would have been great" 时, 仅仅是想像而已。又如:

I wouldn't have passed the exam if I hadn't prepared for it. (The fact is that I passed it!)

We would have felt much happier if Tom had come to the party. (The pity is that he didn't come.)

4. It would be a great business if you could do that.

你要能办得到，那会是一笔好买卖。

这句话用的是虚拟语气，表示与实际情况相反的假设。

a great business: 一宗大买卖，一笔大生意。

5. I think we'd better head home. It's getting late, and we have a bit of a drive.

我想我们最好动身回家吧，天晚了，我们还要开一会儿呢。

we'd better do sth.: 我们最好做某事。

head: 动身，出发。

have a bit of drive: 有相当一段路要开。还要 开一段路的车。a bit of 在这里是反话，指颇大、颇长、颇多等。

ACT 3-4 “乡间的舒适声音。”

【故事梗概】

Susan 和 Harry 告别大家，动身返回在城里的他们的住所。Richard 和 Marilyn 带回来的“乡间之音”不仅止住了 Max 的哭声，也让因过度疲劳而无法入睡的 Ellen 有了睡意。

Harry: Well, all your things are inside. There's your sleeping bag.

Marilyn: Oh, thanks, Harry. [She kisses him and Susan good-bye.]

Harry: Say good-bay to Richard. We'll call you all tomorrow night.

Marilyn: Good-bye.

Susan: Bye, Mom.

Ellen: Bye-bye.

Marilyn: Bye.

Ellen: I'm so tired. I think I'm **overtired**. I don't know if I can get to sleep.

[Max stops crying.]

Ellen: Max has stopped crying.

Marilyn: Yes. It works!

Richard: [He enters.] It works!

Ellen: What works?

Richard: This. [He turns on the **cassette** player and plays the tape of the sounds of the country.]

Ellen: Oh. Oh, where did you get that? It sounds so nice. [She begins to fall asleep at the kitchen table.] I think I'm falling asleep.

Richard: Like Max did.

[Ellen leaves and takes the cassette player with her.]

Richard: Good night.

Marilyn: Good night. [to Richard] Sounds of the country. The **soothing** sounds of the country.

[They hug.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, all your things are inside. There's your sleeping bag.

好，你们的東西都搬進來了，你們的睡袋在這兒。

sleeping bag: 睡袋。

2. She kisses him and Susan good-bye.

她同 Harry 和 Susan 吻別。

kiss sb. good-bye: 吻別。還可以说 kiss goodbye to sb. 类似道别的表达还有 say goodbye to sb.; wave good-bye to sb.

3. Say good-bay to Richard. We'll call you all tomorrow night.

代我们向 Richard 告别，我们明早给你们大家来电话。

Say good-bye to Richard.: 代我们向 Richard 告别。相当于 Say good-bye to Richard for me.

4. I'm so tired. I think I'm overtired. I don't know if I can get to sleep.

我累极了，怕是累过头了，我不知道是否能入睡。

overtired: 过度劳累，累过头。

5. I think I'm falling asleep.

我想我快要睡着了。

fall asleep: fall 在这里是半系动词，表示从一种状况转入另一种状态。

6. Sounds of the country. The soothing sounds of the country.

乡间的声音，乡间的舒适的声音。

The soothing sounds of the country. : 乡野间祥和宁静的声响（例如潺潺流水声，鸟鸣虫叫声等）。

【走遍美国精讲笔记】第 26 课：展览开幕之夜

ACT 1-1 “这是你应得的。”

【故事梗概】

在纽约的一家美术馆里，出版商 Carlson 先生和他的助手 Tom 正在为 Richard 的摄影展 Family Album, U.S.A. 做准备。

Carlson: A little further to the right, Tom.

Tom: Is this OK?

Carlson: Good. What do you think, Richard?

Richard: I like it there.

Carlson: It's the first thing people will see when they come in. It sets the tone for the whole show. The next thing they'll see is this enlargement with the words Family Album, U. S. A.

Richard: I can't believe this is really happening!

Carlson: You've earned it. Years of work went into these pictures.

Richard: I know, but it's still a dream come true.

Carlson: Well, remember, we're not sure what the critics are going to write about your show yet. And you never know what the man from the Now York Times is going to say about it.

Richard: Are you worried?

Carlson: I always worry. The reviews of this show are important for the sales of your book.

【语言点精讲】

1. A little further to the right.

再多向右移一下。

further: 更多的，进一步的。far 的比较级有两种形式，further 和 farther。在表示真正的地理距离“更远一些”时通常用 farther。在表示“更多，更进一步”时，只能用 further。本例中的 further 不是“更远一些”，而是“更靠右一些”，故用 further。

2. It's the first thing people will see when they come in. It sets the tone for the whole show.

人们一进来，头一个看到的就是它，它为整个的展出定下基调。

set the tone: 定下基调。

3. The next thing they'll see is this enlargement with the words Family Album, U. S. A.

他们看到的下一张就是这张放大的照片，上面写着“走遍美国”。

enlargement: 放大，放大的照片。

4. I can't believe this is really happening!

我不敢相信这一切真的发生了。

口语中经常用 can't believe 之类的话表示惊讶。

5. You've earned it. Years of work went into these pictures.

这是你应得的，你在这些照片里投入了多年的工作。

You've earned it. : 这是你应得的。意思是你费了自己的力气或由于自己的良好品德而得到报偿，不是不劳而获或侥幸得到的。earn 表示靠劳动、努力等而赢得。

6. I know, but it's still a dream come true.

我知道，可是这仍然是一件梦想成真的事。

a dream come true: 梦想成真。这里的 come 意思是 become, 是系动词，带形容词表语 true。

7. Well, remember, we're not sure what the critics are going to write about your show yet. And you never know what the man from the New York Times is going to say about it.

嗯，别忘了，我们还能肯定评论家们将对你的展览写出什么样的评述。而且那位《纽约时报》的先生会说些什么，那是谁也说不准的。

critics: (文学、艺术等)评论家。

8. The reviews of this show are important for the sales of your book.

关于这次展览的报刊评论对于你的书的销售是非常重要的。

reviews: (文学、艺术的)评论，书评。

ACT 1-2 “惯例如此。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 和 Carlson 先生在谈论即将开始的展览。一切的准备都是为了促进 Richard 的新书的销售。

Richard: When do we see the reviews?

Carlson: Soon. One of the critics is coming over this morning for a preview. I hope he's in a good mood.

Richard: So do I. Marilyn and I hope to use money from the sales of this book to buy a new house.

Carlson: The book will be a success. And the show will help promote it.

Richard: Speaking of promoting the book, do I really have to autograph copies for the guests at the opening?

Carlson: It's common practice.

Richard: I feel uncomfortable about it.

Carlson: A lot of people come to openings just so they can get the autograph of somebody who may be famous someday.

Richard: Couldn't we wait until I'm famous?

Carlson: That might be sooner than you think.

【语言点精讲】

1. One of the critics is coming over this morning for a preview. I hope he's in a good mood.

有一位评论家今天上午就要来看预展，我希望他今天情绪很好。

preview: 指影剧的预演或展览的预展。

in a good mood: 心情不错，情绪很好。

2. Marilyn and I hope to use money from the sales of this book to buy a new house.

Marilyn 和我希望能用这本书的售款来买一处新房子。

sales: 销售额，销售收入。

3. The book will be a success. And the show will help promote it.

这本书会成功的，这次展览会促进于它的销售。

promote: 促销。

4. Speaking of promoting the book, do I really have to autograph copies for the guests at the opening?

说起这本书的促销工作，在展览会开幕式上我真的必须为客人们在书上签名吗？

speaking of: 说到, 谈到。

autograph: 在.....上签名。在此处作动词。

opening: 展览会开幕仪式。

5. It's common practice.

惯例如此。

common practice: 惯例。practice 原意为“实践”, 引为“惯做的事”及“练习”。

6. A lot of people come to openings just so they can get the autograph of somebody who may be famous someday.

很多人来参加展览会开幕式的目的, 就是要得到一位有朝一日可能会成名的人的亲笔签名。

autograph: 亲笔签名。在此处用作名词。

ACT 1-3 “我都害怕得要死了。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 面对即将开始的展览感到非常紧张。他希望自己的家人会为自己的喜欢自己的作品。

Tom: [He indicates a photo that is sitting on an easel.] This one over here, Mr. Carlson?

Carlson: A little further back, Tom. It's too close to the refreshments.

Richard: No, I think this one belongs in the “people-at-work” section.

Carlson: You may be right. Try it there, Tom.

Tom: Right.

Carlson: [to Richard] Nervous about the opening tonight?

Richard: Nervous? Me? No. I'm scared to death.

Carlson: How about guests? How many people will you be bringing?

Richard: Well, my family, I guess. My wife Marilyn, my father and mother, my brother Robbie, my sister and her husband and their daughter. And my grandfather. Is that too many?

Carlson: No such thing as “too many” at an opening.

Richard: I hope they like it.

Carlson: Your family or the public?

Richard: Everybody. But especially my family. They've stood by me through all this.

Carlson: I'm sure they'll like it.

【语言点精讲】

1. He indicates a photo that is sitting on an easel.

他指着在一个画架上的一幅照片。

easel: 画架。

2. It's too close to the refreshments.

现在这样离茶点太近了。

refreshments: 茶点。

3. No, I think this one belongs in the “people-at-work” section.

不对, 我想这张应当归到“人们在工作”那一部分。

belong in: 意思是“应归于.....之内”, 或“应放在某处”。

4. Nervous about the opening tonight?

你对今晚的开幕式感到紧张吗?

是“Are you nervous about the opening tonight?”的简略说法。be nervous about sth. : 意思是“对.....感到紧张”。

5. I'm scared to death.

我都害怕得要死了。

scared to death: 害怕得要命。

6. No such thing as "too many" at an opening.

在这样的开幕式上怎么会嫌人太多呢?

No such thing as ... : 没有像.....这样的事。这是一个常用的句式, 等同于 There's no such thing as...

7. They've stood by me through all this.

他们在艰苦的全部过程中都支持了我。

stand by: 在这里的意思是“支持; 在困难时提供帮助; 支持某人度过艰苦困难”。

through: 常表示“历尽艰险”, 如: My mother has been through a lot.

ACT 1-4 “请随便。”

【故事梗概】

一家报纸的著名的艺术评论员 Mitchell Johnson 来到了展览的现场。他在画廊里巡视, 参观 Richard 的摄影作品。

Mitchell: Harvey, how are you?

Carlson: Mitchell, so nice of you to come. [to Richard] Richard, this is Mitchell Johnson. Mitchell is one of the most important syndicated reviewers in the country.

Mitchell: Well, you're the young man who did all this.

Richard: I'm afraid so.

Mitchell: Nice to meet you.

Richard: Nice to meet you, Mr. Johnson.

Carlson: Mitchell has always encouraged new talent.

Mitchell: Well... you mind if I look around and see what it says to me?

Carlson: Be our guest.

[Mitchell Johnson walks around the gallery and looks at Richard's photographs.]

【语言点精讲】

1. So nice of you to come.

你能来真是太好了。

也可译为“欢迎光临”。相当于“It is so nice that you have come.”

2. Mitchell is one of the most important syndicated reviewers in the country.

Mitchell 是国内最重要的联刊专栏评论家之一。

syndicated: 在很多报纸上发表(评论等)的。动词原形 syndicate 的原义是“通过报业辛迪加(报团)在多家报刊上同时发表(的文章等)”。

3. I'm afraid so.

是的。

Richard 用这个表达法, 而不直接说 Yes, I am, 表明他很客气、很谦虚。

4. Mitchell has always encouraged new talent.

Mitchell 一向是提携新人的。

encourage new talent: 鼓励新人。

5. Well... you mind if I look around and see what it says to me?

嗯.....我想四处走走瞧瞧, 看它给我的印象如何, 你们不介意吧?

what it says to me: 它给我的印象或感觉。相当于“what I think of it; how it impresses me”。

6. Be our guest.

请随便。

在主人表示客人可以做他要求做的事时，常这样说。例如：

A: May I have some more of this?

B: Be my guest.

ACT 1-5 “如果你说的是真心话。”

【故事梗概】

Mitchell 看展览时的反应让 Richard 和 Carlson 先生琢磨不透他的想法。Carlson 先生的助手 Tom 则告诉 Richard, 他非常欣赏 Richard 的作品。

Mitchell: Mm-hmm, hmm, uh-huh.

Richard: [to Carlson] What does that mean when he goes, “Mm-hmm, mm-hmm, mm-hmm”?

Carlson: It probably means he's clearing his throat. I don't know.

Tom: I don't care what the critics say, Mr. Stewart. Your work is brilliant.

Richard: Thank you, Tom.

Carlson: Tom is studying photography at NYU. He's working with me during the summer months as an intern.

Richard: Oh, really? I'd like to see your work

Tom: It's not good enough to show. I'm still learning.

Richard: Oh, I'd still like to see your work. You may be the next Ansel Adams and not even know it.

Tom: If you really mean it, I'll bring some of my pictures into the gallery.

Richard: I do mean it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Mm-hmm, hmm, uh-huh.

Mitchell Johnson 看画展时发出这些声音表示他对作品有想法和体会。但他心里到底想什么则不得而知。

2. It probably means he's clearing his throat.

可能是他在清嗓子吧。

clear one's throat: 清嗓子。

3. I don't care what the critics say, Mr. Stewart. Your work is brilliant.

我不管评论家们怎么说, Stewart 先生, 你的作品非常杰出。

4. Tom is studying photography at NYU. He's working with me during the summer months as an intern.

Tom 在纽约大学学习摄影艺术, 他在暑期的几个月间在我这里工作, 当实习生。

NYU: 指的是 New York University。

intern: 实习生。

5. It's not good enough to show. I'm still learning.

还不够给人看的水平。我还在学习。

It's not good enough to show.: 还不够给人看的水平。enough 修饰形容词和副词时放在被修饰词后面。

6. Oh, I'd still like to see your work. You may be the next Ansel Adams and not even know it.

噢, 我还是愿意看看你的作品, 你可能会成为下一位 Ansel Adams, 而自己还不知道呢。

Ansel Adams: 美国著名的摄影家(1902—1984)。他以拍摄美国西部的黑白照片而闻名。他一生拍摄了大量大幅风景图片, 其中包括美国国家公园里的大森林和山岳。

7. If you really mean it, I'll bring some of my pictures into the gallery.

如果你真心想看, 我要带几张我的照片到画廊来。

If you really mean it: 如果你说的是真心话。

ACT 1-6 “希望运气好吧。”

【故事梗概】

Mitchell 参观过展览后, 表示愿意评论 Richard 的作品。他要了一本 Richard 的作品集, 要回去后仔细研究。

Mitchell: [He returns.] Very interesting pictures, Mr. Stewart. You have a most unusual eye.

Richard: Thank you. I hope that's a compliment.

Mitchell: It is.

Carlson: Are you going to be reviewing the show, Mitchell?

Mitchell: Oh, yes. It's definitely worth reviewing.

Carlson: Favorably?

Mitchell: Oh, you know I never answer that question, Harvey. I'd like an advance copy of the book, though, so I can study it.

Carlson: I have an autographed one in my office. Tom, would you give Mr. Johnson the copy of Richard's book on my desk?

Tom: Just follow me, Mr. Johnson.

Mitchell: Sure. [He leaves with Tom.]

Richard: Do you think he liked my photographs?

Carlson: We'll know when tonight's papers come out. Keep your fingers crossed. [He crosses his fingers for good luck.]

【语言点精讲】

1. You have a most unusual eye.

你的艺术眼光真是不同一般。

a most unusual eye: 这里 eye 指摄影家的眼光, 但 unusual 本身并不明确地表示赞美或贬抑。

2. I hope that's a compliment.

我希望这是称赞的话。

compliment: 称赞。

3. It's definitely worth reviewing.

它确实值得评论。

sth. be worth doing: 意思是“某事值得做”。

4. Favorably?

是赞许的评论吗?

favorably: 正面地, 积极地, 好意地, 赞许地。

5. Oh, you know I never answer that question, Harvey. I'd like an advance copy of the book, though, so I can study it.

噢, Harvey, 你知道我一向是不回答这个问题的。然而我想要得到一册这本书的预发行的版本, 好研究一下。

an advance copy of the book: 这本书的预售版。

6. We'll know when tonight's papers come out. Keep your fingers crossed.

到今天晚上的报纸出来的时候我们就知道了。把你的食指中指交叉着, 希望运气好吧。come out: 出刊, 出版。

Keep your fingers crossed.: 希望一切尽如人意。意思相当于“Hope for the best.”在美国, 人们通常用这句话或做这样的动作(中指和食指交叉)表示希望一切顺利。

ACT 2-1 “你准备好了吗?”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 和 Richard 在家里穿戴打扮, 准备去参加 Richard 的展览。Richard 变得更加紧张了。

Marilyn: Do you like the dress?

Richard: I love it.

Marilyn: I designed it myself.

Richard: It's beautiful.

Marilyn: Are you ready? We're supposed to be there before the guests arrive.

Richard: I know. I know. Help me with this tie, will you? Honey, I'm scared to death.

Marilyn: But this is what you've been working for all these years.

Richard: No, no. I worked to put together a book of photographs. This is show business.

Marilyn: Well, it's all part of the same job. Just relax and enjoy it.

Richard: You're right. I earned this, and I'm going to enjoy it. As soon as I [recover](#) from my [nervous breakdown](#).

Marilyn: What are you afraid of?

Richard: Everything. A [critic](#) was there this morning. He probably hates my work. I have to sign copies of my book for a lot of people I never met before. My new shoes hurt my feet...

[Marilyn hugs Richard, and they both laugh.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Do you like the dress?

你喜欢这件晚礼服吗？

dress: 礼服。在正式场合，男的要穿西装，女的穿套裙。非正式场合则不要穿礼服，有的请贴中活动通知上注明“informal”或“casual”，表示“服装请便”。

2. Are you ready? We're supposed to be there before the guests arrive.

你准备好了吗？我们应当在佳宾们到场之前就在那里。

be supposed to do: 应该做某事，必须做某事。

3. Honey, I'm scared to death.

亲爱的，我害怕得要命。

4. I worked to put together a book of photographs. This is show business.

我努力工作是为了收集成一册影集，而现在这个却搞成了一种娱乐行业的作法。

show business: 常拼写为 showbiz, 娱乐业，演艺生意。指影、剧、电视等的大吹大擂，吹捧夸饰，唯利是图的一面，带有贬意。

5. I earned this, and I'm going to enjoy it. As soon as I recover from my nervous breakdown.

这是我多年努力的报偿，我要享受它的乐趣，只等到我从精神崩溃症恢复过来就行了。

as soon as: 一.....就.....

recover: 恢复（健康）。注意与 recover 搭配的介词是 from。

nervous breakdown: 精神崩溃。这里指 Richard 过分紧张。

6. I have to sign copies of my book for a lot of people I never met before.

我得为许多从来没见过的人在我的书上签名。

I never met before. : 我从来没见过过的。美国英语中通常用一般过去时表示过去（是否）已做过某事，而英国英语用现在完成时。比较下面的两句：

Did you ever go to New York? (AmE)

Have you ever been to New York? (BrE)

ACT 2-2 “你将会很成功。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 因为紧张而寻找各种理由，推延出门的时间。

Marilyn: You're going to be a great success. Are you ready?

Richard: As soon as I get these [cuff](#) links on.

Marilyn: Let me help. Mom and Dad are already on their way down to the [gallery](#).

Marilyn: [She finishes putting in Richard's cuff links.] There! You look very [attractive](#).

Richard: Thank you. Well, I suppose I've run out of excuses.

Marilyn: Mm-hmm. Let's go...

Richard: Oh, one minute. Before we go to the gallery, I just want to tell you that I never could have done this book without your help and your love. I **appreciate** it.

Marilyn: Thanks. [She kisses him.] Now, no more **stalling**.

[They leave.]

【语言点精讲】

1. You're going to be a great success.

你将会很成功。

a great success: 不但是事物，人也可以称为 success。相反的词是 failure，如：

He was a success at college, but in later life he became a failure.

2. As soon as I get these cuff links on.

等我把袖扣戴好就准备好了。

cuff links: 袖扣。礼服的衬衫袖口不钉纽扣，而是两边都开扣眼，另用两个用短链连在一起的坠形扣子扣上，称为 cuff links。cuffs 是“袖口”的意思，在英语中也指翻上的裤腿口。这个字也是 handcuffs（手铐）的简称。

3. She finishes putting in Richard's cuff links.

她给理查德戴好袖扣。

finishes (doing): 结束（做某事）。

4. Well, I suppose I've run out of excuses.

嗯，我想我的借口都用完了。

run out of: 没有了，用完了。如果主语是物，通常没有介词 of，例如：The ink has run out.

5. Oh, one minute. Before we go to the gallery, I just want to tell you that I never could have done this book without your help and your love. I appreciate it.

噢，等一下。在我们去画廊以前，我想告诉你，我要是没有你的帮助和爱，是永远也无法完成这本书的，我感激你的帮助。

6. Now, no more stalling.

好，别再拖延时间了。

stalling: 拖延时间。

ACT 2-3 “不胜荣幸。”

【故事梗概】

Marilyn 和 Richard 达到了展览现场。Richard 把自己的家人一一介绍给 Carlson 先生。

Marilyn: What is it?

Richard: There's nobody here!

Marilyn: Of course not, Richard. Your show doesn't begin until eight thirty.

Richard: [He looks at Marilyn's **wristwatch**.] Oh. Right.

Carlson: Richard! Welcome! Good luck tonight!

Richard: Well, thanks.[to Marilyn] This is my **publisher**, Harvey Carlson. [to Carlson] You've met my wife Marilyn...

Carlson: Charmed.

Marilyn: Hi.

Richard: My mother, Ellen Stewart. [to Ellen] Harvey Carlson.

Carlson: It's good to meet you.

Ellen: It's nice to meet you.

Richard: This is my father, Dr. Philip Stewart...

Philip: Nice to meet you, Mr. Carlson.

Richard: My brother Robbie...

Robbie: Hi.

Carlson: Hi.

Richard: And this is my sister Susan and her husband Harry Bennett and his daughter Michelle.

Carlson: [He shakes Michelle's hand.] It's nice to meet you.

Richard: And this **gentleman** is my grandfather, Malcolm Stewart.

Carlson: Welcome, Mr. Stewart.

【语言点精讲】

1. What is it ?

怎么回事？

2. This is my publisher, Harvey Carlson. You've met my wife Marilyn...

这是我的出版人，Harvey Carlson。你见过我的妻子玛丽琳.....

3. Charmed.

不胜荣幸。

这是答别人介绍的一种正式的、老式的说法。通常只对女士使用。

现在一般说 How do you do? 或 Glad to meet you. 之类的话。

4. Hi.

嗨；你好。

在这一段里，Richard 向 Carlson 逐一介绍他的家人，注意 Carlson 和 Stewart 家人之间的不同问候方式。问候方式受双方的地位和身份的影响，还要考虑双方的熟悉程度。

在美国，当一个人因取得成就庆祝时，通常邀请家人参加，并把家人向来宾介绍。这主要是为了感谢家人对他（或她）的支持和帮助，即体现“成功也有家人的一半贡献”的思想。

ACT 2-4 “大家请随便。”

【故事梗概】

Carlson 先生请 Richard 的家人随便参观。展览即将开幕， Carlson 先生看出了 Richard 的紧张，他要 Richard 放松些。

Carlson: Well, make yourselves **comfortable**. There are **hors d'oeuvres** at the table, **fruit punch** at the bar. Help yourselves. [to Malcolm Stewart] Can I get you something, Mr Stewart?

Grandpa: No, thank you.

Carlson: You can feel very proud of your grandson, Mr. Stewart.

Grandpa: I do. I'm proud of all my grandchildren, Mr. Carlson.

Carlson: Of course. Feel free to look around. If you need anything, just ask.

Grandpa: Thank you.

Richard: Harvey?

Carlson: Yes?

Richard: Did Mitchell Johnson's **review** come out yet?

Carlson: Not yet. The newspapers don't come out till about ten o'clock. When they come out, we'll get it.

Richard: Thanks.

[A few minutes later.]

Carlson: [to Richard] Ready?

Richard: Yes. Have the people arrived?

Carlson: The guests are waiting. Tom's about to open the doors. Good luck! And stop worrying! They're going to love it.

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, make yourselves comfortable. There are hors d'oeuvres at the table, fruit punch at the bar. Help yourselves.

好吧，大家请随便。餐桌上有小吃，酒吧那儿有果子酒，请大家随便用。

make yourselves comfortable: 大家请随便。主人对客人说这话表示热情。

hors d'oeuvres: 餐前小吃, 开胃物。

fruit punch: (混合) 果子酒。

Help yourselves.: 主人对客人说“请随便吃(喝)”时, 常这样说。自己取用时也这样说, 如: He helped himself to another cake.

2. Can I get you something, Mr. Stewart?

要不要我给您拿点什么(吃的), Stewart 先生?

这里 Carl son 主动提出为 Malcolm 拿东西, 体现他对年长者的尊敬和礼貌。

3. You can feel very proud of your grandson, Mr. Stewart.

Stewart 先生, 你有理由为你的孙子感到很自豪啊。

4. Feel free to look around. If you need anything, just ask.

请随便到处看看。如果需要什么, 就请说出来。

Feel free to look around. 请随便到处看看。Feel free to do something 意思是“随便做某事, 无拘束地做某事”。这也是一句常用的客气话。例如:

If there is anything you need, feel free to ask the waiter.

Feel free to ask any questions you may have.

5. Yes?

这里的 Yes 用升调, 它既是一种回答, 又是一种提问, 意思是“有什么事吗”。

6. Tom's about to open the doors.

Tom 准备去开门了。

be about to do something 意思是“准备或即将做某事”。

ACT 3-1 “我不敢读。”

【故事梗概】

在展览正式开幕之后不久, Carlson 先生给 Richard 拿来了登有对他的作品评论的报纸。Richard 紧张极了, Marilyn 帮他读了评论的内容。

Richard: What's this?

Carlson: Read it.

Richard: I can't. [He gives the newspaper to Marilyn.] Would you read it, Marilyn?

Marilyn: [She begins to read the review.] "Richard Stewart's show at the Carlson Gallery is a collection of photographs from his new book entitled Family Album, U.S.A. There is power and beauty in Mr. Stewart's work, and his book introduces us to a remarkable new talent." Oh, Richard, it's wonderful!

Carlson: Congratulations!

Richard: Wow! I'm overwhelmed.

Carlson: Ladies and gentlemen, if I may have your attention for a moment, please? I hope you're all enjoying the exhibition. I know that I am. And I would like to introduce the young man who spent the last five years taking these remarkable pictures and writing the background for Family Album, U. S.A -- Mr. Richard Stewart.

[They all applaud.]

【语言点精讲】

1. I can't.

我不敢读。Richard 在这个时候很紧张, 他怕报上的评论不好, 所以不愿意读, 也不敢读。

2. Richard Stewart's show at the Carlson Gallery is a collection of photographs from his new book entitled Family Album, U.S.A.

Richard Stewart 先生在 Carlson 画廊展出他的摄影作品, 这些作品取材于他的新刊影集, 题为《走遍美国》。

entitled: 题为……。动词 entitle 加-d, 再加上书名成文章题目, 作后置定语, 意思是“题为……”或“名叫……”。

3. There is power and beauty in Mr. Stewart's work, and his book introduces us to a remarkable new talent.

Stewart 先生的摄影作品展现出力度和美感，他的新书使我们认识了一位不同凡响的新人才。

There is power and beauty in ... : 在.....中展现出力度和美感。

remarkable: 不同凡响的，特别的。

a new talent: 新秀，新人才。

4. I'm overwhelmed.

我简直不知所措了。

overwhelmed: 受宠若惊的，使不知所措的。overwhelme 原意为“打翻淹没，压倒”，引申为“制服，使惊恐莫名，使不能反抗或不知所措”。

5. Ladies and gentlemen, if I may have your attention for a moment, please? I hope you're all enjoying the exhibition. I know that I am. And I would like to introduce the young man who spent the last five years taking these remarkable pictures and writing the background for Family Album, U. S.A -- Mr. Richard Stewart.

女士们！先生们！请各位安静一下，好吗？我希望你们都喜欢这个展览，我知道我自己是喜欢的。我愿向你们介绍 Richard Stewart 先生，这位年轻人用了过去五年的时间拍摄这些卓越的照片，并写出了《走遍美国》影集的背景文字说明，Richard Stewart 先生！

If I may have your attention for a moment, please? : 请各位安静一下好吗？这里用一个假设条件句表示要求，比较礼貌，是公共场合常用的说法。

writing the background: background 有个人的家庭背景，文化教育经历，工作经验的意思。在以画面为主的出版物中，作为介绍陪衬的文字说明也称为 background。作为定语，还见于下列短语：background information/color/music/sound/design 等。

ACT 3-2 “谢谢大家。”

【故事梗概】

Richard 在展览上致辞。之后，Carlson 先生的助理 Tom 给 Richard 和 Marilyn 拍了一些合照。

Richard: Hello. I want to thank all of you for coming here tonight. I'd like to thank Harvey Carlson for his faith in my project. But most of all, I would like to thank my family for their love and support all through this adventure. Thank you.

[Everyone applauds again.]

[Later that evening. Marilyn and Richard are walking through the gallery.]

Richard: Oh, I'm glad that's over.

Tom: [He approaches Marilyn and Richard to take some pictures of the photographs and of them.] Would you mind?

Richard: Oh, not at all.

Tom: [He takes a few more photographs.] Thanks.

Richard: Our pleasure. Hope it wins a Pulitzer Prize.

Tom: I'll settle for an "A" in my photography course.

【语言点精讲】

1. Hello. I want to thank all of you for coming here tonight. I'd like to thank Harvey Carlson for his faith in my project. But most of all, I would like to thank my family for their love and support all through this adventure. Thank you.

你们好。我要感谢大家今晚来到这里，我想感谢哈维·卡尔森先生对我这一计划表现的信心。但是，最重要的，我要感谢我的家人在这一计划的整个过程中给予我的爱心和支持。谢谢大家。

I want to thank sb. (for) doing sth. : 这是向某人致谢时的常用句型。want 可以用 would like 代替，语气会显得更加客气。

faith: 信任；自信心。

all through this adventure: 在这件工作的整个过程中。through 在英语中通常表示“贯穿全过程，从头到尾”。

2. He approaches Marilyn and Richard to take some pictures of the photographs and of them.

他走近 Marilyn 和 Richard，为他们和展品拍照。

approaches: 走近（某人）。

3. Would you mind? -- Oh, not at all.

你们不介意吧？-- 哦，当然不介意。

由于 mind 是“讨厌，不赞成，反对”的意思，故回答“可以，请便，没关系”时要说 No。如果说 Yes，就是禁止或反对别人去做他所要求的事了。

4. Hope it wins a Pulitzer Prize.

希望它能获得 Pulitzer 奖。

Pulitzer Prize: Pulitzer（普利策）奖由美国人 Joseph Pulitzer 设立。该奖每年春天由 Columbia 大学颁发，以奖励在美国新闻、文学、历史和音乐上有杰出成就的人。其中的新闻奖颁发给前一年中在美国报纸上刊登过的最优秀的报道和摄影。Pulitzer（1847—1911 年）是匈牙利移民，后来成为美国最伟大的出版家之一，他还是 Columbia 大学新闻学院的创始人。

5. I'll settle for an "A" in my photography course.

我能在我的摄影课上得个“A”就已经心满意足了。

settle for: 对……已感到满足。settle for 表示虽不是最佳选择但也可以接受。

A: 学业成绩的较高等级。美国学校给学生成绩打分用 A+、A、A-、B+、B、B-、C+、C、C-，等来表示。F 是 Fail，即不及格，D 相当于及格（60 分）。

ACT 3-3 “我希望你给我签个名。”

【故事梗概】

Carlson 先生为 Richard 介绍了 John O'Neill 先生，他是好几本杂志的出版商。

Carlson: Ah, Richard, Marilyn, I want you to meet John O'Neill.

Richard: Oh, how do you do?

Marilyn: Nice to meet you.

O'Neill: I've been looking forward to meeting your husband, Mrs. Stewart. [to Richard] I'm really impressed by your show.

Richard: Thank you.

O'Neill: In fact, I'd like your autograph.

Richard: Oh, well, really ...

O'Neill: On a contract.

Richard: What's this about, Harvey?

Carlson: Mr. O'Neill is the publisher of several magazines.

Marilyn: Of course. I've seen you on television.

Carlson: Mr. O'Neill was so impressed with your work that he wants to develop it into a magazine concept.

【语言点精讲】

1. I've been looking forward to meeting your husband, Mrs. Stewart.

Stewart 夫人，我一直盼望认识你的丈夫。

have been looking forward to meeting: 一直盼望见到……。这里使用了现在完成进行时强调这种盼望的心情从过去就开始并一直持续到现在。look forward to doing sth. 意思是“盼望做某事”，不能说 look forward to do sth.

2. I'm really impressed by your show.

你的展览确实给我留下了深刻的印象。

be impressed by sth.: 被……所感动；被……给予了深刻的印象。

3. In fact, I'd like your autograph. ... On a contract.

说真的，我希望你给我签个名。…… 签在一纸合同上。

这里 O'Neill 先生用幽默的方式表达出了他希望与 Richard 合作的意愿。因为大家都要求作者签名留念，所以他用 autograph 这个字，其实在契约上签字应称为 signature。Richard 谦虚地说：“Oh, well, really...”意思是说我的签名不值得你要。

4. Mr. O'Neill was so impressed with your work that he wants to develop it into a magazine concept.

O'Neill 先生对你的作品印象非常好，他想把它的主题思想扩展为一种杂志的思路。

develop it into a magazine concept: 把它办成杂志。

ACT 3-4 “我很高兴当摄影师。”

【故事梗概】

O'Neill 先生希望 Richard 可以出任自己新杂志的图片编辑。但是 Richard 非常热爱自己作为摄影师的工作，他拒绝了这个在别人看来非常好的机会。

Richard: Well, that sounds very exciting, but where would I fit into the plan?

O'Neill: I'd like you to be the photo editor of the magazine.

Marilyn: Oh, Richard, how exciting!

Carlson: It's a wonderful opportunity, Richard.

Richard: Hold on. Wait a minute, please.

Carlson: What's the problem, Richard?

Richard: The problem is that I'm a photographer, not an editor. I like what I do. In fact, I love what I do ... Which is going out with a camera and a roll of film and seeing the wonder of humanity. Now, I appreciate your offer, but I've worked so hard on Family Album, U.S.A. , and I'm giving some thought to a new book on a different subject. I'm flattered, but I enjoy taking pictures, and I want to continue doing that. Thank you, but I'm happy being a photographer.

O'Neill: I understand, Richard.

Carlson: Richard, I know your next book will be a success. Congratulations!

Richard: Thanks.

[Mr. Carlson shakes Richard's hand and walks away with John O'Neill.]

Marilyn: [to Richard] You're a real Stewart!

Richard: Thanks. [He kisses her.]

【语言点精讲】

1. Well, that sounds very exciting, but where would I fit into the plan?

嗯，那听起来很令人激动，但我在这项计划中能做什么呢？

where would I fit into the plan: 我在这项计划中能做什么呢？fit into 在这里指“符合，（使）适合，（使）适应（某事物）”。

2. The problem is that I'm a photographer, not an editor. I like what I do. In fact, I love what I do ... which is going out with a camera and a roll of film and seeing the wonder of humanity.

问题在于我是个摄影师，不是编辑。我喜欢我的工作。事实上，我热爱我的工作.....就是带着相机和胶卷出去，观察人类的奇迹。

which is going out...: 那就是出去.....。这是个定语从句，关联词是 which，用来补充说明 “what I do”。

wonder: 奇迹，奇妙景象。

humanity: 人性。

3. Now, I appreciate your offer, but I've worked so hard on Family Album, U.S.A. , and I'm giving some thought to a new book on a different subject.

噢，我感谢你的建议，可是我为《走遍美国》影集付出了极艰苦的努力，而且我在构想一册有关另一个主题的新书。

I appreciate your offer, but ...: 这是用来委婉拒绝别人的常用句型。

give some thought to a new book: 构想一本新书。give thought to (doing) sth. 意思是“考虑、构想某物或某事”。

4. I'm flattered, but I enjoy taking pictures, and I want to continue doing that. Thank you, but I'm happy being a photographer.

我感到受宠若惊，但是我喜爱拍照，我想继续干这一行。很感谢你，可我很高兴当摄影师。

I'm flattered, but ... : 我受宠若惊, 但是.....。这也是用来委婉拒绝别人好意的句型。**flattered**, 这里指受宠若惊的。

Thank you, but... : 谢谢您, 但是.....。这是另一种用来委婉拒绝别人的方式。

continue doing that: 继续这一行。**continue doing sth.** 意思是“持续不断地做某事”, 而 **continue to do sth.** 则表示“继续做另外一件事”。

文本复制来源: 沪江英语